

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 26, 2025

The Greek text is based on the edition by Marchant, 1910. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1909, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.



*vocabulary***ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy**βοά** din, a shout**βοάω** shout**βοείη** shield; leather, bovine**βόειος** shield; leather, bovine ~bovine**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine**βουκόλος** herdsman ~bovine**δεσπότης** -ου (m, f) master, despot**διαγίγνομαι** go through; subsist

~genus

**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐννοια** thought**ἐοικότως** like; fairly**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**εὐτυχής** fortunate**ζῶον** being, animal; picture**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**μοναρχία** monarchy**νομεύς** -ος (m) shepherd, herder

~nemesis

**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house

slave

**ὀλιγαρχία** oligarchy**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**πάμπαν** completely**πολιτεύω** (i) be a free citizen**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**τοίνυν** well, then

## 1.1

Ἐννοιά ποθ' ἡμῖν ἐγένετο ὅσαι δημοκρατίαι κατελύθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλως πως βουλομένων πολιτεύεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν δημοκρατίᾳ, ὅσαι τ' αὖ μοναρχίαι, ὅσαι τε ὀλιγαρχίαι ἀνῆρηνται ἤδη ὑπὸ δήμων, καὶ ὅσοι τυραννεῖν ἐπιχειρήσαντες οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν καὶ ταχὺ πᾶμπαν κατελύθησαν, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὅποσονοῦν χρόνον ἄρχοντες διαγέωνται, θαυμάζονται ὥς σοφοί τε καὶ εὐτυχεῖς ἄνδρες γεγενημένοι. πολλοὺς δ' ἐδοκοῦμεν καταμεμαθηκέναι καὶ ἐν ἰδίοις οἴκοις τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας καὶ πλείονας οἰκέτας, τοὺς δὲ καὶ πάνν ὀλίγους, καὶ ὅμως οὐδὲ τοῖς ὀλίγοις τούτοις πάνν τι δυναμένους χρῆσθαι πειθομένοις τοὺς δεσπότης. ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοις ἐνενοοῦμεν ὅτι ἄρχοντες μὲν εἰσι καὶ οἱ βουκόλοι τῶν βοῶν καὶ οἱ ἵπποφορβοὶ τῶν ἵππων, καὶ πάντες δὲ οἱ καλούμενοι νομεῖς ὧν ἂν ἐπιστατῶσι ζώων εἰκότως ἂν ἄρχοντες τούτων νομίζοντο· πάσας τοίνυν ταύτας τὰς

## 1.1

|thought ποθ' ἡμῖν ἐγένετο ὅσαι δημοκραταίαι |unyoke;  
 |destroy  
 ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλως |somehow<sup>9</sup> τυλομένων |be a free citizen  
 μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν δημοκρατία, ὅσαι τ' αὖ |monarchy , ὅσαι  
 τε |oligarchy |take up ἥδη ὑπὸ |district, com-` ὅσοι  
 |mon people  
 τυραννεῖν |do, try, attack οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν καὶ ταχὺ  
 |completely |unyoke;  
 |destroy , οἱ δὲ κἂν ὅποσονοῦν χρόνον  
 ἄρχοντες |go through; sub-|marvel ὥς |skilled, . . . καὶ  
 |sist |clever, wise  
 |fortunate ἄνδρες γεγενημένοι. πολλοὺς δ' ἐδοκούμην  
 |examine, observe καὶ ἐν |private, ἵκοις τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας  
 |personal  
 καὶ πλείονας |household; οὓς δὲ καὶ |altogether, very, . . . καὶ  
 |house slave  
 |anyway, nevertheless ὅλγους τούτοις |altogether, very . . . μένους  
 χρῆσθαι πειθόμενοις τοὺς |master, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοις  
 |despot  
 |consider ὅτι ἄρχοντες μὲν εἰσι καὶ οἱ |herdsman τῶν  
 βοῶν καὶ οἱ ἵπποφορβοὶ τῶν ἵππων, καὶ πάντες δὲ οἱ  
 καλούμενοι |shepherd,<sup>10</sup> ἂν ἐπιστατῶσι ζώων |like; ἂν  
 |herder |fairly  
 ἄρχοντες τούτων |consider cus-ίσας |well, then ὕτας τὰς  
 |tomary; believe

## 1.1

We have had occasion before now to reflect how often democracies have been overthrown by the desire for some other type of government, how often monarchies and oligarchies have been swept away by movements of the people, how often would-be despots have fallen in their turn, some at the outset by one stroke, while those who have maintained their rule for ever so brief a season are looked upon with wonder as marvels of sagacity and success.

The same lesson, we had little doubt, was to be learnt from the family: the household might be great or small—even the master of few could hardly count on the obedience of his little flock. And so, one idea leading to another, we came to shape our reflexions thus: Drovers may certainly be called the rulers of their cattle and horse-breeders the rulers of their studs—all herdsmen, in short, may reasonably be considered the governors of the animals they guard. If, then, we were to believe

*vocabulary***ἀγέλη** herd ~demagogue**ἀλλόφυλος** (ὅ) foreign**ἀπείργω** exclude; divide; confine

~ergonomics

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ὅ) take to heart**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐπάγω** drive game; induce belief

~demagogue

**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**εὐθύνω** (ὅ) straighten; examine one's conduct**ζῶον** being, animal; picture**καρπώω** bear fruit; harvest it**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νομεύς** -ος (m) shepherd, herder

~nemesis

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**πάμπολυς** very great**Πέρσης** Persian**πώποτε** never**ῥαίω** smite**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle

~station

**τοίνυν** well, then**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χωρίον** area; downwards**ώθέω** push**ώφελέω** help, be useful

ἀγέλας ἐδοκοῦμεν ὁρᾶν μᾶλλον ἐθελούσας πείθεσθαι τοῖς  
 νομεῦσιν ἢ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τοῖς ἄρχουσι. πορεύονται τε  
 γὰρ αἱ ἀγέλαι ἢ ἂν αὐτὰς εὐθύνωσιν οἱ νομεῖς, νέμονται  
 τε χωρία ἐφ' ὅποια ἂν αὐτὰς ἐπάγωσιν, ἀπέχονται τε  
 ὧν ἂν αὐτὰς ἀπείργωσι· καὶ τοῖς καρποῖς τοίνυν τοῖς  
 γιγνομένοις ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐῷσι τοὺς νομέας χρῆσθαι οὕτως  
 ὅπως ἂν αὐτοὶ βούλωνται. ἔτι τοίνυν οὐδεμίαν πώποτε  
 ἀγέλην ἡσθήμεθα συστᾶσαν ἐπὶ τὸν νομέα οὔτε ὡς μὴ  
 πείθεσθαι οὔτε ὡς μὴ ἐπιτρέπειν τῷ καρπῷ χρῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ χαλεπώτεραί εἰσιν αἱ ἀγέλαι πᾶσι τοῖς ἀλλοφύλοις ἢ  
 τοῖς ἄρχουσιν τε καὶ ὠφελουμένοις ἀπ' αὐτῶν· ἄνθρωποι  
 δὲ ἐπ' οὐδένας μᾶλλον συνίστανται ἢ ἐπὶ τούτους οὓς  
 ἂν αἰσθωνται ἄρχειν αὐτῶν ἐπιχειροῦντας. ὅτε μὲν δὴ  
 ταῦτα ἐνεθυμούμεθα, οὕτως ἐγιννώσκομεν περὶ αὐτῶν, ὡς  
 ἀνθρώπῳ πεφυκότι πάντων τῶν ἄλλων ῥᾶον εἶη ζῶων  
 ἢ ἀνθρώπων ἄρχειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐνενοήσαμεν ὅτι Κῦρος  
 ἐγένετο Πέρσης, ὃς παμπόλλους μὲν ἀνθρώπους ἐκτήσατο  
 πειθομένους αὐτῷ, παμπόλλας δὲ πόλεις,



|herd ἔδοκουν ὁρᾶν μάλλον ἐθελούσας πείθεσθαι τοῖς

|shepherd, ἡ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τοῖς ἄρχουσι. πορεύονται τε  
|herder

γὰρ αἱ |herd ἡ ἂν αὐτὰς |straighten; - |shepherd|distribute  
|examine one's|herder

τε |area; down-|whatever kind |as |drive game;|ward off, drive off, refrain,  
|wards |induce belief |be at some distance

ὧν ἂν αὐτὰς |exclude; di- καὶ τοῖς καρποῖς |well, then ἰς  
|vide; confine

γιγνομένοις ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐῶσι τοὺς |shepherd, ρῆσθαι οὕτως  
|herder

ὅπως ἂν αὐτοὶ βούλωνται. ἔτι |well, then ὁδεμίαν |never

|herd |perceive |unite; confront τὸν |shepherd, τε ὡς μὴ  
|in battle |herder

πείθεσθαι οὔτε ὡς μὴ |entrust, de- τῷ καρπῷ χρῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
|cide, allow

καὶ χαλεπώτεραί εἰσιν αἱ |herd πᾶσι τοῖς |foreign ἡ

τοῖς ἄρχουσιν τε καὶ |help, be useful ἀπ' αὐτῶν· ἀνθρωποι

δὲ ἐπ' οὐδένας μάλλον |unite; confront ἡ ἐπὶ τούτους οὖς  
|in battle

ἂν |perceive ἄρχειν αὐτῶν |do, try, attack ὅτε μὲν δὴ

ταῦτα |take to heart , οὕτως ἐγινώσκομεν περὶ αὐτῶν, ὡς

ἀνθρώπων πεφυκότι πάντων τῶν ἄλλων ῥᾶον εἴη ζώων

ἡ ἀνθρώπων ἄρχειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ |consider ὅτι Κύρος

ἐγένετο Πέρσης, ὅς |very great μὲν ἀνθρώπους ἐκτίησατο

πειθομένους αὐτῷ, |very great δὲ πόλεις,

the evidence of our senses, was it not obvious that flocks and herds were more ready to obey their keepers than men their rulers? Watch the cattle wending their way wherever their herdsmen guide them, see them grazing in the pastures where they are sent and abstaining from forbidden grounds, the fruit of their own bodies they yield to their master to use as he thinks best; nor have we ever seen one flock among them all combining against their guardian, either to disobey him or to refuse him the absolute control of their produce. On the contrary, they are more apt to show hostility against other animals than against the owner who derives advantage from them. But with man the rule is converse; men unite against none so readily as against those whom they see attempting to rule over them. As long, therefore, as we followed these reflexions, we could not but conclude that man is by nature fitted to govern all creatures, except his fellow-man. But when we came to realise the character of Cyrus the Persian, we were led to a change of mind: here is a man, we said, who won for himself obedience from thousands of his fellows, from

*vocabulary***ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**αὐτόνομος** autonomous**γούν** at least then**διαγίγνομαι** go through; subsist

~genus

**έχών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**έπάρχω** pass drops of libation

~oligarch

**έπισταμένως** skillfully ~station**καίπερ** even if**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μετανοέω** repent**όμως** anyway, nevertheless**όρμέω** be anchored**πάμπολυς** very great**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**πάτριος** of the father(s), ancestral**Πέρσης** Persian**πώποτε** never**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ύπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**ώσαύτως** in the same way

πάμπολλα δὲ ἔθνη, ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἡναγκαζόμεθα μετανοεῖν  
 μὴ οὔτε τῶν ἀδυνάτων οὔτε τῶν χαλεπῶν ἔργων  
 ἢ τὸ ἀνθρώπων ἄρχειν, ἢν τις ἐπισταμένως τοῦτο  
 πράττη. Κύρω γοῦν ἴσμεν ἐβελήσαντας πείθεσθαι τοὺς  
 μὲν ἀπέχοντας παμπόλλων ἡμερῶν ὁδόν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ  
 μηνῶν, τοὺς δὲ οὐδ' ἐωρακότας πώποτ' αὐτόν, τοὺς δὲ  
 καὶ εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἴδοιεν, καὶ ὅμως ἤθελον αὐτῷ  
 ὑπακούειν. καὶ γάρ τοι τοσοῦτον διήνεγκε τῶν ἄλλων  
 βασιλέων, καὶ τῶν πατρίους ἀρχὰς παρειληφόντων καὶ  
 τῶν δι' ἑαυτῶν κτησαμένων, ὥσθ' ὁ μὲν Σκύθης καίπερ  
 παμπόλλων ὄντων Σκυθῶν ἄλλου μὲν οὐδενὸς δύναιτ' ἂν  
 ἔθνους ἐπάρξαι, ἀγαπῶν δ' ἂν εἰ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ ἔθνους ἄρχων  
 διαγένοιτο, καὶ ὁ Θρᾶξ Θρακῶν καὶ ὁ Ἰλλυριὸς Ἰλλυριῶν,  
 καὶ τὰλλα δὲ ὡσαύτως ἔθνη ἀκούομεν τὰ γοῦν ἐν τῇ  
 Εὐρώπῃ ἔτι καὶ νῦν αὐτόνομα εἶναι λέγεται καὶ λελῦσθαι  
 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων· Κῦρος δὲ παραλαβὼν ὡσαύτως οὕτω καὶ  
 τὰ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἔθνη αὐτόνομα ὄντα ὀρμηθεὶς σὺν ὀλίγῃ  
 Περσῶν στρατιᾷ ἐκόντων μὲν ἡγήσατο Μήδων, ἐκόντων

πάμπολλα δὲ ἔθνη, ἐκ τούτου δὴ |force, compel |repent  
 μὴ οὔτε τῶν |unable; οὔτε τῶν |hard to bear ῥῳγων  
 |impossible  
 ἢ τὸ ἀνθρώπων ἄρχειν, ἢν τις |skillfully τοῦτο  
 πράττη. Κύρω |at least then ἐβελήσαντας πείθεσθαι τοὺς  
 μὲν |ward off, drive off, refrain, ἢν ἡμερῶν ὁδόν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ  
 |be at some distance  
 μηνῶν, τοὺς δὲ οὐδ' ἑωρακότας |never αὐτόν, τοὺς δὲ  
 καὶ εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἴδοιεν, καὶ |anyway, nevertheless  
 |listen, reply καὶ γάρ τοι |so much |carry on; ὦν ἄλλων  
 |differ; excel  
 βασιλέων, καὶ τῶν |of the father(s), ἀν-|receive, undertake, αἰ  
 |cestral |associate with  
 τῶν δι' αὐτῶν κτησαμένων, ὥσθ' ὁ μὲν Σκύθης |even if  
 παμπόλλων ὄντων Σκυθῶν ἄλλου μὲν οὐδενὸς δύναιτ' ἂν  
 ἔθνους |pass drops|welcome, be host τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἔθνους ἄρχων  
 |of libation  
 |go through; subsist Ἐρᾶς Θρακῶν καὶ ὁ Ἰλλυριὸς Ἰλλυριῶν,  
 καὶ τᾶλλα δὲ |in the same way, ἀκούομεν τὰ |at least then  
 Εὐρώπῃ ἔτι καὶ νῦν |autonomous ἵναι λέγεται καὶ |release  
 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων· Κύρος δὲ |receive, under-|in the same way καὶ  
 |take, associate  
 τὰ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἔθνη |autonomous ἵντα ὀρμηθεῖς σὺν ὀλίγῃ  
 Περσῶν |army |willingly μὲν ἡγήσατο Μήδων, |willingly

cities and tribes innumerable: we must ask ourselves whether the government of men is after all an impossible or even a difficult task, provided one set about it in the right way. Cyrus, we know, found the readiest obedience in his subjects, though some of them dwelt at a distance which it would take days and months to traverse, and among them were men who had never set eyes on him, and for the matter of that could never hope to do so, and yet they were willing to obey him. Cyrus did indeed eclipse all other monarchs, before or since, and I include not only those who have inherited their power, but those who have won empire by their own exertions. How far he surpassed them all may be felt if we remember that no Scythian, although the Scythians are reckoned by their myriads, has ever succeeded in dominating a foreign nation; indeed the Scythian would be well content could he but keep his government unbroken over his own tribe and people. The same is true of the Thracians and the Illyrians, and indeed of all other nations within our ken; in Europe, at any rate, their condition is even now one of independence, and of such separation as would seem to be permanent. Now this was the state in which Cyrus found the tribes and peoples of Asia when, at the head of a small Persian force, he started on his career. The Medes and the Hyrcanians accepted his leadership willingly, but it was through conquest that he won Syria, Assyria, Arabia, Cappadocia, the two Phrygias, Lydia, Caria, Phoenicia, and Babylonia. Then he established his rule over the Bactrians, Indians, and Cilicians, over the Sakians,

*vocabulary*

**ἀναρτάω** attach to, make dependent  
 upon  
**ἄρκτος** (f) bear  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἐπάρχω** pass drops of libation  
 ~oligarch  
**ἐπιθυμία** (ῥ) desire, thing desired  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἐφικνέομαι** reach, bear on  
**καταπλήσσω** be struck with dismay  
 ~plectrum

**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**κυβερνάω** steer ~govern  
**μεσημβρία** midday; the south  
**ὁμόγλωσσος** speaking the same  
 language  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**σάκος** shield, hide, sack  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**φῶλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

δὲ Ὑρκανίων, κατεστρέψατο δὲ Σύρους, Ἀσσυρίους,  
 Ἀραβίους, Καππαδόκας, Φρύγας ἀμφοτέρους, Λυδούς,  
 Κᾶρας, Φοίνικας, Βαβυλωνίους, ἤρξε δὲ Βακτρίων καὶ  
 Ἰνδῶν καὶ Κιλικίων, ὡσαύτως δὲ Σακῶν καὶ Παφλαγόνων  
 καὶ Μαγαδιδῶν, καὶ ἄλλων δὲ παμπόλλων ἐθνῶν, ὧν οὐδ'  
 ἂν τὰ ὀνόματα ἔχοι τις εἰπεῖν, ἐπῆρξε δὲ καὶ Ἑλλήνων  
 τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, καταβάς δ' ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ Κυπρίων  
 καὶ Αἰγυπτίων. καὶ τοίνυν τούτων τῶν ἐθνῶν ἤρξεν  
 οὔτε αὐτῷ ὁμογλώττων ὄντων οὔτε ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ὅμως  
 ἐδυνάσθη ἐφικέσθαι μὲν ἐπὶ τοσαύτην γῆν τῷ ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ  
 φόβῳ, ὥστε καταπλῆξαι πάντας καὶ μηδένα ἐπιχειρεῖν  
 αὐτῷ, ἐδυνάσθη δὲ ἐπιθυμίαν ἐμβαλεῖν τοσαύτην τοῦ  
 πάντας αὐτῷ χαρίζεσθαι ὥστε αἰετῇ αὐτοῦ γνώμῃ ἀξιοῦν  
 κυβερνᾶσθαι, ἀνηρτήσατο δὲ τοσαῦτα φύλα ὅσα καὶ  
 διελθεῖν ἔργον ἐστίν, ὅποι ἂν ἄρξῃται τις πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ  
 τῶν βασιλείων, ἣν τε πρὸς ἔω ἣν τε πρὸς ἐσπέραν ἣν τε  
 πρὸς ἄρκτον ἣν τε πρὸς μεσημβρίαν. ἡμεῖς μὲν δὴ ὡς  
 ἄξιον ὄντα θαυμάζεσθαι τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα ἐσκεψάμεθα



δὲ Ὑρκανίων, |overturn, subdue δὲ Σύρους, Ἀσσυρίους,  
 Ἀραβίους, Καππαδόκας, Φρύγας ἀμφοτέρους, Λυδούς,  
 Κᾶρας, Φοίνικας, Βαβυλωνίους, ἥρξε δὲ Βακτρίων καὶ  
 Ἰνδῶν καὶ Κιλικίων, |in the same|shield, hide, sack, |, λαγόνων  
 καὶ Μαγαδιῶν, καὶ ἄλλων δὲ παμπολλῶν ἐθνῶν, ὧν οὐδ'  
 ἂν τὰ ὀνόματα ἔχοι τις εἰπεῖν, |pass drops of liba-|Greek  
 τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, |go down δ' ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ Κυπρίων  
 καὶ Αἰγυπτίων. καὶ |well, then ὑτῶν τῶν ἐθνῶν ἥρξεν  
 οὔτε αὐτῷ |speaking the ὄντων οὔτε ἀλλήλοις, καὶ |anyway, never-  
 |same language |theless  
 ἐδυνάσθη |reach, bear on... ἐπὶ τοσαύτην γῆν τῷ ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ  
 |fear , ὥστε |be struck with πάντας καὶ μηδένα |do, try, attack  
 |dismay  
 αὐτῷ, ἐδυνάσθη δὲ |desire, thing|throw in; inspire ἵτην τοῦ  
 |desired  
 πάντας αὐτῷ |gratify ὥστε ἀεὶ τῇ αὐτοῦ |sign, |consider worthy,  
 |mind, |fitting  
 |steer , |attach to, make ἐ τοσαῦτα |will, |decision  
 |dependent upon |tribe,  
 |piercer, ἔργον ἐστίν, |to which place, αἱ τις πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ  
 |traverse |class  
 τῶν βασιλείων, ἣν τε πρὸς ἑῷ ἣν τε πρὸς |evening, west γε  
 πρὸς |bear ἣν τε πρὸς |midday; the south, ... εἰς μὲν δὴ ὥς  
 |worthy...ντα |marvel τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα |look, look at, watch

Paphlagonians, and Magadidians, over a host of other tribes the very names of which defy the memory of the chronicler; and last of all he brought the Hellenes in Asia beneath his sway, and by a descent on the seaboard Cyprus and Egypt also.

It is obvious that among this congeries of nations few, if any, could have spoken the same language as himself, or understood one another, but none the less Cyrus was able so to penetrate that vast extent of country by the sheer terror of his personality that the inhabitants were prostrate before him: not one of them dared lift hand against him. And yet he was able, at the same time, to inspire them all with so deep a desire to please him and win his favour that all they asked was to be guided by his judgment and his alone. Thus he knit to himself a complex of nationalities so vast that it would have taxed a man's endurance merely to traverse his empire in any one direction, east or west or south or north, from the palace which was its centre. For ourselves, considering his title to our

*vocabulary***ἀνατλήναι** endure ~talent**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**γένυς** jaw**διαμνημονεύω** remember clearly;  
mention, record**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
~oid**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κοινόω** make common; cooperate**μορφή** beauty**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**παιδεία** child-rearing, education**παιδεύω** raise; train**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**ποῖος** what kind**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πύθος** (ῥ) rot ~putrid**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain**φιλόανθρωπος** humane, benevolent**φιλομαθής** knowledge-loving**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)  
~physics**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**ψύχω** (ῥ) breathe, blow ~psychology

τίς ποτ' ὦν γενεὰν καὶ ποίαν τινὰ φύσιν ἔχων καὶ ποία τινὶ παιδευθεὶς παιδεία τοσοῦτον διήνεγκεν εἰς τὸ ἄρχειν ἀνθρώπων. ὅσα οὖν καὶ ἐπυθόμεθα καὶ ἡσθήσθαι δοκοῦμεν περὶ αὐτοῦ, ταῦτα πειρασόμεθα διηγῆσασθαι.

## 1.2

Πατρὸς μὲν δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγεται γενέσθαι Καμβύσου Περσῶν βασιλέως· ὁ δὲ Καμβύσης οὗτος τοῦ Περσείδων γένους ἦν· οἱ δὲ Περσεῖδαι ἀπὸ Περσέως κλήζονται· μητρὸς δὲ ὁμολογεῖται Μανδάνης γενέσθαι· ἡ δὲ Μανδάνη αὕτη Ἀστυάγους ἦν θυγάτηρ τοῦ Μήδων γενομένου βασιλέως. φῦναι δὲ ὁ Κῦρος λέγεται καὶ ᾄδεται ἔτι καὶ νῦν ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων εἶδος μὲν κάλλιστος, ψυχὴν δὲ φιланθρωπότατος καὶ φιλομαθέστατος καὶ φιλοτιμóτατος, ὥστε πάντα μὲν πόνον ἀνατλήναι, πάντα δὲ κίνδυνον ὑπομείναι τοῦ ἐπαινέσθαι ἔνεκα. φύσιν μὲν δὴ τῆς μορφῆς καὶ τῆς ψυχῆς τοιαύτην ἔχων διαμνημονεύεται· ἐπαιδεύθη γε μὴν ἐν Περσῶν νόμοις· οὗτοι δὲ δοκοῦσιν οἱ νόμοι ἄρχεσθαι τοῦ κοινοῦ

τίς ποτ' ὦν |birth, race -αι |what kind ἃ φύσιν ἔχων καὶ  
 |what kind ἃ |raise; train |child- |so much |carry on; εἰς τὸ  
 |rearing, |differ; excel  
 |education  
 ἄρχειν ἀνθρώπων. ὅσα οὖν καὶ ἐπυθόμεθα καὶ |perceive  
 δοκοῦμεν περὶ αὐτοῦ, ταῦτα πειρασόμεθα |detail, describe

## 1.2

Πατρὸς μὲν δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγεται γενέσθαι Καμβύσου  
 Περσῶν βασιλέως· ὁ δὲ Καμβύσης οὗτος τοῦ Περσείδων  
 γένους ἦν· οἱ δὲ Περσείδαι ἀπὸ Περσέως κλήζονται·  
 μητρὸς δὲ |agree with/to Μανδάνης γενέσθαι· ἡ δὲ Μανδάνη  
 αὕτη Ἀστυάγους ἦν |daughter τοῦ Μήδων γενομένου  
 βασιλέως. |produce, ὁ Κῦρος λέγεται καὶ ᾄδεται  
 |beget; clasp  
 ἔτι καὶ νῦν ὑπὸ τῶν |non-Greek |form μὲν κάλλιστος,  
 ψυχὴν δὲ |humane, benevolent καὶ |knowledge-loving καὶ  
 φιλοτιμότητος, ὥστε πάντα μὲν |toil, |endure , πάντα  
 |suffer-  
 δὲ |danger |stay behind, await |concurs |because, that ἵσιν  
 μὲν δὴ τῆς |beauty καὶ τῆς |soul; life τοιαύτην ἔχων  
 |remember clearly; |raise; train γε μὴν ἐν Περσῶν νόμοις·  
 |mention, record  
 οὔτοι δὲ δοκοῦσιν οἱ νόμοι ἄρχεσθαι τοῦ κοινοῦ

admiration proved, we set ourselves to inquire what his parentage might have been and his natural parts, and how he was trained and brought up to attain so high a pitch of excellence in the government of men. And all we could learn from others about him or felt we might infer for ourselves we will here endeavour to set forth.

## 1.2

The father of Cyrus, so runs the story, was Cambyses, a king of the Persians, and one of the Perseidae, who look to Perseus as the founder of their race. His mother, it is agreed, was Mandane, the daughter of Astyages, king of the Medes. Of Cyrus himself, even now in the songs and stories of the East the record lives that nature made him most fair to look upon, and set in his heart the threefold love of man, of knowledge, and of honour. He would endure all labours, he would undergo all dangers, for the sake of glory. Blest by nature with such gifts of soul and body, his memory lives to this day in the mindful heart of ages. It is true that he was brought up according to the laws and customs of the Persians, and of these

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** open assembly; place of, speech  
 in ~agora  
**ἀγοραῖος** frequenting the market  
**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**ἀπειροκαλία** vulgarity  
**ἀπελάνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**ἀρχεῖον** central office  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διαίρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἔφηβος** aged 18  
**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,  
 spring upon ~jet  
**ζημία** loss, penalty ~zeal  
**κλέπτω** steal  
**μοιχεύω** do adultery  
**παιδεύω** raise; train  
**παίω** hit  
**παραβαίνω** go with; transgress ~basis  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**τέλειος** finished ~apostle  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**ὤνιος** for sale  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἀγαθοῦ ἐπιμελούμενοι οὐκ ἔνθενπερ ἐν ταῖς πλείσταις πόλεσιν ἄρχονται. αἱ μὲν γὰρ πλείσται πόλεις ἀφείσαι παιδεύειν ὅπως τις ἐθέλει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ παῖδας, καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους ὅπως ἐθέλουσι διάγειν, ἔπειτα προστάττουσιν αὐτοῖς μὴ κλέπτειν μηδὲ ἀρπάζειν, μὴ βία εἰς οἰκίαν παρίεναι, μὴ παίειν ὃν μὴ δίκαιον, μὴ μοιχεύειν, μὴ ἀπειθεῖν ἄρχοντι, καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα ὡσαύτως· ἣν δέ τις τούτων τι παραβαίνει, ζημίαν αὐτοῖς ἐπέθεσαν. οἱ δὲ Περσικοὶ νόμοι προλαβόντες ἐπιμέλονται ὅπως τὴν ἀρχὴν μὴ τοιοῦτοι ἔσονται οἱ πολῖται οἷοι πονηροῦ τινος ἢ αἰσχροῦ ἔργου ἐφίεσθαι. ἐπιμέλονται δὲ ὧδε. ἔστιν αὐτοῖς ἐλευθέρα ἀγορὰ καλουμένη, ἔνθα τά τε βασιλεια καὶ τᾶλλα ἀρχεῖα πεποιήται. ἐντεῦθεν τὰ μὲν ὦνια καὶ οἱ ἀγοραῖοι καὶ αἱ τούτων φωναὶ καὶ ἀπειροκαλῖαι ἀπελήλανται εἰς ἄλλον τόπον, ὥς μὴ μιγνύηται ἡ τούτων τύρβη τῇ τῶν πεπαιδευμένων εὐκοσμία. διήρηται δὲ αὕτη ἡ ἀγορὰ ἡ περὶ τὰ ἀρχεῖα τέτταρα μέρη· τούτων δ' ἔστιν ἐν μὲν παισίν, ἐν δὲ ἐφήβοις, ἄλλο τελείους



ἀγαθοῦ |take care of, οὐκ ἔνθενπερ ἐν ταῖς πλείσταις  
 |oversee  
 πόλεσιν ἄρχονται. αἱ μὲν γὰρ πλείσται πόλεις ἀφείσαι  
 |raise; train ὅπως τις ἐθέλει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ παῖδας, καὶ  
 αὐτοὺς τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους ὅπως ἐθέλουσι |lead through; |pass a time  
 |post at, attach to, αὐτοῖς μὴ |steal μηδὲ |carry off, seize, βία  
 |command  
 εἰς οἰκίαν |dangle; , pass |hit ὃν μὴ δίκαιον, μὴ |do adultery  
 |over, allow  
 μὴ |disobey ἄρχοντι, καὶ τὰλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα |in the same way  
 ἦν δέ τις τούτων τι |go with; |loss, αὐτοῖς |put on, apply; (mid)  
 |transgress |penalty |undertake, attack  
 οἱ δὲ Περσικοὶ νόμοι προλαβόντες ἐπιμέλονται ὅπως τὴν  
 ἀρχὴν μὴ τοιοῦτοι ἔσονται οἱ πολῖται οἱοι πονηροῦ τινος ἢ  
 |shameful ἔργου |send flying at . μέλονται δὲ ᾧδε. ἔστιν αὐτοῖς  
 |not enslaved, ορὰ καλουμένη, ἔνθα τά τε βασιλεια καὶ τὰλλα  
 |central πεποιήται. |thence τὰ μὲν |for sale. καὶ οἱ |frequenting  
 |office the market  
 καὶ αἱ τούτων φωναὶ καὶ |vulgarity |expel, exclude, ward off; (in-  
 |trans) ride away  
 ἄλλον τόπον, ὥς μὴ μιγνύηται ἢ τούτων τύρβη τῇ τῶν  
 |raise; train εὐκοσμία. |divide, |distin- ἣτη ἢ ἀγορὰ ἢ  
 |guish, distribute  
 περὶ τὰ |central |four μέρη· τούτων δ' ἔστιν ἐν μὲν  
 |office  
 παισίν, ἐν δὲ |aged 18 , ἄλλο |finished

laws it must be noted that while they aim, as laws elsewhere, at the common weal, their guiding principle is far other than that which most nations follow. Most states permit their citizens to bring up their own children at their own discretion, and allow the grown men to regulate their own lives at their own will, and then they lay down certain prohibitions, for example, not to pick and steal, not to break into another man's house, not to strike a man unjustly, not to commit adultery, not to disobey the magistrate, and so forth; and on the transgressor they impose a penalty. But the Persian laws try, as it were, to steal a march on time, to make their citizens from the beginning incapable of setting their hearts on any wickedness or shameful conduct whatsoever. And this is how they set about their object.

In their cities they have an open place or square dedicated to Freedom (Free Square they call it), where stand the palace and other public buildings. From this place all goods for sale are rigidly excluded, and all hawkers and hucksters with their yells and cries and vulgarities. They must go elsewhere, so that their clamour may not mingle with and mar the grace and orderliness of the educated classes. This square, where the public buildings stand, is divided into four quarters which are assigned as follows: one for the boys, another for the youths, a third for the grown men, and the last

*vocabulary***ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

**ἀρχεῖον** central office**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy**γεραιός** old ~geriatric**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute**ἔφηβος** aged 18**ἡνίκα** when**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,

have sex

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage**Πέρσης** Persian**προστάτης** -ου (m, 1) leader, protector**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward**τέλειος** finished ~apostle**φυλή** (ὁ) tribe, military unit

ἀνδράσιν, ἄλλο τοῖς ὑπὲρ τὰ στρατεύσιμα ἔτη γεγονόσι.  
νόμῳ δ' εἰς τὰς ἑαυτῶν χώρας ἕκαστοι τούτων πάρεισιν,  
οἱ μὲν παῖδες ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ οἱ τέλειοι ἄνδρες,  
οἱ δὲ γεραιτέροι ἥνίκ' ἂν ἐκάστω προχωρῇ, πλὴν ἐν  
ταῖς τεταγμέναις ἡμέραις, ἐν αἷς αὐτοὺς δεῖ παρῆναι.  
οἱ δὲ ἔφηβοι καὶ κοιμῶνται περὶ τὰ ἀρχεῖα σὺν τοῖς  
γυμνητικοῖς ὅπλοις πλὴν τῶν γεγαμηκότων· οὗτοι δὲ οὔτε  
ἐπιζητοῦνται, ἢ μὴ προρρηθῇ παρῆναι, οὔτε πολλάκις  
ἀπεῖναι καλόν. ἄρχοντες δ' ἐφ' ἐκάστω τούτων τῶν μερῶν  
εἰσι δώδεκα· δώδεκα γὰρ καὶ Περσῶν φυλαὶ διήρηνται.  
καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς παισὶν ἐκ τῶν γεραιτέρων ἡρημένοι  
εἰσὶν οἳ ἂν δοκῶσι τοὺς παῖδας βελτίστους ἀποδεικνύναι·  
ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς ἐφήβοις ἐκ τῶν τελείων ἀνδρῶν οἳ ἂν αὐ  
τοὺς ἐφήβους βελτίστους δοκῶσι παρέχειν· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς  
τελείοις ἀνδράσιν οἳ ἂν δοκῶσι παρέχειν αὐτοὺς μάλιστα  
τὰ τεταγμένα ποιούντας καὶ τὰ παραγγελλόμενα ὑπὸ τῆς  
μεγίστης ἀρχῆς· εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν γεραιτέρων προστάται  
ἡρημένοι, οἳ προστατεύουσιν ὅπως καὶ οὗτοι

ἀνδράσιν, ἄλλο τοῖς ὑπὲρ τὰ στρατεύσιμα ἔτη γεγονόσι.  
 νόμῳ δ' εἰς τὰς ἑαυτῶν χώρας ἕκαστοι τούτων πάρεισιν,  
 οἱ μὲν παῖδες ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ οἱ |finished ἄνδρες,  
 οἱ δὲ |old |when ἂν ἐκάστω |proceed, |except ἐν  
 |come forward  
 ταῖς |arrange ἡμέραις, ἐν αἷς αὐτοὺς δεῖ παρῆναι.  
 οἱ δὲ |aged 18 καὶ κοιμῶνται περὶ τὰ |central σὺν τοῖς  
 |office  
 γυμνητικοῖς |tool |except ὧν |marry, take as a οὔτοι δὲ οὔτε  
 |lover  
 ἐπιζητοῦνται, ἣν μὴ προρρηθῇ παρῆναι, οὔτε |often  
 |be absent, go ὄν. ἄρχοντες δ' ἐφ' ἐκάστω τούτων τῶν μερῶν  
 |away, return  
 εἰσι |twelve |twelve γὰρ καὶ Περσῶν |tribe |divide, distinguish, dis-  
 |tribute  
 καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς παισὶν ἐκ τῶν |old ἡρημένοι  
 εἰσὶν οἱ ἂν δοκῶσι τοὺς παῖδας |best, noblest |show, point out; appoint;  
 |(mid) declare  
 ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς |aged 18 ἐκ τῶν τελείων ἀνδρῶν οἱ ἂν αὖ  
 τοὺς |aged 18 |best, noblest δοκῶσι παρέχειν· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς  
 |finished ἀνδράσιν οἱ ἂν δοκῶσι παρέχειν αὐτοὺς μάλιστα  
 τὰ |arrange ποιῶντας καὶ τὰ |transmit; order, sumḿon, ἡς  
 |recommend, encourage  
 μεγίστης ἀρχῆς· εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν |old |leader,  
 |protector  
 ἡρημένοι, οἱ προστατεύουσιν ὅπως καὶ οὔτοι

for those who are past the age of military service. The law requires all the citizens to present themselves at certain times and seasons in their appointed places. The lads and the grown men must be there at daybreak; the elders may, as a rule, choose their own time, except on certain fixed days, when they too are expected to present themselves like the rest. Moreover, the young men are bound to sleep at night round the public buildings, with their arms at their side; only the married men among them are exempt, and need not be on duty at night unless notice has been given, though even in their case frequent absence is thought unseemly. Over each of these divisions are placed twelve governors, twelve being the number of the Persian tribes. The governors of the boys are chosen from the elders, and those are appointed who are thought best fitted to make the best of their lads: the governors of the youths are selected from the grown men, and on the same principle; and for the grown men themselves and their own governors; the choice falls on those who will, it is hoped, make them most prompt to carry out their appointed duties, and fulfil the commands imposed by the supreme authority. Finally, the elders themselves have presidents

*vocabulary*

**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀμελής** careless  
**ἀπάτη** trick, fraud, deceit  
 ~apatosaurus  
**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce  
**ἄρπαγή** seizure; rape  
**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant  
 ~eucharist  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology  
**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent  
**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe

**δικάζω** judge  
**δικαιοσύνη** justice  
**ἐγκαλέω** demand payment; accuse  
**ἐγκλημα** -τος (n, 3) accusation  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἥκιστος** least; above all  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καθίγω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper  
**κλοπή** theft, fraud  
**κολάζω** punish  
**μισέω** (ι) hate, wish to prevent  
 ~misogyny  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command  
**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked  
**φοιτάω** go back and forth

τὰ καθήκοντα ἀποτελῶσιν. ἃ δὲ ἐκάστη ἡλικία προστέτακται ποιεῖν διηγησόμεθα, ὥς μᾶλλον δῆλον γένηται ἢ ἐπιμέλονται ὥς ἂν βέλτιστοι εἶεν οἱ πολῖται. οἱ μὲν δὴ παῖδες εἰς τὰ διδασκαλεία φοιτῶντες διάγουσι μανθάνοντες δικαιοσύνην· καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἔρχονται ὥσπερ παρ' ἡμῖν ὅτι γράμματα μαθησόμενοι. οἱ δ' ἄρχοντες αὐτῶν διατελοῦσι τὸ πλεῖστον τῆς ἡμέρας δικάζοντες αὐτοῖς. γίγνεται γὰρ δὴ καὶ παισὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ ἀνδράσιν ἐγκλήματα καὶ κλοπῆς καὶ ἀρπαγῆς καὶ βίας καὶ ἀπάτης καὶ κακολογίας καὶ ἄλλων οἷων δὴ εἰκός. οὓς δ' ἂν γνῶσι τούτων τι ἀδικοῦντας, τιμωροῦνται. κολάζουσι δὲ καὶ ὃν ἂν ἀδίκως ἐγκαλοῦντα εὐρίσκωσι. δικάζουσι δὲ καὶ ἐγκλήματος οὗ ἕνεκα ἄνθρωποι μισοῦσι μὲν ἀλλήλους μάλιστα, δικάζονται δὲ ἥκιστα, ἀχαριστίας, καὶ ὃν ἂν γνῶσι δυνάμενον μὲν χάριν ἀποδιδόναι, μὴ ἀποδιδόντα δέ, κολάζουσι καὶ τοῦτον ἰσχυρῶς. οἶονται γὰρ τοὺς ἀχαρίστους καὶ περὶ θεοὺς ἂν μάλιστα ἀμελῶς ἔχειν καὶ περὶ γονέας καὶ πατρίδα



τὰ |come down, (a|accomplish, . . . ἃ δὲ ἐκάστη |time of life, con-  
 |day) to fall, ar-|produce |temporaries  
 |rive; be proper  
 |post at, attach to, ποιεῖν διηγησόμεθα, ὥς μᾶλλον |visible,  
 |command |conspicuous  
 γένηται ἢ ἐπιμέλονται ὥς ἂν |best, εἶεν οἱ πολῖται.  
 |noblest  
 οἱ μὲν δὴ παῖδες εἰς τὰ διδασκαλεῖα |go back and|lead through;  
 |forth |pass a time  
 μανθάνοντες δικαιοσύνην· καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῦτο  
 ἔρχονται ὥσπερ παρ' ἡμῖν ὅτι |writing, μαθησόμενοι.  
 |letter  
 οἱ δ' ἄρχοντες αὐτῶν |accomplish; τὸ πλεῖστον τῆς ἡμέρας  
 |keep doing  
 |judge αὐτοῖς. γίγνεται γὰρ δὴ καὶ παισὶ πρὸς  
 ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ ἀνδράσιν |accusation καὶ |theft, καὶ  
 |fraud  
 |seizure; rape... βίας καὶ |trick, καὶ κακολογίας καὶ ἄλλων  
 |fraud  
 οἷων δὴ |likely. οὓς δ' ἂν γινώσι τούτων τι ἀδικούντας,  
 |take vengeance,|punish δὲ καὶ ὃν ἂν |unfair; |demand pay-  
 |punish, aid |ment; accuse  
 εὐρίσκωσι. |judge δὲ καὶ |accusation οὗ ἕνεκα  
 |bad  
 ἄνθρωποι |hate μὲν ἀλλήλους μάλιστα, |judge δὲ  
 |least; , ἀχαριστίας, καὶ ὃν ἂν γινώσι δυνάμενον μὲν χάριν  
 |above  
 |all ἀποδιδόναι, μὴ ἀποδιδόντα δέ, |punish καὶ τοῦτον  
 |strong, force-|ονται γὰρ τοὺς |ungracious, καὶ περὶ θεοὺς ἂν  
 |ful, violent |unpleasant  
 μάλιστα ἀμελῶς ἔχειν καὶ περὶ |parent καὶ πατρίδα

of their own, chosen to see that they too perform their duty to the full.

We will now describe the services demanded from the different classes, and thus it will appear how the Persians endeavour to improve their citizens. The boys go to school and give their time to learning justice and righteousness: they will tell you they come for that purpose, and the phrase is as natural with them as it is for us to speak of lads learning their letters. The masters spend the chief part of the day in deciding cases for their pupils: for in this boy-world, as in the grown-up world without, occasions of indictment are never far to seek. There will be charges, we know, of picking and stealing, of violence, of fraud, of calumny, and so forth. The case is heard and the offender, if shown to be guilty, is punished. Nor does he escape who is found to have accused one of his fellows unfairly. And there is one charge the judges do not hesitate to deal with, a charge which is the source of much hatred among grown men, but which they seldom press in the courts, the charge of ingratitude. The culprit convicted of refusing to repay a debt of kindness when it was fully in his power meets with severe chastisement. They reason that the ungrateful man is the most likely to forget his duty to the gods, to his parents, to his fatherland, and his

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀναισχυντία** shamelessness, impudence**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**ἄρύω** draw water**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**διδάσκαλος** teacher**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac**ἕξ** six ~hexagon**ἐπτακαίδεκα** 17**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**μέχρι** as far as, until**οἶκοθεν** from home, from one's own resources ~economics**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**ποτάομαι** fly about ~petal**ποτός** potable**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore**σιτέομαι** (ι) eat ~parasite**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

καὶ φίλους. ἔπεσθαι δὲ δοκεῖ μάλιστα τῇ ἀχαριστίᾳ  
ἢ ἀναισχυντία· καὶ γὰρ αὕτη μεγίστη δοκεῖ εἶναι ἐπὶ  
πάντα τὰ αἰσχρὰ ἡγεμών. διδάσκουσι δὲ τοὺς παῖδας  
καὶ σωφροσύνην· μέγα δὲ συμβάλλεται εἰς τὸ μανθάνειν  
σωφρονεῖν αὐτοὺς ὅτι καὶ τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους ὁρῶσιν  
ἀνὰ πᾶσαν ἡμέραν σωφρόνως διάγοντας. διδάσκουσι δὲ  
αὐτοὺς καὶ πείθεσθαι τοῖς ἄρχουσι· μέγα δὲ καὶ εἰς τοῦτο  
συμβάλλεται ὅτι ὁρῶσι τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους πειθομένους  
τοῖς ἄρχουσιν ἰσχυρῶς. διδάσκουσι δὲ καὶ ἐγκράτειαν  
γαστρὸς καὶ ποτοῦ· μέγα δὲ καὶ εἰς τοῦτο συμβάλλεται ὅτι  
ὁρῶσι τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους οὐ πρόσθεν ἀπιόντας γαστρὸς  
ἐνεκα πρὶν ἂν ἀφώσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ὅτι οὐ παρὰ μητρὶ  
σιτοῦνται οἱ παῖδες, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῷ διδασκάλῳ, ὅταν οἱ  
ἄρχοντες σημήνωσι. φέρονται δὲ οἴκοθεν σίτον μὲν ἄρτον,  
ὄψον δὲ κάρδαμον, πιεῖν δέ, ἥν τις διψῇ, κώθωνα, ὥς ἀπὸ  
τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀρύσασθαι. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις μανθάνουσι καὶ  
τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν. μέχρι μὲν δὴ ἕξ ἢ ἑπτακαίδεκα  
ἐτῶν ἀπὸ γενεᾶς οἱ παῖδες ταῦτα πράττουσιν, ἐκ τούτου

καὶ φίλους. ἔπεσθαι δὲ δοκεῖ μάλιστα τῇ ἀχαριστίᾳ

ἢ |shamelessness, καὶ γὰρ αὕτη μεγίστη δοκεῖ εἶναι ἐπὶ  
|impudence

πάντα τὰ |shameful |leader . διδάσκουσι δὲ τοὺς παῖδας

καὶ |discretion, μέγα δὲ |pit against; compare;|learn  
|moderation |mp: meet, fall in with

|be sane, moderate ὥς ὅτι καὶ τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους ὁρῶσιν

ἀνὰ πᾶσαν ἡμέραν |sensible, |lead through; διδάσκουσι δὲ  
|prudent |pass a time

αὐτοὺς καὶ πείθεσθαι τοῖς ἄρχουσι· μέγα δὲ καὶ εἰς τοῦτο

|pit against; compare; ὥσι τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους πειθομένους  
|mp: meet, fall in with

τοῖς ἄρχουσιν |strong, force- |ιδάσκουσι δὲ καὶ ἐγκράτειαν  
|ful, violent

|belly καὶ ποτοῦ· μέγα δὲ καὶ εἰς τοῦτο |pit against; compare; mp: meet,  
|fall in with

ὁρῶσι τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους οὐ πρόσθεν |be absent;|belly  
|go away,

ἐνεκα πρὶν ἂν ἀφῶσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ὅτι οὐ παρὰ μητρὶ  
|return

σιτοῦνται οἱ παῖδες, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῷ |teacher , |whenever

ἄρχοντες |give orders to; ἔρονται δὲ |from |grain, μὲν |bread ,  
|show; mark |home |bread,

οἷον δὲ κάρδαμον, πικρὸν δέ, ἢν τις |be thirsty |food ἕλκω, ὥς ἀπὸ

τοῦ |river |draw water . πρὸς δὲ τούτοις |learn καὶ

|shoot an arrow |throw, (+gen)|as far as, `until, `ἐξ ἣ |17  
|at |at

ἐτῶν ἀπὸ |birth, race` παῖδες ταῦτα πράττουσιν, ἐκ τούτου

friends. Shamelessness, they hold, treads close on the heels of ingratitude, and thus ingratitude is the ringleader and chief instigator to every kind of baseness. Further, the boys are instructed in temperance and self-restraint, and they find the utmost help towards the attainment of this virtue in the self-respecting behaviour of their elders, shown them day by day. Then they are taught to obey their rulers, and here again nothing is of greater value than the studied obedience to authority manifested by their elders everywhere. Continence in meat and drink is another branch of instruction, and they have no better aid in this than, first, the example of their elders, who never withdraw to satisfy their carnal cravings until those in authority dismiss them, and next, the rule that the boys must take their food, not with their mother but with their master, and not till the governor gives the sign. They bring from home the staple of their meal, dry bread with nasturtium for a relish, and to slake their thirst they bring a drinking-cup, to dip in the running stream. In addition, they are taught to shoot with the bow and to fling the javelin.

The lads follow their studies till the age of sixteen or seventeen,

*vocabulary***ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit**ἀρχεῖον** central office**γέρον** wicker object**γυμνάζω** exercise, do training**δημόσιος** public, the state**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**ἐθίζω** accustom**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔφηβος** aged 18**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**θηράω** hunt, chase**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κοινώω** make common; cooperate**κολέος** sheath**μελέτη** care; practice**ὁδοιπορία** walking**παλτός** brandished, hurled**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προερέω** say beforehand**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect

~legion

**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**τόξον** bow ~toxic**φαρέτρα** quiver**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch

~phylactery

**ψυχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness

~psychology

δὲ εἰς τοὺς ἐφήβους ἐξέρχονται. οὗτοι δ' αὖ οἱ ἔφηβοι διάγουσιν ὧδε. δέκα ἔτη ἀφ' οὗ ἂν ἐκ παίδων ἐξέλθωσι κοιμῶνται μὲν περὶ τὰ ἀρχεῖα, ὥσπερ προειρήκαμεν, καὶ φυλακῆς ἕνεκα τῆς πόλεως καὶ σωφροσύνης· δοκεῖ γὰρ αὕτη ἡ ἡλικία μάλιστα ἐπιμελείας δεῖσθαι· παρέχουσι δὲ καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ἑαυτοὺς τοῖς ἄρχουσι χρῆσθαι ἢ τι δέωνται ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ. καὶ ὅταν μὲν δέῃ, πάντες μένουσι περὶ τὰ ἀρχεῖα· ὅταν δὲ ἐξίῃ βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ θήραν, ἐξάγει τὴν ἡμίσειαν τῆς φυλακῆς· ποιεῖ δὲ τοῦτο πολλάκις τοῦ μηνός. ἔχειν δὲ δεῖ τοὺς ἐξιόντας τόξα καὶ παρὰ τὴν φαρέτραν ἐν κολεῷ κοπίδα ἢ σάγαριν, ἔτι δὲ γέρρον καὶ παλτὰ δύο, ὥστε τὸ μὲν ἀφεῖναι, τῷ δ', ἂν δέῃ, ἐκ χειρὸς χρῆσθαι. διὰ τοῦτο δὲ δημοσίᾳ τοῦ θηρᾶν ἐπιμέλονται, καὶ βασιλεὺς ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ ἡγεμῶν ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς καὶ αὐτός τε θηρᾷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιμελεῖται ὅπως ἂν θηρῶσιν, ὅτι ἀληθεστάτη αὐτοῖς δοκεῖ εἶναι αὕτη ἡ μελέτη τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ γὰρ πρῶν ἀνίστασθαι ἐθίζει καὶ ψύχη καὶ θάληπῃ ἀνέχεσθαι, γυμνάζει δὲ καὶ ὁδοιπορίαις



δὲ εἰς τοὺς |aged 18 ἐξέρχονται. οὗτοι δ' αὖ οἱ |aged 18

|lead through; δε. δέκα ἔτη ἀφ' οὗ ἂν ἐκ παίδων ἐξέλθωσι  
|pass a time

κοιμῶνται μὲν περὶ τὰ |central , ὥσπερ προειρήκαμεν, καὶ  
|office

|guard, ἐνεκα τῆς πόλεως καὶ |discretion, δοκεῖ γὰρ  
|prison, |moderation

|watch  
αὕτη ἢ |time of life, |contem- |attention; as- δεῖσθαι· παρέχουσι  
|poraries |signed task

δὲ καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ἑαυτοὺς τοῖς ἄρχουσι χρῆσθαι ἣν τι

δέωνται ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ. καὶ ὅταν μὲν δέῃ, πάντες

μένουσι περὶ τὰ |central ὅταν δὲ ἐξίῃ βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ |hunt ,  
|office

|lead out ἣν ἡμίσειαν τῆς |guard, ποιεῖ δὲ τοῦτο |often  
|prison,

τοῦ μηνός. ἔχειν δὲ δεῖ |watch |go forth; is |bow καὶ παρὰ τὴν  
|possible

|quiver ἐν |sheath κοπίδα ἢ σάγαριν, ἔτι δὲ |wicker καὶ  
|object

|brandished, , ὥστε τὸ μὲν ἀφείναι, τῷ δ', ἂν δέῃ, ἐκ χειρὸς  
|hurled

χρῆσθαι. διὰ τοῦτο δὲ δημοσίᾳ τοῦ |hunt, ἐπιμέλονται,  
|chase

καὶ βασιλεὺς ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ |leader ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς

καὶ αὐτός τε |hunt, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων |take care of, ὅπως ἂν  
|chase |oversee

|hunt, , ὅτι ἀληθεστάτη αὐτοῖς δοκεῖ εἶναι αὕτη ἢ |care;  
|chase |practice

τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ γὰρ πρῶ ἀνίστασθαι |accustom.

|coolness ἢ θάληπ |raise; , |exercise, do  
|endure |training

and then they take their places as young men.

After that they spend their time as follows. For ten years they are bound to sleep at night round the public buildings, as we said before, and this for two reasons, to guard the community and to practise self-restraint; because that season of life, the Persians conceive, stands most in need of care. During the day they present themselves before the governors for service to the state, and, whenever necessary, they remain in a body round the public buildings. Moreover, when the king goes out to hunt, which he will do several times a month, he takes half the company with him, and each man must carry bow and arrows, a sheathed dagger, or "sagaris," slung beside the quiver, a light shield, and two javelins, one to hurl and the other to use, if need be, at close quarters. The reason of this public sanction for the chase is not far to seek; the king leads just as he does in war, hunting in person at the head of the field, and making his men follow, because it is felt that the exercise itself is the best possible training for the needs of war. It accustoms a man to early rising; it hardens him to endure heat and cold; it teaches him to march and to run at the

*vocabulary*

ἀηδής unpleasant

ἄκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute

ἄλκιμος brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

ἄμφω both ~amphora

ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat

δαπανάω spend, consume, waste

δειπνέω eat, dine

δείπνον meal, food

δείπνος meal, food

δήπου perhaps; is it not so?

διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay

~tribology

δρόμος running, racing ground

~hippodrome

ἐθίζω accustom

εἰκός likely

ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear

θίγω sharpen

θήρα hunt ~fierce

θηράω hunt, chase

λογίζομαι reckon, consider

μέχρι as far as, until

ὁμοῖος like ~homoerotic

ὁμόσε to the same spot ~homoerotic

ὅπου where

παίω hit

παραπίπτω fall in the way; go stray

σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite

τοξεύω shoot an arrow at ~toxic

ὕστεραίῳς the next; later

καὶ δρόμοις, ἀνάγκη δὲ καὶ τοξεῦσαι θηρίον καὶ ἀκοντίσαι  
ὅπου ἂν παραπίπτῃ. καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν δὲ πολλάκις ἀνάγκη  
θῆγεσθαι ὅταν τι τῶν ἀλκίμων θηρίων ἀνθιστῇται· παίειν  
μὲν γὰρ δήπου δεῖ τὸ ὁμόσε γιγνόμενον, φυλάξασθαι  
δὲ τὸ ἐπιφερόμενον· ὥστε οὐ ῥάδιον εὑρεῖν τί ἐν τῇ  
θήρᾳ ἄπεστι τῶν ἐν πολέμῳ παρόντων. ἐξέρχονται  
δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν θήραν ἄριστον ἔχοντες πλέον μὲν, ὡς τὸ  
εἰκός, τῶν παιδῶν, τᾶλλα δὲ ὅμοιον. καὶ θηρῶντες  
μὲν οὐκ ἂν ἀριστήσαιεν, ἣν δέ τι δεήσῃ ἢ θηρίου ἔνεκα  
ἐπικαταμεῖναι ἢ ἄλλως ἐθελήσωσι διατρῦψαι περὶ τὴν  
θήραν, τὸ οὖν ἄριστον τοῦτο δειπνήσαντες τὴν ὑστεραίαν  
αὐθιρῶσι μέχρι δείπνου, καὶ μίαν ἄμφω τούτῳ τὴν ἡμέραν  
λογίζονται, ὅτι μιᾶς ἡμέρας σίτον δαπανῶσι. τοῦτο δὲ  
ποιοῦσι τοῦ ἐθίξεσθαι ἔνεκα, ἵν' ἐάν τι καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ  
δεήσῃ, δύνωνται ταῦτό ποιεῖν. καὶ ὄψον δὲ τοῦτο ἔχουσιν  
οἱ τηλικούτοι ὅτι ἂν θηράσωσιν· εἰ δὲ μή, τὸ κάρδαμον.  
εἰ δέ τις αὐτοὺς οἶεται ἢ ἐσθίειν ἀηδῶς, ὅταν κάρδαμον  
μόνον ἔχωσιν ἐπὶ τῷ σίτῳ, ἢ πίνειν ἀηδῶς, ὅταν ὕδωρ  
πίνωσιν,

καὶ |running , ἀνάγκη δὲ καὶ |shoot an arrow at καὶ |throw, (+gen) at  
 |where ἔν |fall in the καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν δὲ |often ἀνάγκη  
 |way; go stray  
 |sharpen ὅταν τι τῶν |brave; θηρίων ἀνθιστῆται· |hit  
 |sturdily  
 μὲν γὰρ |perhaps; is it made not to the same spot ἴον, φυλάξασθαι  
 |so?  
 δὲ τὸ |bestow, impute ὥστε οὐ ράδιον εὐρεῖν τί ἐν τῇ  
 |hunt ἄπεστι τῶν ἐν πολέμῳ παρόντων. ἐξέρχονται  
 δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν |hunt ἄριστον ἔχοντες πλέον μὲν, ὡς τὸ  
 |likely , τῶν παίδων, τὰλλα δὲ ὅμοιον. καὶ |hunt, chase  
 μὲν οὐκ ἂν |eat lunch , ἣν δέ τι δεῖσῃ ἢ θηρίου ἔνεκα  
 ἐπικαταμεῖναι ἢ ἄλλως ἐθελήσωσι |wear down, delay τὴν  
 |hunt , τὸ οὖν ἄριστον τοῦτο |eat, dine τὴν |the next; later  
 αὖ |hunt, |as far as, until , καὶ μίαν ἄμφω τούτῳ τὴν ἡμέρα  
 |chase  
 |reckon, , ὅτι μιᾶς ἡμέρας σίτον |spend, con- τοῦτο δὲ  
 |consider |sume, waste  
 ποιῶσι τοῦ |accustom ἔνεκα, ἵν' ἐάν τι καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ  
 δεῖσῃ, δύνωνται ταῦτο ποιεῖν. καὶ ὄψον δὲ τοῦτο ἔχουσιν  
 οἱ τηλικούτοι ὅ τι ἂν |hunt, chase εἰ δὲ μή, τὸ κάρδαμον.  
 εἰ δέ τις αὐτοὺς οἶεται ἢ ἐσθίειν |unpleasant· αν κάρδαμον  
 μόνον ἔχωσιν ἐπὶ τῷ σίτῳ, ἢ πίνειν |unpleasant· αν ὕδωρ  
 πίνωσιν,

top of his speed; he must perforce learn to let fly arrow and javelin the moment the quarry is across his path; and, above all, the edge of his spirit must needs be sharpened by encountering any of the mightier beasts: he must deal his stroke when the creature closes, and stand on guard when it makes its rush: indeed, it would be hard to find a case in war that has not its parallel in the chase. But to proceed: the young men set out with provisions that are ampler, naturally, than the boys' fare, but otherwise the same. During the chase itself they would not think of breaking their fast, but if a halt is called, to beat up the game, or for any hunter's reason, then they will make, as it were, a dinner of their breakfast, and, hunting again on the morrow till dinner-time, they will count the two days as one, because they have only eaten one day's food. This they do in order that, if the like necessity should arise in war, they may be found equal to it. As relish to their bread these young men have whatever they may kill in the chase, or failing that, nasturtium like the boys. And if one should ask how they can enjoy the meal with nasturtium for their only condiment and water for their

*vocabulary***ἀγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄθλον** ἀέθλου prize ~athlete**ἄκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀναμνηστικῶς** (+2 acc) remind

someone ~mnemonic

**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**δαήμων** skilled, experienced ~didactic**δημόσιος** public, the state**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**διαγωνίζομαι** contend against**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**διατρίβω** (ι) wear down, delay

~tribology

**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐρευνάω** hunt for**ἔφηβος** aged 18**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops**κακοῦργος** causing evil ~ergonomics**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κοινώω** make common; cooperate**ληιστής** -οὺς (m, 3) bandit**ληιστός** lootable ~lucre**ληιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) bandit**μᾶζα** barley bread; lump**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**παιδεύω** raise; train**πεινάω** be hungry**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**προτίθημι** set before ~thesis**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**τέλειος** finished ~apostle**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic**ὕποτρέχω** run in under**φρουρέω** keep watch**φυλή** (ι) tribe, military unit

ἀναμνησθήτω πῶς μὲν ἡδὺ μᾶζα καὶ ἄρτος πεινῶντι  
 φαγεῖν, πῶς δὲ ἡδὺ ὕδωρ πιεῖν διψῶντι. αἱ δ' αὖ μένουσαι  
 φυλαὶ διατρίβουσι μελετῶσαι τά τε ἄλλα ἃ παῖδες ὄντες  
 ἔμαθον καὶ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν, καὶ διαγωνιζόμενοι  
 ταῦτα πρὸς ἀλλήλους διατελοῦσιν. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ δημόσιοι  
 τούτων ἀγῶνες καὶ ἄθλα προτίθεται· ἐν ἧ δ' ἂν τῶν  
 φυλῶν πλείστοι ὧσι δαημονέστατοι καὶ ἀνδρικότατοι καὶ  
 εὐπιστότατοι, ἐπαινοῦσιν οἱ πολῖται καὶ τιμῶσιν οὐ μόνον  
 τὸν νῦν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅστις αὐτοὺς παῖδας  
 ὄντας ἐπαίδευσε. χρῶνται δὲ τοῖς μένουσι τῶν ἐφήβων αἱ  
 ἀρχαί, ἥν τι ἢ φρουρῆσαι δεήσῃ ἢ κακούργους ἐρευνῆσαι  
 ἢ ληστὰς ὑποδραμεῖν ἢ καὶ ἄλλο τι ὅσα ἰσχύος ἢ τάχους  
 ἔργα ἐστί. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οἱ ἔφηβοι πράττουσιν. ἐπειδὴν  
 δὲ τὰ δέκα ἔτη διατελέσωσιν, ἐξέρχονται εἰς τοὺς τελείους  
 ἄνδρας. ἀφ' οὗ δ' ἂν ἐξέλθωσι χρόνου οὗτοι αὖ πέντε καὶ  
 εἴκοσι ἔτη διάγουσιν ὧδε. πρῶτον μὲν ὥσπερ οἱ ἔφηβοι  
 παρέχουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ταῖς ἀρχαῖς χρῆσθαι, ἥν τι δέῃ ὑπὲρ  
 τοῦ κοινοῦ, ὅσα φρονούντων τε ἡδὴ ἔργα ἐστὶ καὶ ἔτι



ἀναμνησθήτω πῶς μὲν |sweet|barley καὶ ἄρτος |be hungry  
 |bread;  
 φαγεῖν, πῶς δὲ |sweet|ῶρ πιεῖν |be thirsty. αἱ δ' αὖ μένουσαι  
 |tribe |wear down, |pursue, attend |ἵ τε ἄλλα ἃ παῖδες ὄντες  
 |delay |to, exercise  
 ἔμαθον καὶ |shoot an arrow|throw, (+gen) at |contend against  
 |at  
 ταῦτα πρὸς ἀλλήλους |accomplish; |εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ |public, the state  
 |keep doing  
 τούτων ἀγῶνες καὶ |prize |set before ἐν ᾗ δ' ἂν τῶν  
 |tribe πλείστοι ὦσι |skilled καὶ ἀνδρικώτατοι καὶ  
 εὐπιστότατοι, |concur οἱ πολῖται καὶ τιμῶσιν οὐ μόνον  
 τὸν νῦν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅστις αὐτοὺς παῖδας  
 ὄντας |raise; train . χρῶνται δὲ τοῖς μένουσι τῶν |aged 18 αἱ  
 ἀρχαί, ἣν τι ἡ |keep watch δεήσῃ ἡ κακούργους |hunt for  
 ἡ ληστὰς |run in under ἡ καὶ ἄλλο τι ὅσα |strength; |speed  
 |body of  
 ἔργα ἐστί. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οἱ |aged 18 πρᾶτ'τούσιν. ἐπειδὰν  
 |troops  
 δὲ τὰ δέκα ἔτη |accomplish; , ἐξέρχονται εἰς τοὺς |finished  
 |keep doing  
 ἄνδρας. ἀφ' οὗ δ' ἂν ἐξέλθωσι χρόνου οὗτοι αὖ πέντε καὶ  
 εἴκοσιν ἔτη |lead through; |ε. πρῶτον μὲν ὥσπερ οἱ |aged 18  
 |pass a time  
 παρέχουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ταῖς ἀρχαῖς χρήσθαι, ἣν τι δέη ὑπὲρ  
 τοῦ κοινοῦ, ὅσα φρονούντων τε ἤδη ἔργα ἐστὶ καὶ ἔτι

only drink, let him bethink himself how sweet barley bread and wheaten can taste to the hungry man and water to the thirsty. As for the young men who are left at home, they spend their time in shooting and hurling the javelin, and practising all they learnt as boys, in one long trial of skill. Beside this, public games are open to them and prizes are offered; and the tribe which can claim the greatest number of lads distinguished for skill and courage and faithfulness is given the meed of praise from all the citizens, who honour, not only their present governor, but the teacher who trained them when they were boys. Moreover, these young men are also employed by the magistrates if garrison work needs to be done or if malefactors are to be tracked or robbers run down, or indeed on any errand which calls for strength of limb and fleetness of foot. Such is the life of the youth. But when the ten years are accomplished they are classed as grown men. And from this time forth for five-and- twenty years they live as follows.

First they present themselves, as in youth, before the magistrates for service to the state wherever there is need for strength and sound sense combined. If an expedition be on

*vocabulary***ἀγχέμαχος** hand-to-hand**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἄτιμος** (ι) without honor**βίος** life ~biology**γεραιός** old ~geriatric**γέρρον** wicker object**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**διδάσκαλος** teacher**δικάζω** judge**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἔφηβος** aged 18**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κοινός** communal, ordinary**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παιδεύω** raise; train**παλτός** brandished, hurled**Πέρσης** Persian**ποῖ** whither? how long?**στέρνον** breast, chest, seat of feelings

~sternum

**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**τέλειος** finished ~apostle**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case**τόξον** bow ~toxic

δυναμένων. ἦν δέ ποι δέη στρατεύεσθαι, τόξα μὲν οἱ οὕτω πεπαιδευμένοι οὐκέτι ἔχοντες οὐδὲ παλὰ στρατεύονται, τὰ δὲ ἀγχέμαχα ὄπλα καλούμενα, θώρακά τε περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις καὶ γέρρον ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ, οἷόνπερ γράφονται οἱ Πέρσαι ἔχοντες, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ μάχαιραν ἢ κοπίδα. καὶ αἱ ἀρχαὶ δὲ πᾶσαι ἐκ τούτων καθίστανται πλὴν οἱ τῶν παίδων διδάσκαλοι. ἐπειδὴν δὲ τὰ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν ἔτη διατελέσωσιν, εἴησαν μὲν ἂν οὗτοι πλεόν τι γεγονότες ἢ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς· ἐξέρχονται δὲ τηνικαῦτα εἰς τοὺς γεραιτέρους ὄντας τε καὶ καλουμένους. οἱ δ' αὖ γεραιτέροι οὗτοι στρατεύονται μὲν οὐκέτι ἔξω τῆς ἐαυτῶν, οἴκοι δὲ μένοντες δικάζουσι τά τε κοινὰ καὶ τὰ ἴδια πάντα. καὶ θανάτου δὲ οὗτοι κρίνουσι, καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς οὗτοι πάσας αἰροῦνται· καὶ ἦν τις ἢ ἐν ἐφήβοις ἢ ἐν τελείοις ἀνδράσιν ἐλλίπη τι τῶν νομίμων, φαίνουσι μὲν οἱ φύλαρχοι ἕκαστοι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὁ βουλόμενος, οἱ δὲ γεραιτέροι ἀκούσαντες ἐκκρίνουσιν· ὁ δὲ ἐκκριθεὶς ἄτιμος διατελεῖ τὸν λοιπὸν βίον.

δυναμένων. ἤν δέ ποι δέη |make an expedi-|bow μὲν οἱ οὕτω  
 |raise; train οὐκέτι ἔχοντες οὐδὲ |brandish|make an expedition,  
 |hurled |war, campaign  
 τὰ δὲ |hand-to- |tool καλούμενα, |breastplate εἰ περὶ τοῖς  
 |chest καὶ |wicker ἐν τῇ |left-hand , οἷόν περ γράφονται  
 |object  
 οἱ Πέρσαι ἔχοντες, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ |knife ἥ κοπίδα.  
 καὶ αἱ ἀρχαὶ δὲ πᾶσαι ἐκ τούτων καθίστανται πλὴν  
 οἱ τῶν παίδων |teacher . |when, δὲ τὰ πέντε καὶ  
 |after  
 εἵκοσιν ἔτη |accomplish; , εἶσαν μὲν ἂν οὗτοι πλέον τι  
 |keep doing  
 γεγονότες ἢ τὰ |fifty ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς· ἐξέρχονται δὲ  
 |at that time, εἰς τοὺς |old ὄντας τε καὶ καλουμένους.  
 |in that case  
 οἱ δ' αὖ |old οὗτοι |make an expedition, οὐκέτι ἔξω  
 |war, campaign  
 τῆς ἐαυτῶν, |at home ἐ μένοντες |judge τά τε |communal,  
 |ordinary  
 καὶ τὰ ἴδια πάντα. καὶ θανάτου δὲ οὗτοι κρίνουσι,  
 καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς οὗτοι πάσας αἰροῦνται· καὶ ἤν τις ἢ ἐν  
 |aged 18 ἢ ἐν |finished ἀνδράσιν ἐλλίπη τι τῶν |customary,  
 |legal, natural  
 φαίνουσι μὲν οἱ φύλαρχοι ἕκαστοι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὁ  
 βουλόμενος, οἱ δὲ |old ἀκούσαντες ἐκκρίνουσιν·  
 ὁ δὲ ἐκκριθεὶς |without διατελεῖ τὸν λοιπὸν |life .  
 |honor

foot the men of this grade march out, not armed with the bow or the light shield any longer, but equipped with what are called the close-combat arms, a breastplate up to the throat, a buckler on the left arm (just as the Persian warrior appears in pictures), and for the right hand a dagger or a sword. Lastly, it is from this grade that all the magistrates are appointed except the teachers for the boys. But when the five-and- twenty years are over and the men have reached the age of fifty years or more, then they take rank as elders, and the title is deserved. These elders no longer go on military service beyond the frontier; they stay at home and decide all cases, public and private both. Even capital charges are left to their decision, and it is they who choose all the magistrates. If a youth or a grown man breaks the law he is brought into court by the governors of his tribe, who act as suitors in the case, aided by any other citizen who pleases. The cause is heard before the elders and they pronounce judgment; and the man who is condemned is disenfranchised for the

*vocabulary*

**ἀνεπίληπτος** unimpeachable, not attacked

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away

**ἀργέω** not work; (pass) be fruitless, left undone

**βραχύς** low, short

**γεραιός** old ~geriatric

**δηλώω** show, disclose

**δημόσιος** public, the state

**διαγίγνομαι** go through; subsist

~genus

**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**διδάσκαλος** teacher

**δικαιοσύνη** justice

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐπάνειμι** return

**ἔφηβος** aged 18

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**μετέχω** partake of

**μυριάς** -δος (ῶ, f, 3) countless, myriad

**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural

**παιδεύω** raise; train

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πολιτεία** (ῖ) citizenship; government

**προερέω** say beforehand

**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect

~legion

**σαφής** clear, understandable

**συναλίζω** collect; eat with

**τέλειος** finished ~apostle

**τιμάω** (ῖ) honor, exalt

**τιμόω** honor, exalt

Ἵνα δὲ σαφέστερον δηλωθῇ πᾶσα ἡ Περσῶν πολιτεία,  
 μικρὸν ἐπάνειμι· νῦν γὰρ ἐν βραχυτάτῳ ἂν δηλωθείη  
 διὰ τὰ προειρημένα. λέγονται μὲν γὰρ Πέρσαι ἀμφὶ  
 τὰς δώδεκα μυριάδας εἶναι· τούτων δ' οὐδεὶς ἀπελήλαται  
 νόμῳ τιμῶν καὶ ἀρχῶν, ἀλλ' ἔξεστι πᾶσι Πέρσαις  
 πέμπειν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν παῖδας εἰς τὰ κοινὰ τῆς δικαιοσύνης  
 διδασκαλεία. ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν δυνάμενοι τρέφειν τοὺς παῖδας  
 ἀργοῦντας πέμπουσιν, οἱ δὲ μὴ δυνάμενοι οὐ πέμπουσιν.  
 οἱ δ' ἂν παιδευθῶσι παρὰ τοῖς δημοσίοις διδασκάλοις,  
 ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς ἐν τοῖς ἐφήβοις νεανισκεύεσθαι, τοῖς δὲ μὴ  
 διαπαιδευθεῖσιν οὕτως οὐκ ἔξεστιν. οἱ δ' ἂν αὖ ἐν τοῖς  
 ἐφήβοις διατελέσωσι τὰ νόμιμα ποιοῦντες, ἔξεστι τούτοις  
 εἰς τοὺς τελείους ἄνδρας συναλίζεσθαι καὶ ἀρχῶν καὶ  
 τιμῶν μετέχειν, οἱ δ' ἂν μὴ διαγένωνται ἐν τοῖς ἐφήβοις,  
 οὐκ εἰσέρχονται εἰς τοὺς τελείους. οἱ δ' ἂν αὖ ἐν τοῖς  
 τελείοις διαγένωνται ἀνεπίληπτοι, οὗτοι τῶν γεραιτέρων  
 γίνονται. οὕτω μὲν δὴ οἱ γεραίτεροι διὰ πάντων τῶν  
 καλῶν ἐλληλυθότες καθίστανται· καὶ ἡ πολιτεία αὕτη, ἥ



ἵνα δὲ |clear, under-|show, *πάσα ἡ Περσῶν* |citizenship;  
|standable |disclose |government

*μικρὸν* |return *νῦν γὰρ ἐν* |low, short *ἂν* |show,  
|disclose

*διὰ τὰ προειρημένα. λέγονται μὲν γὰρ Πέρσαι ἀμφὶ*

*τὰς* |twelve |countless, *εἶναι· τούτων δ' οὐδεὶς* |expel, exclude, ward off;  
|myriad |(intrans) ride away

*νόμῳ τιμῶν καὶ ἀρχῶν, ἀλλ' ἔξεστι πᾶσι Πέρσαις*

*πέμπειν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν παῖδας εἰς τὰ* |communal, |justice  
|ordinary

*διδασκαλείᾳ. ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν δυνάμενοι* |nurture *τοὺς παῖδας*

|not work; (pass) be |σιν, οἱ δὲ μὴ δυνάμενοι οὐ πέμπουσιν.  
|fruitless, left undone

*οἱ δ' ἂν* |raise; train *παρὰ τοῖς* |public, the|teacher  
|state

*ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς ἐν τοῖς* |aged 18 *νεανισκεύεσθαι, τοῖς δὲ μὴ*

*διαπαιδευθεῖσιν οὕτως οὐκ ἔξεστιν. οἱ δ' ἂν αὖ ἐν τοῖς*

|aged 18 |accomplish; *τὰ νόμιμα ποιοῦντες, ἔξεστι τούτοις*  
|keep doing

*εἰς τοὺς* |finished *ἄνδρας συναλίζεσθαι καὶ ἀρχῶν καὶ*

*τιμῶν* |partake of *οἱ δ' ἂν μὴ* |go through; subsist *οἷς* |aged 18 ,

*οὐκ εἰσέρχονται εἰς τοὺς* |finished *οἱ δ' ἂν αὖ ἐν τοῖς*

|finished |go through; |unimpeachable, *οἷτοι τῶν* |old  
|subsist |not attacked

*γίγνονται. οὕτω μὲν δὴ οἱ* |old *διὰ πάντων τῶν*

*καλῶν ἐλλυθότες καθίστανται· καὶ ἡ* |citizenship;...*ῖτη, ἡ*  
|government

rest of his days.

And now, to complete the picture of the whole Persian policy, I will go back a little. With the help of what has been said before, the account may now be brief; the Persians are said to number something like one hundred and twenty thousand men: and of these no one is by law debarred from honour or office. On the contrary, every Persian is entitled to send his children to the public schools of righteousness and justice. As a fact, all who can afford to bring up their children without working do send them there: those who cannot must forego the privilege. A lad who has passed through a public school has a right to go and take his place among the youths, but those who have not gone through the first course may not join them. In the same way the youths who have fulfilled the duties of their class are entitled eventually to rank with the men, and to share in office and honour: but they must first spend their full time among the youths; if not, they go no further. Finally, those who as grown men have lived without reproach may take their station at last among the elders. Thus these elders form a college, every member of which has passed through the full circle of noble learning; and this is that Persian polity and that Persian training which, in their belief, can win them the flower of excellence. And even to this day signs

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on**ἀνδρεῖος** of a man, manly**ἀπομύσσω** blow one's nose**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δίαίτα** way of life; home; arbitration**ἐμμένω** stay put, be faithful, fixed**ἡλιξ** -κος (m) of the same age**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μαρτύριον** testimony, proof**μεστός** full**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

**μέτριος** medium, moderate**μέχρι** as far as, until**ὀρμέω** be anchored**οὔρέω** piss**παιδεία** child-rearing, education**παιδεύω** raise; train**Πέρσης** Persian**πῃ** somewhere, somehow**ποῖ** whither? how long?**πτύω** (ϋ) spit out**ὕγρός** wet**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φῦσα** bellows

οἶονται χρώμενοι βέλτιστοι ἂν εἶναι. καὶ νῦν δὲ ἔτι ἐμμένει μαρτύρια καὶ τῆς μετρίας διαίτης αὐτῶν καὶ τοῦ ἐκπονεῖσθαι τὴν δίαιταν. αἰσχροὺς μὲν γὰρ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐστὶ Πέρσαις καὶ τὸ πτύειν καὶ τὸ ἀπομύττεσθαι καὶ τὸ φύσης μεστοὺς φαίνεσθαι, αἰσχροὺς δὲ ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ ἰόντα ποι φανερόν γενέσθαι ἢ τοῦ οὐρῆσαι ἔνεκα ἢ καὶ ἄλλου τινὸς τοιούτου. ταῦτα δὲ οὐκ ἂν ἐδύναντο ποιεῖν, εἰ μὴ καὶ διαίτη μετρία ἐχρῶντο καὶ τὸ ὑγρὸν ἐκπονοῦντες ἀνήλiskon, ὥστε ἄλλη πη ἀποχωρεῖν. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ κατὰ πάντων Περσῶν ἔχομεν λέγειν· οὗ δ' ἔνεκα ὁ λόγος ὠρμήθη, νῦν λέξομεν τὰς Κύρου πράξεις ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ παιδός.

### 1.3

Κῦρος γὰρ μέχρι μὲν δώδεκα ἐτῶν ἢ ὀλίγῳ πλέον ταύτῃ τῇ παιδείᾳ ἐπαιδεύθη, καὶ πάντων τῶν ἡλικίων διαφέρων ἐφαίνετο καὶ εἰς τὸ ταχὺ μανθάνειν ἃ δέοι καὶ εἰς τὸ καλῶς καὶ ἀνδρείως ἕκαστα ποιεῖν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου μετεπέμψατο Ἀστυάγης τὴν ἑαυτοῦ

οἶονται χρώμενοι |best, αν̄ εἶναι. καὶ νῦν δὲ ἔτι  
 |noblest  
 |stay put; testimony, καὶ τῆς |medium, |way of life; home; αἰ τοῦ  
 |be faith-|proof |moderate |arbitration  
 |ful, fixed  
 ἐκπονεῖσθαι τὴν |way of life; shameful μὲν γὰρ ἔτι καὶ νῦν  
 |home; arbi-  
 |tration  
 ἐστι Πέρσαις καὶ τὸ |spit out καὶ τὸ |blow one's nose καὶ τὸ  
 |bellows |full φαίνεσθαι, |shameful δέ ἐστι καὶ τὸ ἰόντα  
 ποι |visible, , νέσθαι ἢ τοῦ |piss |because, that ἄλλου  
 |conspicuous  
 τινὸς τοιούτου. ταῦτα δὲ οὐκ αν̄ ἐδύναντο ποιεῖν, εἰ  
 μὴ καὶ |way |medium, ἔρῳντο καὶ τὸ |wet ἐκπονοῦντες  
 |of life; moderate  
 |consume |home; ὥστε ἄλλη πη |go away ταῦτα μὲν δὴ  
 |spend on |arbitra- |tion |from, retreat  
 κατὰ πάντων Περσῶν ἔχομεν λέγειν· οὐ δ' |because, that, ὥς  
 ὠρμήθη, νῦν λέξομεν τὰς Κύρου πράξεις ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ  
 παιδός.

## 1.3

|authority; ῥ |as far, ἄs, twelve ἐτῶν ἢ ὀλίγῳ πλέον ταύτῃ  
 |validity |until  
 τῇ |child- |raise; train , καὶ πάντων τῶν ἡλίκων |carry on;  
 |rearing, |differ; excel  
 |education  
 ἐφαίνετο καὶ εἰς τὸ ταχὺ |learn ἃ δέοι καὶ εἰς τὸ καλῶς  
 καὶ |of a man, manly τα ποιεῖν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου  
 |send; (mid) summon ἰγῆς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ

are left bearing witness to that ancient temperance of theirs and the ancient discipline that preserved it. To this day it is still considered shameful for a Persian to spit in public, or wipe the nose, or show signs of wind, or be seen going apart for his natural needs. And they could not keep to this standard unless they were accustomed to a temperate diet, and were trained to exercise and toil, so that the humours of the body were drawn off in other ways. Hitherto we have spoken of the Persians as a whole: we will now go back to our starting-point and recount the deeds of Cyrus from his childhood.

### 1.3

Until he was twelve years old or more, Cyrus was brought up in the manner we have described, and showed himself to be above all his fellows in his aptitude for learning and in the noble and manly performance of every duty. But about this time, Astyages sent for

*vocabulary***ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**δέρη** neck, throat, mane**δέρω** skin, flay ~tear**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**ἐμβλέπω** face, look at**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὖ) wish, covet**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**εὐτελής** of little worth**κάνδυσ** sleeved jacket**κόμη** hair ~comet**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**πάππος** grandfather**Πέρσης** Persian**πορφυρέω** heave (like the sea)**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πρόσθετος** applied, added**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace  
~strep throat**φαῦλος** trifling**φιλόστοργος** affectionate**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)  
~physics**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor**χρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) color**ψέλιον** armlet, anklet

θυγατέρα καὶ τὸν παῖδα αὐτῆς· ἰδεῖν γὰρ ἐπεθύμει, ὅτι ἤκουεν αὐτὸν καλὸν καὶ ἀγαθὸν εἶναι. ἔρχεται δὲ αὐτῇ τε ἡ Μανδάνη πρὸς τὸν πατέρα καὶ τὸν Κῦρον τὸν υἱὸν ἔχουσα. ὥς δὲ ἀφίκετο τάχιστα καὶ ἔγνω ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀστυάγην τῆς μητρὸς πατέρα ὄντα, εὐθὺς οἶα δὴ παῖς φύσει φιλόστοργος ὣν ἡσπάζετό τε αὐτὸν ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις πάλαι συντεθραμμένος καὶ πάλαι φιλῶν ἀσπάζοιτο, καὶ ὁρῶν δὴ αὐτὸν κεκοσμημένον καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν ὑπογραφῇ καὶ χρώματος ἐντρίβει καὶ κόμαις προσθέτοις, ἃ δὴ νόμιμα ἦν ἐν Μήδοις· ταῦτα γὰρ πάντα Μηδικὰ ἐστὶ, καὶ οἱ πορφυροῖ χιτῶνες καὶ οἱ κάνδυες καὶ οἱ στρεπτοὶ οἱ περὶ τῇ δέρῃ καὶ τὰ ψέλια τὰ περὶ ταῖς χερσίν, ἐν Πέρσαις δὲ τοῖς οἴκοι καὶ νῦν ἔτι πολὺ καὶ ἐσθῆτες φαυλότεραι καὶ δίαται εὐτελέστεραι· ὁρῶν δὴ τὸν κόσμον τοῦ πάππου, ἐμβλέπων αὐτῷ ἔλεγεν· ὦ μῆτερ, ὥς καλὸς μοι ὁ πάππος. ἐρωτώσης δὲ αὐτὸν τῆς μητρὸς πότερος καλλίων αὐτῷ δοκεῖ εἶναι, ὁ πατὴρ ἢ οὗτος, ἀπεκρίνατο ἄρα ὁ Κῦρος· ὦ μῆτερ, Περσῶν μὲν πολὺ κάλλιστος



|daughter καὶ τὸν παῖδα αὐτῆς· ἰδεῖν γὰρ |wish, covet, ὅτι  
 ἤκουεν αὐτὸν καλὸν καγαθὸν εἶναι. ἔρχεται δὲ αὐτὴ τε  
 ἡ Μανδάνη πρὸς τὸν πατέρα καὶ τὸν Κῦρον τὸν υἱὸν  
 ἔχουσα. ὥς δὲ |arrive τάχιστα καὶ ἔγνω ὁ Κῦρος τὸν  
 Ἀστυάγην τῆς μητρὸς πατέρα ὄντα, εὐθὺς οἶα δὴ παῖς  
 φύσει |affectionate ὦν |greet, salute τε αὐτὸν ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις  
 πάλαι συντεθραμμένος καὶ πάλαι φιλῶν |greet, salute, καὶ  
 ὁρῶν δὴ αὐτὸν |marshal, array καὶ |eye ὑπογραφῇ  
 καὶ |color ἐντρίψει καὶ |hair |applied, added, ἃ δὴ  
 νόμμη ἦν ἐν Μήδοις· ταῦτα γὰρ πάντα Μηδικά ἐστι,  
 καὶ οἱ |heave (like)tunic καὶ οἱ |sleeved jacket καὶ οἱ |pliant; type of necklace  
 οἱ περὶ τῇ δέρῃ καὶ τὰ |armlet, anklet, τὰ περὶ ταῖς χερσίν, ἐν  
 Πέρσαις δὲ τοῖς |at home· καὶ νῦν ἔτι πολὺ καὶ ἐσθῆτες  
 |trifling καὶ |way of life; |of little worth ὁρῶν δὴ τὸν |order; adornment  
 τοῦ |grandfather, face, look at, arbitration, ὑπὸ ἔλεγεν· ὦ μῆτερ, ὥς καλὸς  
 μοι ὁ |grandfather ask δὲ αὐτὸν τῆς μητρὸς |which, whichever  
 καλλίων αὐτῷ δοκεῖ εἶναι, ὁ πατὴρ ἢ οὗτος, |to separate; reject; (mp) answer, defend oneself  
 ἄρα ὁ Κῦρος· ὦ μῆτερ, Περσῶν μὲν πολὺ κάλλιστος

his daughter and her son, desiring greatly to see him because he had heard how noble and fair he was. So it fell out that Mandane came to Astyages, bringing her son Cyrus with her. And as soon as they met, the boy, when he heard that Astyages was his mother's father, fell on his neck and kissed him without more ado, like the loving lad nature had made him, as though he had been brought up at his grandfather's side from the first and the two of them had been playmates of old. Then he looked closer and saw that the king's eyes were stencilled and his cheeks painted, and that he wore false curls after the fashion of the Medes in those days (for these adornments, and the purple robes, the tunics, the necklaces, and the bracelets, they are all Median first and last, not Persian; the Persian, as you find him at home even now-a-days, still keeps to his plainer dress and his plainer style of living.) The boy, seeing his grandfather's splendour, kept his eyes fixed on him, and cried, "Oh, mother, how beautiful my grandfather is!" Then his mother asked him which he thought the handsomer, his father or his grandfather, and he answered at once, "My father is the handsomest

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀπογεύω** give a taste of  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**βρώμα** -τος (n, 3) food; hole eaten in something ~voracious  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δείπνον** meal, food  
**δείπνος** meal, food  
**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard  
**εἴωθα** be accustomed, in the habit  
**ἐνδύω** go into, put on  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly ~hedonism  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἵππεύω** ride  
**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics

**ὄρεινός** mountainous  
**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold  
**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**περιάγω** lead around  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**ποθέω** miss, long for, notice an absence; lose ~bid  
**ποῖ** whither? how long?  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**σπάνιος** rare, scanty  
**στολή** equipment  
**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace  
 ~strep throat  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt  
**ὑπερχαίρω** rejoice greatly at  
**χρυσοχάλινος** (ῶι) gold-bridled  
**ψέλιον** armlet, anklet

ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ, Μήδων μέντοι ὅσων ἐώρακα ἐγὼ καὶ ἐν  
 ταῖς ὁδοῖς καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις πολὺ οὗτος ὁ ἐμὸς πάππος  
 κάλλιστος. ἀντασπαζόμενος δὲ ὁ πάππος αὐτὸν καὶ  
 στολὴν καλὴν ἐνέδυσσε καὶ στρεπτοῖς καὶ ψελίοις ἐτίμα  
 καὶ ἐκόσμει, καὶ εἴ ποι ἐξελαύνει, ἐφ' ἵππου χρυσοχαλίνου  
 περιῆγεν, ὥσπερ καὶ αὐτὸς εἰώθει πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ  
 Κῦρος ἄτε παῖς ὢν καὶ φιλόκαλος καὶ φιλότιμος ἤδετο τῇ  
 στολῇ, καὶ ἱππεύειν μανθάνων ὑπερέχαιρεν· ἐν Πέρσαις  
 γὰρ διὰ τὸ χαλεπὸν εἶναι καὶ τρέφειν ἵππους καὶ ἱππεύειν  
 ἐν ὀρεινῇ οὔσῃ τῇ χώρᾳ καὶ ἰδεῖν ἵππον πάνυ σπάνιον  
 ἦν. δειπνῶν δὲ δὴ ὁ Ἀστυάγης σὺν τῇ θυγατρὶ καὶ τῷ  
 Κύρῳ, βουλόμενος τὸν παῖδα ὡς ἥδιστα δειπνεῖν, ἵνα  
 ἦττον τὰ οἴκαδε ποθοίῃ, προσῆγεν αὐτῷ καὶ παροψίδας  
 καὶ παντοδαπὰ ἐμβάσματα καὶ βρώματα. τὸν δὲ Κῦρόν  
 φασὶ λέγειν· ὦ πάππε, ὅσα πράγματα ἔχεις ἐν τῷ δείπνῳ,  
 εἰ ἀνάγκη σοι ἐπὶ πάντα τὰ λεκάρια ταῦτα διατείνειν  
 τὰς χεῖρας καὶ ἀπογεύεσθαι τούτων τῶν παντοδαπῶν  
 βρωμάτων. Τί δέ, φάναι τὸν Ἀστυάγην, οὐ γὰρ πολὺ

ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ, Μήδων μέντοι ὅσων ἐώρακα ἐγὼ καὶ ἐν  
 ταῖς ὁδοῖς καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς |door πολὺ οὗτος ὁ ἐμὸς |grandfather  
 κάλλιστος. ἀντασπαζόμενος δὲ ὁ |grandfather ἵπτον καὶ  
 |equipment ἄλῃν |go into, put ὅν τρεπτοῖς καὶ |armlet, |honor  
 καὶ |marshal, , καὶ εἴ ποί |drive out , ἐφ' ἵππου |gold-bridled  
 |array  
 |lead around ὅσπερ καὶ αὐτὸς |be accustomed, σθαι. ὁ δὲ  
 |in the habit  
 Κῦρος ἄτε παῖς ὢν καὶ φιλόκαλος καὶ φιλότιμος ἤδετο τῇ  
 |equipment ἰ |ride μανθάνων |rejoice greatly ἐν Πέρσαις  
 |at  
 γὰρ διὰ τὸ χαλεπὸν εἶναι καὶ |nurture ἵππους καὶ |ride  
 ἐν ὀρεινῇ οὐσῇ τῇ χώρᾳ καὶ ἰδεῖν ἵππον |alto- |rare,  
 |gether, |scanty  
 ἦν. |eat, dine δὲ δὴ ὁ Ἀστυάγης σὺν τῇ θυγατρὶ καὶ τῷ  
 |very  
 Κύρῳ, βουλόμενος τὸν παῖδα ὡς ἥδιστα |eat, dine , ἵνα  
 ἦττον τὰ |home- |miss, |bring to a place ῥ καὶ παροψίδας  
 |ward |long for,  
 καὶ παντοδαπὰ ἐξ ὀψώνια καὶ |food . τὸν δὲ Κῦρόν  
 |notice an  
 |absence;  
 |lose  
 φασὶ λέγειν· Ὡ |grandfather ἰ πράγματα ἔχεις ἐν τῷ δείπνῳ,  
 εἰ |necessity σοὶ ἐπὶ πάντα τὰ λεκάρια ταῦτα |extend; (mp)  
 |try hard  
 τὰς χεῖρας καὶ |ἀπογεύω?: give a taste of; ὥ παντοδαπῶν  
 |ἀπογεύω?: give a taste of  
 |food . Τί δέ, φάναι τὸν Ἀστυάγην, οὐ γὰρ πολὺ

of all the Persians, but my grandfather much the handsomest of all the Medes I ever set eyes on, at home or abroad.” At that Astyages drew the child to his heart, and gave him a beautiful robe and bracelets and necklaces in sign of honour, and when he rode out, the boy must ride beside him on a horse with a golden bridle, just like King Astyages himself. And Cyrus, who had a soul as sensitive to beauty as to honour, was pleased with the splendid robe, and overjoyed at learning to ride, for a horse is a rare sight in Persia, a mountainous country, and one little suited to the breed.

Now Cyrus and his mother sat at meat with the king, and Astyages, wishing the lad to enjoy the feast and not regret his home, plied him with dainties of every sort. At that, so says the story, Cyrus burst out, “Oh, grandfather, what trouble you must give yourself reaching for all these dishes and tasting all these wonderful foods!” “Ah, but,” said Astyages, “is not this

*vocabulary*

**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea

**ἁπλός** single; simple ~haploid

**ἀποψάω** wipe off

**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch,  
seize ~haptic

**ἄρτος** bread, loaf

**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with

**βρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) food; hole eaten in  
something ~voracious

**γεύω** taste ~gusto

**δεῖπνον** meal, food

**δεῖπνος** meal, food

**ἐλιγμός** winding, convolution

**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with

**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then

**εὐωχέω** fete, feed well

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**θιγγάνω** touch

**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine

**μόλις** with difficulty, barely

**μισάσσομαι** be disgusted by

**νεανίας** -ου (ᾱα, m) young person

**ὅποι** to which place

**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo

**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas

**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas

**πάππος** grandfather

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander  
~plankton

**προσδοκάω** expect

**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
~repudiate

**τεκμαίρομαι** conclude, declare from  
evidence

**τοίνυν** well, then

**χειρόμακτρον** towel, head-cloth

σοι δοκεῖ εἶναι κάλλιον τόδε τὸ δεῖπνον τοῦ ἐν Πέρσαις;  
 τὸν δὲ Κῦρον πρὸς ταῦτα ἀποκρίνασθαι λέγεται· Οὐκ, ὦ  
 πάππε, ἀλλὰ πολὺ ἀπλουστέρα καὶ εὐθυτέρα παρ' ἡμῖν  
 ἢ ὁδός ἐστιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἐμπλησθῆναι ἢ παρ' ὑμῖν· ἡμᾶς μὲν  
 γὰρ ἄρτος καὶ κρέα εἰς τοῦτο ἄγει, ὑμεῖς δὲ εἰς μὲν  
 τὸ αὐτὸ ἡμῖν σπεύδετε, πολλοὺς δέ τινες ἐλιγμοὺς ἄνω  
 καὶ κάτω πλανώμενοι μόλις ἀφικνεῖσθε ὅποι ἡμεῖς πάλαι  
 ἤκομεν. Ἄλλ', ὦ παῖ, φάναι τὸν Ἀστυάγην, οὐκ ἀχθόμενοι  
 ταῦτα περιπλανώμεθα· γευόμενος δὲ καὶ σύ, ἔφη, γνώσῃ  
 ὅτι ἡδέα ἐστίν. Ἄλλὰ καὶ σέ, φάναι τὸν Κῦρον, ὁρῶ,  
 ὦ πάππε, μυσσαττόμενον ταῦτα τὰ βρώματα. καὶ τὸν  
 Ἀστυάγην ἐπερέσθαι· Καὶ τίνι δὴ σὺ τεκμαιρόμενος, ὦ  
 παῖ, λέγεις; Ὅτι σε, φάναι, ὁρῶ, ὅταν μὲν τοῦ ἄρτου ἄψῃ,  
 εἰς οὐδὲν τὴν χεῖρα ἀποψώμενον, ὅταν δὲ τούτων τινὸς  
 θίγῃς, εὐθὺς ἀποκαθαίρει τὴν χεῖρα εἰς τὰ χειρόμακτρα,  
 ὥς πάννυ ἀχθόμενος ὅτι πλέα σοι ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἐγένετο. πρὸς  
 ταῦτα δὲ τὸν Ἀστυάγην εἰπεῖν· Εἰ τοίνυν οὕτω γιγνώσκεις,  
 ὦ παῖ, ἀλλὰ κρέα γε εὐωχοῦ, ἵνα νεανίας



σοι δοκεῖ εἶναι κάλλιον τόδε τὸ δείπνον τοῦ ἐν Πέρσαις;  
 τὸν δὲ Κῦρον πρὸς ταῦτα ἀποκρίνασθαι λέγεται· Οὐκ, ὦ  
 |grandfather' ἁλὰ πολὺ |single; simple καὶ εὐθυτέρα παρ' ἡμῖν  
 ἡ ὁδὸς ἐστὶν ἐπὶ τὸ |fill with ἢ παρ' ὑμῖν· ἡμᾶς μὲν  
 γὰρ |bread καὶ |meat εἰς τοῦτο ἄγει, ὑμεῖς δὲ εἰς μὲν  
 τὸ αὐτὸ ἡμῖν |'push on,' get |λλοὺς δέ τινας |winding, ὥνῳ  
 |going, hurry |convolution  
 καὶ κάτω |lead astray; |with |arrive |to which place ἵλαι  
 |(mp) wander |diffi-  
 |be present, ἁλ', ὦ παῖ, φάναι τὸν Ἀστυάγην, οὐκ |be burdened with  
 |have arrived |barely  
 ταῦτα περιπλανώμεθα· γευόμενος δὲ καὶ σύ, ἔφη, γνώσῃ  
 ὅτι |sweet ἐστίν. Ἀλλὰ καὶ σέ, φάναι τὸν Κῦρον, ὁρῶ,  
 ὦ |grandfather· σαπτόμενον ταῦτα τὰ |food . καὶ τὸν  
 Ἀστυάγην |ask as well; Καὶ τίνι δὴ σὺ |conclude, declare ὦ  
 |ask then |from evidence  
 παῖ, λέγεις; Ὅτι σε, φάναι, ὁρῶ, |whenever τοῦ |bread |set on fire; attach;  
 |mid: touch, seize  
 εἰς οὐδὲν τὴν χεῖρα ἀποψώμενον, |whenever οὐτῶν τινὸς  
 |touch, εὐθὺς ἀποκαθαίρει τὴν χεῖρα εἰς τὰ |towel, head-cloth  
 ὥς |alto- |be burdened with ἁλὰ σοι ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἐγένετο. πρὸς  
 |gether,  
 |very  
 ταῦτα δὲ τὸν Ἀστυάγην εἰπεῖν· Εἰ |well, then ἔγωγε γινώσκεις,  
 ὦ παῖ, ἀλλὰ |meat γε |fete, feed well |young  
 |person

a far better meal than you ever had in Persia?" Thereupon, as the tale runs, Cyrus answered, "Our way, grandfather, is much shorter than yours, and much simpler. We are hungry and wish to be fed, and bread and meat brings us where we want to be at once, but you Medes, for all your haste, take so many turns and wind about so much it is a wonder if you ever find your way to the goal that we have reached long ago." "Well, my lad," said his grandfather, "we are not at all averse to the length of the road: taste the dishes for yourself and see how good they are." "One thing I do see," the boy said, "and that is that you do not quite like them yourself." And when Astyages asked him how he felt so sure of that, Cyrus answered, "Because when you touch an honest bit of bread you never wipe your hands, but if you take one of these fine kickshaws you turn to your napkin at once, as if you were angry to find your fingers soiled." "Well and good, my lad, well and good," said the

*vocabulary***ἀποκωλύω** hinder from/from using**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)  
think over**ἥμερος** gentle; (animals) domesticated**ἡώς ἡῶτι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**θήρειος** of wild animals**ἵππεύω** ride**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**μηδέπω** not yet**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**οἶκαδε** homeward ~economics**οἶνοχόος** -ῶ cupbearer ~wine**παλτός** brandished, hurled**πάππος** grandfather**παραφέρω** serve; carry past; outdo**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**προπετής** hasty**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

**σκώπτω** joke**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τιμήεις** (ι) honored, precious**τιμόω** honor, exalt**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
from ~demagogue**ὑποπίπτω** cower under ~petal

οἴκαδε ἀπέλθης. ἅμα δὲ ταῦτα λέγοντα πολλὰ αὐτῷ παραφέρειν καὶ θήρεια καὶ τῶν ἡμέρων. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον, ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πολλὰ τὰ κρέα, εἰπεῖν· Ἥ καὶ δίδως, φάναι, ὦ πάππε, πάντα ταῦτά μοι τὰ κρέα ὅτι ἂν βούλωμαι αὐτοῖς χρῆσθαι; Νῆ Δία, φάναι, ὦ παῖ, ἔγωγέ σοι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὸν Κῦρον λαβόντα τῶν κρεῶν διαδιδόναι τοῖς ἀμφὶ τὸν πάππον θεραπευταῖς, ἐπιλέγοντα ἑκάστω· Σοὶ μὲν τοῦτο ὅτι προθύμως με ἱππεύειν διδάσκεις, σοὶ δ' ὅτι μοι παλτὸν ἔδωκας· νῦν γὰρ τοῦτ' ἔχω· σοὶ δ' ὅτι τὸν πάππον καλῶς θεραπεύεις, σοὶ δ' ὅτι μου τὴν μητέρα τιμᾷς· τοιαῦτα ἐποίει, ἕως διεδίδου πάντα ἃ ἔλαβε κρέα. Σάκκα δέ, φάναι τὸν Ἀστυάγην, τῷ οἰνοχόῳ, ὃν ἐγὼ μάλιστα τιμῶ, οὐδὲν δίδως; ὁ δὲ Σάκας ἄρα καλός τε ὢν ἐτύγχανε καὶ τιμὴν ἔχων προσάγειν τοὺς δεομένους Ἀστυάγους καὶ ἀποκωλύειν οὓς μὴ καιρὸς αὐτῷ δοκοίη εἶναι προσάγειν. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἐπερέσθαι προπετῶς ὡς ἂν παῖς μηδέπω ὑποπτήσων· Διὰ τί δὴ, ὦ πάππε, τοῦτον οὕτω τιμᾷς; καὶ τὸν Ἀστυάγην σκώψαντα εἰπεῖν·

οἴκαδε ἀπέλθης. ἅμα δὲ ταῦτα λέγοντα πολλὰ αὐτῷ

|serve; carry past;|of wild animals|gentle; (animals)|ν Κῦρον,  
|outdo domesticated

ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πολλὰ τὰ |meat, εἰπεῖν· Ἡ καὶ δίδως, φάναι, ὦ

|grandfather|τα ταῦτά μοι τὰ |meat ὅτι ἂν βούλωμαι αὐτοῖς

χρῆσθαι; Νῆ Δία, φάναι, ὦ παῖ, ἔγωγέ σοι. |there, here

δὴ τὸν Κῦρον λαβόντα τῶν |meat |distribute, send out|, μὲν

τὸν |grandfather|ραπευταῖς, |say, choose, ἐκάστω· Σοὶ μὲν  
|think over

τοῦτο ὅτι |willing, με |ride διδάσκεις, σοὶ δ' ὅτι μοι  
|eager

|brandished,|, κας· νῦν γὰρ τοῦτ' ἔχω· σοὶ δ' ὅτι τὸν |grandfather  
|hurled

καλῶς |help, serve, σοὶ δ' ὅτι μου τὴν μητέρα |honor

τοιαῦτα ἐποίει, ἕως |distribute, send out| ἔλαβε |meat. Σάκᾳ

δέ, φάναι τὸν Ἀστυάγην, τῷ |cupbearer, ὃν ἐγὼ μάλιστα

τιμῷ, οὐδὲν δίδως; ὁ δὲ Σάκας ἄρα καλός τε ὢν ἐτύγχανε

καὶ τιμὴν ἔχων |bring to a place|δεομένους Ἀστυάγους καὶ

|hinder from/from| μὴ καιρὸς αὐτῷ δοκοίη εἶναι |bring to a place  
|using

καὶ τὸν Κῦρον |ask as well;|hasty ὥς ἂν παῖς |not yet  
|ask then

ὑποπτήσσω· Διὰ τί δή, ὦ |grandfather|τον οὕτω |honor,

καὶ τὸν Ἀστυάγην |joke εἰπεῖν·

king, "only feast away yourself and make good cheer, and we shall send you back to Persia a fine strong fellow." And with the word he had dishes of meat and game set before his grandson. The boy was taken aback by their profusion, and exclaimed, "Grandfather, do you give me all this for myself, to do what I like with it?" "Certainly I do," said the king. Whereupon, without more ado, the boy Cyrus took first one dish and then another and gave them to the attendants who stood about his grandfather, and with each gift he made a little speech: "That is for you, for so kindly teaching me to ride;" "And that is for you, in return for the javelin you gave me, I have got it still;" "And this is for you, because you wait on my grandfather so prettily;" "And this for you, sir, because you honour my mother." And so on until he had got rid of all the meat he had been given. "But you do not give a single piece to Sacas, my butler," quoth the grandfather, "and I honour him more than all the rest." Now this Sacas, as one may guess, was a handsome fellow, and he had the right to bring before the king all who desired audience, to keep them back if he thought the time unseasonable. But Cyrus, in answer to his grandfather's question retorted eagerly, like a lad who did not know what fear meant, "And why should you honour him so much, grandfather?" Then Astyages laughed and said, "Can you not see how prettily he mixes the cup, and with what a grace he serves

*vocabulary*

**ἀνακτάομαι** regain, revive; win over  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀρύω** draw water  
**γέλως** laughter  
**δάκτυλος** finger, toe  
**ἐγχέω** pour into  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
 ~ballistic  
**ἐκγελάω** laugh out loud  
**ἐκπίνω** (i) drink up, consume  
**ἔκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup  
**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack  
**ἐνδίδωμι** hand over, lend, show, allow

**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**εὐσχήμων** dignified  
**κλύζω** wash up, surge ~cataclysm  
**κλύω** hear, listen to ~Euclid  
**οἰνοχοεύω** pour wine ~wine  
**οἰνοχοέω** pour wine ~wine  
**οἰνοχόος** -ῶ cupbearer ~wine  
**ὀχέω** carry; be afflicted with ~wagon  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add  
**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent  
**φιάλη** jar ~vial

Οὐχ ὀράς, φάναι, ὡς καλῶς οἰνοχοεῖ καὶ εὐσχημόνως; οἱ  
 δὲ τῶν βασιλέων τούτων οἰνοχόοι κομψῶς τε οἰνοχοοῦσι  
 καὶ καθαρείως ἐγχεύουσι καὶ διδόασι τοῖς τρισὶ δακτύλοις  
 ὀχοῦντες τὴν φιάλην καὶ προσφέρουσιν ὡς ἂν ἐνδοίεν τὸ  
 ἔκπωμα εὐληπτότατα τῷ μέλλοντι πίνειν. κέλευσον δὴ,  
 φάναι, ὦ πάππε, τὸν Σάκαν καὶ ἐμοὶ δοῦναι τὸ ἔκπωμα,  
 ἵνα καὶ γὰρ καλῶς σοι πιεῖν ἐγχεῖας ἀνακτήσωμαι σε, ἣν  
 δύνωμαι. καὶ τὸν κελεύσαι δοῦναι. λαβόντα δὲ τὸν Κῦρον  
 οὕτω μὲν δὴ εὖ κλύσαι τὸ ἔκπωμα ὥσπερ τὸν Σάκαν  
 ἑώρα, οὕτω δὲ στήσαντα τὸ πρόσωπον σπουδαίως καὶ  
 εὐσχημόνως πως προσενεγκεῖν καὶ ἐνδοῦναι τὴν φιάλην  
 τῷ πάππῳ ὥστε τῇ μητρὶ καὶ τῷ Ἀστυάγει πολὺν  
 γέλωτα παρασχεῖν. καὶ αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν Κῦρον ἐκγελάσαντα  
 ἀναπηδῆσαι πρὸς τὸν πάππον καὶ φιλοῦντα ἅμα εἰπεῖν·  
 ὦ Σάκα, ἀπόλωλας· ἐκβαλῶ σε ἐκ τῆς τιμῆς· τά τε γὰρ  
 ἄλλα, φάναι, σοῦ κάλλιον οἰνοχοήσω καὶ οὐκ ἐκπίομαι  
 αὐτὸς τὸν οἶνον. οἱ δ' ἄρα τῶν βασιλέων οἰνοχόοι, ἐπειδὴν  
 διδῶσι τὴν φιάλην, ἀρύσαντες ἀπ' αὐτῆς τῷ κυάθῳ εἰς



Οὐχ ὀρᾶς, φάναι, ὡς καλῶς οἶνοχοεῖ καὶ |dignified , οἱ  
 δὲ τῶν βασιλέων τούτων |cupbearer .κομψῶς τε |pour wine  
 καὶ καθαρείως |pour into καὶ διδόασι τοῖς τρισὶ |finger, toe  
 |carry; be `af-|jar καὶ προσφέρουσιν ὡς ἂν |tie to τὸ  
 |flicted with  
 |drinking cup` ἡπτότατα τῷ μέλλοντι πίνειν. κέλευσον δὴ,  
 φάναι, ὦ |grandfather`· Σάκαν καὶ ἐμοὶ δοῦναι τὸ |drinking cup  
 ἵνα κἀγὼ καλῶς σοι πιεῖν |pour into|regain, revive; σε, ἦν  
 |win over  
 δύνωμαι. καὶ τὸν κελεῦσαι δοῦναι. λαβόντα δὲ τὸν Κῦρον  
 οὕτω μὲν δὴ εὖ κλύσαι τὸ |drinking cup` περ τὸν Σάκαν  
 ἑώρα, οὕτω δὲ στήσαντα τὸ πρόσωπον |quick, active; καὶ  
 |excellent  
 |dignified πως προσενεγκεῖν καὶ |hand over, lend,|jar  
 |show, allow  
 τῷ |grandfather` ὅτε τῇ μητρὶ καὶ τῷ Ἀστυάγει πολὺν  
 |laughter παρασχέιν. καὶ αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν Κῦρον |laugh out loud  
 |leap up, start up, ὅς τὸν |grandfather...| φιλοῦντα ἅμα εἰπεῖν·  
 ὦ Σάκα, ἀπόλωλας· ἐκβαλῶ σε ἐκ τῆς τιμῆς· τά τε γὰρ  
 ἄλλα, φάναι, σοῦ κάλλιον |pour wine καὶ οὐκ |drink up, consume  
 αὐτὸς τὸν οἶνον. οἱ δ' ἄρα τῶν βασιλέων |cupbearer, ἐπειδὴν  
 διδῶσι τὴν |jar , |draw water ἀπ' αὐτῆς τῷ κυάθῳ εἰς

the wine?" And indeed, these royal cup-bearers are neat-handed at their task, mixing the bowl with infinite elegance, and pouring the wine into the beakers without spilling a drop, and when they hand the goblet they poise it deftly between thumb and finger for the banqueter to take. "Now, grandfather," said the boy, "tell Sacas to give me the bowl, and let me pour out the wine as prettily as he if I can, and win your favour." So the king bade the butler hand him the bowl, and Cyrus took it and mixed the wine just as he had seen Sacas do, and then, showing the utmost gravity and the greatest deftness and grace, he brought the goblet to his grandfather and offered it with such an air that his mother and Astyages, too, laughed outright, and then Cyrus burst out laughing also, and flung his arms round his grandfather and kissed him, crying, "Sacas, your day is done! I shall oust you from your office, you may be sure. I shall make just as pretty a cup-bearer as you—and not drink the wine myself!" For it is the fact that the king's butler when he offers the wine is bound to dip a ladle in the cup first, and pour a little in the hollow of his hand and sip

*vocabulary***ἀκροάομαι** pay attention**ἀριστερός** left-hand**γενέθλιος** of birth**ἐγχέω** pour into**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe**καταγιγνώσκω** judge negatively**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**κράζω** croak, scream**κρατήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**λυσιτελέω** (ὑ) be useful**μιμέομαι** (ἱ) imitate, represent**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**οἰνόω** make drunk ~wine**ὄμνυμι** (ὑ) swear**ὀρθόω** stand up**ὀρχέομαι** dance**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**ῥυθμός** measured; symmetrical**ῥώμη** strength, might**σαφής** clear, understandable**σφάλλω** overthrow, balk, stagger**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy

τὴν ἀριστερὰν χεῖρα ἐγχεάμενοι καταρροφούσι, τοῦ δὴ εἰ φάρμακα ἐγχείοιεν μὴ λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἐπισκώπτων, αἱ τί δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, τᾶλλα μιμούμενος τὸν Σάκαν οὐ κατερρόφησας τοῦ οἴνου; Ὅτι, ἔφη, νῆ Δία ἐδεδοίκεν μὴ ἐν τῷ κρατῆρι φάρμακα μεμιγμένα εἶη. καὶ γὰρ ὅτε εἰστίασας σὺ τοὺς φίλους ἐν τοῖς γενεθλίοις, σαφῶς κατέμαθον φάρμακα ὑμῖν αὐτὸν ἐγχεάντα. αἱ πῶς δὴ σὺ τοῦτο, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, κατέγνως; Ὅτι νῆ Δί' ὑμᾶς ἐώρων καὶ ταῖς γνώμαις καὶ τοῖς σώμασι σφαλλομένους. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἃ οὐκ ἔατε ἡμᾶς τοὺς παῖδας ποιεῖν, ταῦτα αὐτοὶ ἐποιεῖτε. πάντες μὲν γὰρ ἅμα ἐκεκράγειτε, ἐμανθάνετε δὲ οὐδὲν ἀλλήλων, ἦδτε δὲ καὶ μάλα γελοίως, οὐκ ἀκροώμενοι δὲ τοῦ ἄδοντος ὠμνύετε ἄριστα ἄδειν· λέγων δὲ ἕκαστος ὑμῶν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ῥώμην, ἔπειτ' εἰ ἀνασταίητε ὀρχησόμενοι, μὴ ὅπως ὀρχεῖσθαι ἐν ῥυθμῷ, ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὀρθοῦσθαι ἐδύνασθε. ἐπελέλησθε δὲ παντάπασι σύ τε ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἦσθα, οἳ τε ἄλλοι ὅτι σὺ ἀρχων. τότε γὰρ δὴ ἔγωγε καὶ πρῶτον κατέμαθον ὅτι

τὴν |left-hand χεῖρα |pour into καταρροφούσι, τοῦ δὴ  
 εἰ |drug, |pour into μὴ |be useful αὐτοῖς. ἐκ τούτου  
 |potion  
 δὴ ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἐπισκώπτων, αἱ τί δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,  
 τὰλλα |imitate, τὸν Σάκαν οὐ κατερρόφησας τοῦ οἴνου;  
 |represent  
 Ὅτι, ἔφη, νὴ Δία ἐδεδοίκεν μὴ ἐν τῷ |mixing |drug,  
 |bowl for |potion  
 |mix εἶη. καὶ γὰρ ὅτε εἰστίαςας οὐ τοὺς φίλους ἐν  
 |wine  
 τοῖς |of birth , |clear, |examine, |drug, ὑμῖν αὐτὸν  
 |under- |observe |potion  
 |pour into . αἱ |how? why? τοῦτο, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, |judge negatively  
 |stand-  
 Ὅτι νὴ Δί ὑμᾶς ἐώρων καὶ ταῖς |sign, mind, τοῖς σώμασι  
 |will, decision  
 |overthrow, balk . πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἃ οὐκ ἔατε ἡμᾶς τοὺς  
 παῖδας ποιεῖν, ταῦτα αὐτοὶ ἐποιεῖτε. πάντες μὲν γὰρ ἅμα  
 |croak, scream , |learn δὲ οὐδὲν ἀλλήλων, ἦδετε δὲ καὶ  
 μάλα γελοίως, οὐκ |pay attention δὲ τοῦ ἀδοντος ὠμνύετε  
 ἄριστα ἄδειν· λέγων δὲ ἕκαστος ὑμῶν τὴν ἐαυτοῦ |strength,  
 |might  
 ἔπειτ' εἰ ἀνασταίητε |dance , μὴ ὅπως |dance ἐν  
 |measured; ὡς οὐδ' |stand up ἐδύνασθε. |mp: forget δὲ  
 |symmetrical  
 |altogether; σύ τε ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἦσθα, οἳ τε ἄλλοι ὅτι σὺ  
 |yes, certainly  
 ἄρχων. τότε γὰρ δὴ ἔγωγε καὶ πρῶτον |examine, ὅτι  
 |observe

it, so that if he has mixed poison in the bowl it will do him no good himself. Accordingly, Astyages, to carry on the jest, asked the little lad why he had forgotten to taste the wine though he had imitated Sacas in everything else. And the boy answered, "Truly, I was afraid there might be poison in the bowl. For when you gave your birthday feast to your friends I could see quite plainly that Sacas had put in poison for you all." "And how did you discover that, my boy?" asked the king. "Because I saw how your wits reeled and how you staggered; and you all began doing what you will not let us children do—you talked at the top of your voices, and none of you understood a single word the others said, and then you began singing in a way to make us laugh, and though you would not listen to the singer you swore that it was right nobly sung, and then each of you boasted of his own strength, and yet as soon as you got up to dance, so far from keeping time to the measure, you could barely keep your legs. And you seemed quite to have forgotten, grandfather, that you were king, and your subjects that you were their sovereign. Then at last I understood that you must be celebrating that

*vocabulary***ἀποκωλύω** hinder from/from using**γοῦν** at least then**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**δίψα** thirst ~dipsomania**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**εἴσοδος** (f) entrance ~odometer**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**ἱκετεύω** approach to beg**ἰσηγορία** political equality**κωλύω** (ō) hinder, prevent**μεθύσκω** (mp) get drunk**μιαρός** stained, polluted ~miasma**μισέω** (ī) hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

**ναός** (ā) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**οἶνοχοέω** pour wine ~wine**οὐδέποτε** never**οὐπω** no longer**πάππος** grandfather**παρατείνω** extend, lengthen, torture**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πότε** when?**προστρέχω** run to, join, attack**σιωπάω** be silent**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate

τοῦτ' ἄρ' ἦν ἡ ἰσηγορία ὃ ὑμεῖς τότε ἐποιεῖτε· οὐδέποτε  
 γοῦν ἐσιωπᾶτε. καὶ ὁ Ἀστυάγης λέγει· Ὁ δὲ σὸς πατήρ, ὦ  
 παῖ, πίνων οὐ μεθύσκειται; ὑ μὰ Δί', ἔφη. Ἀλλὰ πῶς ποιεῖ;  
 διψῶν παύεται, ἄλλο δὲ κακὸν οὐδὲν πάσχει· οὐ γάρ,  
 οἶμαι, ὦ πάππε, Σάκας αὐτῷ οἰνοχοεῖ. καὶ ἡ μήτηρ εἶπεν·  
 Ἀλλὰ τί ποτε σύ, ὦ παῖ, τῷ Σάκα οὕτω πολεμεῖς; τὸν δὲ  
 Κῦρον εἶπεν· Ὅτι νῆ Δία, φάναι, μισῶ αὐτόν· πολλάκις  
 γάρ με πρὸς τὸν πάππον ἐπιθυμοῦντα προσδραμεῖν οὗτος  
 ὁ μαρώτατος ἀποκωλύει. ἀλλ' ἵκετεύω, φάναι, ὦ πάππε,  
 δός μοι τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἄρξαι αὐτοῦ. καὶ τὸν Ἀστυάγην  
 εἶπεν· αἱ πῶς ἂν ἄρξαις αὐτοῦ; καὶ τὸν Κῦρον φάναι·  
 Στὰς ἂν ὥσπερ οὗτος ἐπὶ τῇ εἰσόδῳ, ἔπειτα ὁπότε  
 βούλοιτο παρίεναι ἐπ' ἄριστον, λέγοιμ' ἂν ὅτι οὐπω  
 δυνατὸν τῷ ἀρίστῳ ἐντυχεῖν· σπουδάζει γὰρ πρὸς τινας·  
 εἴθ' ὁπότε ἦκοι ἐπὶ τὸ δείπνον, λέγοιμ' ἂν ὅτι λουταί·  
 εἰ δὲ πάνυ σπουδάζοι φαγεῖν, εἵποιμ' ἂν ὅτι παρὰ ταῖς  
 γυναιξίν ἐστιν· ἕως παρατεínaμι τοῦτον ὥσπερ οὗτος ἐμὲ  
 παρατείνει ἀπὸ σοῦ κωλύων. τοσαύτας μὲν αὐτοῖς



τουτ' ἄρ' ἦν ἡ ἰσηγορία ὃ ὑμεῖς τότε ἐποιεῖτε· |never

|at |be silent . καὶ ὁ Ἀστυάγης λέγει· Ὁ δὲ σὸς πατήρ, ὦ  
|least  
|then  
παῖ, πίνων οὐ |(mp) get drunk' μὰ Δί', ἔφη. Ἀλλὰ πῶς ποιεῖ;

διψῶν |stop , ἄλλο δὲ κακὸν οὐδὲν πάσχει· οὐ γάρ,

οἶμαι, ὦ |grandfather' ἕκας αὐτῷ οἰνοχοεῖ. καὶ ἡ μήτηρ εἶπεν·

Ἀλλὰ τί ποτε σύ, ὦ παῖ, τῷ Σάκκῳ οὕτω |make war , τὸν δὲ

Κῦρον εἶπεῖν· Ὅτι νῆ Δία, φάναι, |hate αὐτόν· |often

γάρ με πρὸς τὸν |grandfa- |wish, covet |run to, join, attack' οὐ  
|ther

ὁ |stained, |hinder from/from' |approach to beg -, ὦ |grandfather  
|polluted |using

δὸς μοι |three ἡμέρας ἄρξαι αὐτοῦ. καὶ τὸν Ἀστυάγην

εἶπεῖν· αἱ πῶς ἂν ἄρξαις αὐτοῦ; καὶ τὸν Κῦρον φάναι·

Στὰς ἂν ὥσπερ οὗτος ἐπὶ τῇ |entrance, ἔπειτα |when

βούλοιτο |dangle; pass' τ' ἄριστον, λέγοιμ' ἂν ὅτι |no longer  
|over, allow

|powerful, τῷ ἀρίστῳ ἐντυχεῖν· |be busy, earnest, - πρόσ τινος·  
|possible

εἴθ' |when ἥκοι ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον, λέγοιμ' ἂν ὅτι λούται·

εἰ δὲ |alto- |be busy, earnest ,εῖν, εἵποιμ' ἂν ὅτι παρὰ ταῖς  
|gether,  
|very

γυναιξιν ἔστιν· ἕως |extend, lengthen, αὐτὸν ὥσπερ οὗτος ἐμὲ  
|torture

|extend, lengthen, σοῦ |hinder, . |so much μὲν αὐτοῖς  
|torture |prevent

‘free speech’ we hear of; at any rate, you were never silent for an instant.” “Well, but, boy,” said Astyages, “does your father never lose his head when he drinks?” “Certainly not,” said the boy. “What happens then?” asked the king. “He quenches his thirst,” answered Cyrus, “and that is all. No harm follows. You see, he has no Sacas to mix his wine for him.” “But, Cyrus,” put in his mother, “why are you so unkind to Sacas?” “Because I do so hate him,” answered the boy. “Time after time when I have wanted to go to my grandfather this old villain has stopped me. Do please, grandfather, let me manage him for three days.” “And how would you set about it?” Astyages asked. “Why,” said the boy, “I will plant myself in the doorway just as he does, and then when he wants to go in to breakfast I will say ‘You cannot have breakfast yet: HE is busy with some people,’ and when he comes for dinner I will say ‘No dinner yet: HE is in his bath,’ and as he grows ravenous I will say ‘Wait a little: HE is with the ladies of the court,’ until I have plagued and tormented him as he torments me, keeping me away from you, grandfather, when I want to come.” Thus the boy delighted his

*vocabulary***ἀέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to ~jet**εἴσοδος** (f) entrance ~odometer**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**μέτριος** medium, moderate**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold**πάππος** grandfather**παράδεισος** park**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**ὑπερχαίρω** rejoice greatly at**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

εὐθυμίας παρείχεν ἐπὶ τῷ δείπνῳ· τὰς δ' ἡμέρας, εἴ  
 τινος αἰσθοίτο δεόμενον ἢ τὸν πάππον ἢ τὸν τῆς μητρὸς  
 ἀδελφόν, χαλεπὸν ἦν ἄλλον φθάσαι τοῦτο ποιήσαντα· ὅ  
 τι γὰρ δύναίτο ὁ Κῦρος ὑπερέχαιρεν αὐτοῖς χαριζόμενος.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ Μανδάνη παρεσκευάζετο ὡς ἀπιούσα πάλιν  
 πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα, ἐδεῖτο αὐτῆς ὁ Ἀστυάγης καταλιπεῖν  
 τὸν Κῦρον· ἡ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι βούλοιτο μὲν ἅπαντα  
 τῷ πατρὶ χαρίζεσθαι, ἄκοντα μέντοι τὸν παῖδα χαλεπὸν  
 εἶναι νομίζειν καταλιπεῖν. ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Ἀστυάγης λέγει πρὸς  
 τὸν Κῦρον· ὦ παῖ, ἦν μένης παρ' ἐμοί, πρῶτον μὲν τῆς  
 παρ' ἐμὲ εἰσόδου σοι οὐ Σάκας ἄρξει, ἀλλ' ὁπότεν βούλῃ  
 εἰσιέναι ὡς ἐμέ, ἐπὶ σοὶ ἔσται· καὶ χάριν σοι εἴσομαι ὅσῳ  
 ἂν πλεονάκῃς εἰσίῃς ὡς ἐμέ. ἔπειτα δὲ ἵπποις τοῖς ἐμοῖς  
 χρήσῃ καὶ ἄλλοις ὁπόσοις ἂν βούλῃ, καὶ ὁπότεν ἀπίῃς,  
 ἔχων ἅπει οὓς ἂν αὐτὸς ἐθέλῃς. ἔπειτα δὲ ἐν τῷ δείπνῳ ἐπὶ  
 τὸ μετρίως σοι δοκοῦν ἔχειν ὁποίαν βούλῃ ὁδὸν πορεύσῃ.  
 ἔπειτα τά τε νῦν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ θηρία δίδωμί σοι καὶ  
 ἄλλα παντοδαπὰ συλλέξω, ἃ σὺ

εὐθυμίας |furnish ἐπὶ τῷ δείπνῳ· τὰς δ' ἡμέρας, εἴ  
 τινος |perceive δεόμενον ἢ τὸν |grandfather, τὸν τῆς μητρὸς  
 ἀδελφόν, |hard to bear ἄλλον φθάσαι τοῦτο ποιήσαντα· ὅ  
 τι γὰρ δύναίτο ὁ Κύρος |rejoice greatly αὐτοῖς |gratify  
 at  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ Μανδάνη |prepare, render ὥς |be absent, go away, return  
 πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα, εἰδεῖτο αὐτῆς ὁ Ἀστυάγης |leave behind, abandon  
 τὸν Κύρον. ἡ δὲ |to separate; reject; (mp) answer, defend oneself  
 τῷ πατρὶ |gratify, ἄκοντα |however ὃν παῖδα |hard to bear  
 εἶναι |consider |leave behind, cus- |abandon  
 τὸν Κῆρυξ, ὃς |believe Ω παῖ, ἣν μένης παρ' ἐμοί, πρῶτον μὲν τῆς  
 παρ' ἐμέ |entrance σοι οὐ Σάκας ἄρξει, ἀλλ' ὅποτε βούλη  
 εἰσιέναι ὥς ἐμέ, ἐπὶ σοὶ ἔσται· καὶ |grace σοι εἴσομαι ὅσῳ  
 ἂν πλεονάκεις εἰσῆς ὥς ἐμέ. ἔπειτα δὲ ἵπποις τοῖς ἐμοῖς  
 χρήσῃ καὶ ἄλλοις |as/how many/great -, καὶ ὅποτε |be absent, go away, return  
 ἔχων |be absent, go away, return αὐτὸς ἐθέλης. ἔπειτα δὲ ἐν τῷ δείπνῳ ἐπὶ  
 τὸ |medium, |moderate σοι δοκοῦν ἔχειν |whatever kind ὁδὸν πορεύσῃ.  
 ἔπειτα τά τε νῦν ἐν τῷ |park |wild animal, μί σοι καὶ  
 ἄλλα παντοδαπὰ |collect, assemble, ἃ σὺ

elders in the evening, and by day if he saw that his grandfather or his uncle wanted anything, no one could forestall him in getting it; indeed nothing seemed to give him greater pleasure than to please them.

Now when Mandane began to think of going back to her husband, Astyages begged her to leave the boy behind. She answered that though she wished to please her father in everything, it would be hard to leave the boy against his will. Then the old man turned to Cyrus: "My boy, if you will stay with us, Sacas shall never stop you from coming to me: you shall be free to come whenever you choose, and the oftener you come the better it will please me. You shall have horses to ride, my own and as many others as you like, and when you leave us you shall take them with you. And at dinner you shall go your own way and follow your own path to your own goal of temperance just as you think right. And I will make you a present of all the game in my parks and paradises, and collect more for you, and as soon as you

*vocabulary***ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀνιάω** (ĩ) vex**ἀτυχέω** be unlucky**διδάσκαλος** teacher**δικαιοσύνη** justice**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπερωτάω** consult, ask**ἡλιξ** -κος (m) of the same age**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἵππεύω** ride**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off

~ballistic

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κράτιστος** best**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**ὅσος** as many as, how many, how great**πάππος** grandfather**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**πότερος** which, whichever of two**συμμαχέω** be an ally**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἵππεύειν μάθῃς, διώξῃ, καὶ τοξεύων καὶ ἀκοντίζων καταβαλεῖς ὥσπερ οἱ μεγάλοι ἄνδρες. καὶ παῖδας δέ σοι ἐγὼ συμπαίστορας παρέξω, καὶ ἄλλα ὅποσα ἂν βούλῃ λέγων πρὸς ἐμὲ οὐκ ἀτυχήσεις. ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ Ἀστυάγης, ἡ μήτηρ διηρώτα τὸν Κῦρον πότερον βούλοιτο μένειν ἢ ἀπιέναι. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἐμέλλησεν, ἀλλὰ ταχὺ εἶπεν ὅτι μένειν βούλοιτο. ἐπερωτηθεὶς δὲ πάλιν ὑπὸ τῆς μητρὸς διὰ τί εἰπεῖν λέγεται· Ὅτι οἴκοι μὲν τῶν ἡλίκων καὶ εἰμὶ καὶ δοκῶ κράτιστος εἶναι, ὦ μήτερ, καὶ ἀκοντίζων καὶ τοξεύων, ἐνταῦθα δὲ οἶδ' ὅτι ἵππεύων ἥττων εἰμὶ τῶν ἡλίκων· καὶ τοῦτο εὖ ἴσθι, ὦ μήτερ, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐμὲ πάνυ ἀνιᾶ. ἦν δέ με καταλίπῃς ἐνθάδε καὶ μάθω ἵππεύειν, ὅταν μὲν ἐν Πέρσαις ὦ, οἶμαί σοι ἐκείνους τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς τὰ πεζικὰ ῥαδίως νικήσειν, ὅταν δ' εἰς Μήδους ἔλθω, ἐνθάδε πειράσομαι τῷ πάππῳ ἀγαθῶν ἱππέων κράτιστος ὢν ἱππεὺς συμμαχεῖν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ μητέρα εἰπεῖν· ἦν δὲ δικαιοσύνην, ὦ παῖ, πῶς μαθήσῃ ἐνθάδε ἐκεῖ ὄντων σοι τῶν διδασκάλων; καὶ τὸν Κῦρον φάναι· Ἄλλ', ὦ μήτερ,



|when, τάχιστα |ride μάθης, διώξη, καὶ |shoot an arrow at  
|after

|throw, (+gen)|throw down, cast off -,-, οἱ μεγάλοι ἄνδρες. καὶ  
|at

παῖδας δέ σοι ἐγὼ συμπαίστορας παρέξω, καὶ ἄλλα |as/how many/great

ἂν βούλη λέγων πρὸς ἐμέ οὐκ |be unlucky . ἐπεὶ ταῦτα

εἶπεν ὁ Ἀστυάγης, ἡ μήτηρ διηρώτα τὸν Κῦρον |which,  
|whichever

βούλοιτο μένειν ἢ |be absent, go ἔ οὐκ ἐμέλλησεν, ἀλλὰ ταχὺ  
|away, return

εἶπεν ὅτι μένειν βούλοιτο. |consult, ask δὲ πάλιν ὑπὸ τῆς

μητρὸς διὰ τί εἰπεῖν λέγεται· Ὅτι |at home ἔν τῶν ἡλίκων

καὶ εἰμὶ καὶ δοκῶ |best εἶναι, ὦ μήτερ, καὶ |throw, (+gen) at

καὶ |shoot an|there, here ἔ οἶδ' ὅτι |ride ἥττων εἰμὶ τῶν  
|arrow at

ἡλίκων· καὶ τοῦτο εὖ ἴσθι, ὦ μήτερ, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐμέ |altogether, very

|vex ἣν δέ με καταλίπης |here, καὶ μάθω |ride , ὅταν  
|hither

μὲν ἐν Πέρσαις ὦ, οἰμαί σοι ἐκείνους τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς τὰ

πεζικὰ |easy νικήσειν, ὅταν δ' εἰς Μήδους ἔλθω, |here,  
|hither

πειράσομαι τῷ |grandfather, αθῶν ἱππέων |best ὦν

ἱππεὺς |be an ally αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ μητέρα εἰπεῖν· ἣν δὲ

|justice , ὦ παῖ, πῶς μαθήσῃ |here, ἐκεῖ ὄντων σοι  
|hither

τῶν |teacher , καὶ τὸν Κῦρον φάναι· Ἄλλ', ὦ μήτερ,

have learnt to ride you shall hunt and shoot and hurl the javelin exactly like a man. And you shall have boys to play with and anything else you wish for: you have only to ask me and it shall be yours." Then his mother questioned the boy and asked him whether he would rather stay with his grandfather in Media, or go back home with her: and he said at once that he would rather stay. And when she went on to ask him the reason, he answered, so the story says, "Because at home I am thought to be the best of the lads at shooting and hurling the javelin, and so I think I am: but here I know I am the worst at riding, and that you may be sure, mother, annoys me exceedingly. Now if you leave me here and I learn to ride, when I am back in Persia you shall see, I promise you, that I will outdo all our gallant fellows on foot, and when I come to Media again I will try and show my grandfather that, for all his splendid cavalry, he will not have a stouter horseman than his grandson to fight his battles for him." Then said his mother, "But justice and righteousness, my son, how can you learn them here when your teachers are at home?" "Oh," said Cyrus, "I know all about them

*vocabulary*

ἀκριβής (ἱ) exact	~orthogonal
ἀμφιέννυμι (ὑ) put on a person ~vest	ὀρθόω stand up
ἄνομος lawless	παίζω play ~pediatrician
ἄφαιρέω take away ~heresy	παίω hit
βίαιος by force	παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology	πάππος grandfather
διδάσκαλος teacher	πληγή a hit ~plectrum
δικάζω judge	πότε when?
δικαιοσύνη justice	πότερος which, whichever of two
δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror	πρίσμαι buy
ἐκάτερος each of two	προσδέω bind also; need also
ἐκδύω take off; leave; avoid	σκεπτέος thing to consider, one who must consider
ἐνδύω go into, put on	σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
κριτής -οῦ (m, 1) judge	~skeptic
κτάομαι acquire, possess	τοίνυν well, then
κτῆσις -ος (f) chattels	χιτών -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor
νόμιμος customary, legal, natural	ψῆφος (f) pebble, vote, decree, sentence
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just	ὠνέομαι buy

ἀκριβῶς ταῦτά γε οἶδα. ὥς σὺ οἶσθα; τὴν Μανδάνην εἰπεῖν. Ὅτι, φάναι, ὁ διδάσκαλός με ὡς ἤδη ἀκριβοῦντα τὴν δικαιοσύνην καὶ ἄλλοις καθίστη δικάζειν. καὶ τοίνυν, φάναι, ἐπὶ μιᾷ ποτε δίκη πληγὰς ἔλαβον ὡς οὐκ ὀρθῶς δικάσας. ἦν δὲ ἡ δίκη τοιαύτη. παῖς μέγας μικρὸν ἔχων χιτῶνα παῖδα μικρὸν μέγαν ἔχοντα χιτῶνα ἐκδύσας αὐτὸν τὸν μὲν ἑαυτοῦ ἐκείνον ἡμφίεσε, τὸν δ' ἐκείνου αὐτὸς ἐνέδν. ἐγὼ οὖν τούτοις δικάζων ἔγνω βέλτιον εἶναι ἀμφοτέροις τὸν ἀρμόττοντα ἐκάτερον χιτῶνα ἔχειν. ἐν τούτῳ δὴ με ἔπαισεν ὁ διδάσκαλος, λέξας ὅτι ὁπότε μὲν τοῦ ἀρμόττοντος εἶην κριτής, οὕτω δέοι ποιεῖν, ὁπότε δὲ κρῖναι δέοι ποτέρου ὁ χιτῶν εἶη, τοῦτ' ἔφη σκεπτέον εἶναι τίς κτήσις δικαία ἐστί, πότερα τὸ βία ἀφελόμενον ἔχειν ἢ τὸ ποιησάμενον ἢ πριάμενον κεκτηῖσθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφη τὸ μὲν νόμιμον δίκαιον εἶναι, τὸ δὲ ἄνομον βίαιον, σὺν τῷ νόμῳ ἐκέλευεν αἰετὸν δικαστὴν τὴν ψῆφον τίθεσθαι. οὕτως ἐγὼ σοι, ὦ μῆτερ, τά γε δίκαια παντάπασιν ἤδη ἀκριβῶ· ἦν δέ τι ἄρα προσδέωμαι, ὁ πάππος με, ἔφη,

ἀκριβῶς ταῦτά γε οἶδα. ὥς σὺ οἶσθα; τὴν Μανδάνην  
 εἶπεν. Ὅτι, φάναι, ὁ |teacher με ὥς ἤδη ἀκριβοῦντα  
 τὴν |justice καὶ ἄλλοις καθίστη |judge . καὶ |well, then  
 φάναι, ἐπὶ μιᾷ ποτε δίκη πληγὰς ἔλαβον ὥς οὐκ ὀρθῶς  
 |judge . ἦν δὲ ἡ δίκη τοιαύτη. παῖς μέγας μικρὸν ἔχων  
 |tunic παῖδα μικρὸν μέγαν ἔχοντα |tunic |take off αὐτὸν  
 τὸν μὲν ἑαυτοῦ ἐκείνον |put on a person δ' ἐκείνου αὐτὸς  
 |go into, put, on οὖν τούτοις |judge ἔγνω βέλτιον εἶναι  
 ἀμφοτέροις τὸν ἀρμόττοντα |each of two |tunic ἔχειν. ἐν  
 τούτῳ δὴ με ἔπαισεν ὁ |teacher , λέξας ὅτι |when μὲν  
 τοῦ ἀρμόττοντος εἶην |judge , οὕτω δέοι ποιεῖν, |when δὲ  
 κρῖναι δέοι |which, |tunic εἶη, τοῦτ' ἔφη σκεπτέον εἶναι  
 |whichever  
 τίς |chattels δικαία ἐστί, |which, ἡ βία |take away ἔχειν ἢ  
 |whichever  
 τὸ ποιησάμενον ἢ πριάμενον κεκτῆσθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφη τὸ μὲν  
 |customary, ἔμμενον εἶναι, τὸ δὲ |lawless |by force τὸν τῷ νόμῳ  
 |legal, natural  
 ἐκέλευεν αἰετὸν |judge, τὴν |pebble, vote, decree. οὕτως ἐγώ  
 |juror |cree, sentence  
 σοι, ὦ μήτερ, τά γε δίκαια |altogether; ἤδη ἀκριβῶς ἦν  
 |yes, certainly  
 δέ τι ἄρα προσδέωμαι, ὁ |grandfather , ἔφη,

already.” “How do you know that you do?” asked Mandane. “Because,” answered the boy, “before I left home my master thought I had learnt enough to decide the cases, and he set me to try the suits. Yes! and I remember once, said he, “I got a whipping for misjudgment. I will tell you about that case. There were two boys, a big boy and a little boy, and the big boy’s coat was small and the small boy’s coat was huge. So the big boy stripped the little boy and gave him his own small coat, while he put on the big one himself. Now in giving judgment I decided that it was better for both parties that each should have the coat that fitted him best. But I never got any further in my sentence, because the master thrashed me here, and said that the verdict would have been excellent if I had been appointed to say what fitted and what did not, but I had been called in to decide to whom the coat belonged, and the point to consider was, who had a right to it: Was he who took a thing by violence to keep it, or he who had had it made and bought it for his own? And the master taught me that what is lawful is just and what is in the teeth of law is based on violence, and therefore, he said, the judge must always see that his verdict tallies with the law. So you see, mother, I have the whole of justice at my fingers’ ends already. And if there should be anything more I need to know, why, I have my grandfather beside me, and

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**βασιλικός** royal**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἐπειδὴν** when, after**ἡλικιώτης** -ου (m, 1) equal in age,  
contemporary**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**καταμένω** stay; not change**μαστιγόω** (i) whip**μείων** less, smaller**μέτρον** measure ~metric**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**πάππος** grandfather**Πέρσης** Persian**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**τυραννικός** tyrannical**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
from ~demagogue

οὗτος ἐπιδιδάξει. Ἄλλ' οὐ ταῦτά, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, παρὰ τῷ πάππῳ καὶ ἐν Πέρσαις δίκαια ὁμολογεῖται. οὗτος μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἐν Μήδοις πάντων ἑαυτὸν δεσπότην πεποίηκεν, ἐν Πέρσαις δὲ τὸ ἴσον ἔχειν δίκαιον νομίζεται. καὶ ὁ σὸς πρῶτος πατὴρ τὰ τεταγμένα μὲν ποιεῖ τῇ πόλει, τὰ τεταγμένα δὲ λαμβάνει, μέτρον δὲ αὐτῷ οὐχ ἡ ψυχὴ ἀλλ' ὁ νόμος ἐστίν. ὅπως οὖν μὴ ἀπολῇ μαστιγούμενος, ἐπειδὰν οἴκοι ῆς, ἂν παρὰ τούτου μαθὼν ἦκης ἀντὶ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ τὸ τυραννικόν, ἐν ᾧ ἐστι τὸ πλεόν οἶσθαι χρῆναι πάντων ἔχειν. Ἄλλ' ὅ γε σὸς πατήρ, εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, δεινότερός ἐστιν, ὦ μήτερ, διδάσκειν μείον ἢ πλεόν ἔχειν· ἢ οὐχ ὀρᾷς, ἔφη, ὅτι καὶ Μήδους ἅπαντας δεδίδαχεν αὐτοῦ μείον ἔχειν; ὥστε θάρρει, ὡς ὅ γε σὸς πατήρ οὔτ' ἄλλον οὐδένα οὔτ' ἐμὲ πλεονεκτεῖν μαθόντα ἀποπέμψει.

#### 1.4

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ πολλὰ ἐλάλει ὁ Κῦρος· τέλος δὲ ἡ μὲν μήτηρ ἀπήλθε, Κῦρος δὲ κατέμεινε καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐτρέφετο. καὶ ταχὺ μὲν τοῖς ἡλικιώταις συνεκέκρατο ὥστε οἰκείως



οὗτος ἐπιδιδάξει. Ἄλλ' οὐ ταυτά, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, παρὰ τῷ

|grandfather... ἔν Πέρσαις δίκαια |agree with/to . οὗτος μὲν

γὰρ τῶν ἐν Μήδοις πάντων ἑαυτὸν |master,      πεποιήκεν,  
|despot

ἐν Πέρσαις δὲ τὸ |equal ἔχειν δίκαιον |consider      cus- ἢ ὁ  
|tomary; believe

σὸς πρῶτος πατήρ τὰ |arrange      μὲν ποιεῖ τῇ πόλει, τὰ

|arrange      δὲ λαμβάνει, |measure ὅδ' αὐτῷ οὐχ ἡ |soul; life ἢ ὁ

νόμος ἐστίν. ὅπως οὖν μὴ ἀπολῇ |whip      , |when,  
|after

|at home, ἂν παρὰ τούτου |learn      |be present, have|royal  
|arrived

τὸ |tyrannical      , ἐν ᾧ ἐστι τὸ πλεόν οἶεσθαι χρῆναι πάντων

ἔχειν. Ἄλλ' ὅ γε σὸς πατήρ, εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, δεινότερός

ἐστιν, ὦ μῆτερ, |teach      |less,      ἢ πλεόν ἔχειν· ἢ οὐχ ὀρᾷς,  
|smaller

ἔφη, ὅτι καὶ Μήδους ἅπαντας |teach      αὐτοῦ |less,      ἢ χεῖν;  
|smaller

ὥστε θάρρει, ὥς ὅ γε σὸς πατήρ οὐτ' ἄλλον οὐδένα οὐτ'

ἐμὲ |be greedy, take|learn      ἀποπέμψει.  
|advantage

#### 1.4

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ πολλὰ ἐλάλει ὁ Κῦρος· |end      δὲ ἡ μὲν

μήτηρ ἀπῆλθε, Κῦρος δὲ |stay; not change ἑαυτοῦ |nurture

καὶ ταχὺ μὲν τοῖς |equal in age, υνεκέκρατο ὥστε |household,      familiar,  
|contemporary      |proper

he will always give me lessons.” “But,” rejoined his mother, “what everyone takes to be just and righteous at your grandfather’s court is not thought to be so in Persia. For instance, your own grandfather has made himself master over all and sundry among the Medes, but with the Persians equality is held to be an essential part of justice: and first and foremost, your father himself must perform his appointed services to the state and receive his appointed dues: and the measure of these is not his own caprice but the law. Have a care then, or you may be scourged to death when you come home to Persia, if you learn in your grandfather’s school to love not kingship but tyranny, and hold the tyrant’s belief that he and he alone should have more than all the rest.” “Ah, but, mother,” said the boy, “my grandfather is better at teaching people to have less than their share, not more. Cannot you see,” he cried, “how he has taught all the Medes to have less than himself? So set your mind at rest, mother, my grandfather will never make me, or any one else, an adept in the art of getting too much.”

#### 1.4

So the boy’s tongue ran on. But at last his mother went home, and Cyrus stayed behind and was brought up in Media. He soon made friends with his companions and found his way to their hearts,

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀνακτάομαι** regain, revive; win over  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀνάρτημαι** attach to, make dependent upon  
**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against  
 ~ischemia  
**ἄοκνος** resolute  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διάκειμαι** be in a condition  
**διακέομαι** repair  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice  
**διδάσκαλος** teacher  
**δικάζω** judge  
**ἐνδηλος** visible, manifest  
**κλαίω** weep  
**οὐδέποτε** never  
**παιδεία** child-rearing, education  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**ὑπηρετέω** serve  
**φιλανθρωπία** benevolence  
**φιλομαθής** knowledge-loving  
**φιλοτιμία** (τι) ambition  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

διακείσθαι, ταχὺ δὲ τοὺς πατέρας αὐτῶν ἀνήρτητο, προσίων καὶ ἔνδηλος ὢν ὅτι ἡσπάζετο αὐτῶν τοὺς υἱεῖς, ὥστε εἴ τι τοῦ βασιλέως δέοιντο, τοὺς παῖδας ἐκέλευον τοῦ Κύρου δεῖσθαι διαπράξασθαι σφίσιν, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὅ τι δέοιντο αὐτοῦ οἱ παῖδες, διὰ τὴν φιланθρωπίαν καὶ φιλοτιμίαν περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο διαπράττεσθαι, καὶ ὁ Ἀστυάγης δὲ ὅ τι δέοιτο αὐτοῦ ὁ Κῦρος οὐδὲν ἐδύνατο ἀντέχειν μὴ οὐ χαρίζεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ ἀσθενήσαντος αὐτοῦ οὐδέποτε ἀπέλειπε τὸν πάππον οὐδὲ κλαίων ποτὲ ἐπαύετο, ἀλλὰ δῆλος ἦν πᾶσιν ὅτι ὑπερεφοβεῖτο μή οἱ ὁ πάππος ἀποθάνῃ· καὶ γὰρ ἐκ νυκτὸς εἴ τινας δέοιτο Ἀστυάγης, πρῶτος ἡσθάνετο Κῦρος καὶ πάντων ἀοκνότατα ἀνεπήδα ὑπηρετήσων ὅ τι οἶοιτο χαριεῖσθαι, ὥστε παντάπασιν ἀνεκτήσατο τὸν Ἀστυάγην.

Καὶ ἦν μὲν ἴσως πολυλογώτερος, ἅμα μὲν διὰ τὴν παιδείαν, ὅτι ἡναγκάζετο ὑπὸ τοῦ διδασκάλου καὶ διδόναι λόγον ὧν ἐποίει καὶ λαμβάνειν παρ' ἄλλων, ὁπότε δικάζοι, ἔτι δὲ καὶ διὰ τὸ φιλομαθὲς εἶναι πολλὰ μὲν αὐτὸς

διακείσθαι, ταχὺ δὲ τοὺς πατέρας αὐτῶν |attach to, make depen-  
|dent upon

|approach καὶ |visible, ὦν ὅτι |greet, αὐτῶν τοὺς υἱεῖς,  
|manifest |salute

ὥστε εἴ τι τοῦ βασιλέως δέοντο, τοὺς παῖδας ἐκέλευον

τοῦ Κύρου δεῖσθαι |travel over, ac- σφίσιν, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὅ  
|comply

τι δέοντο αὐτοῦ οἱ παῖδες, διὰ τὴν |benevolence καὶ

|ambition περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο |travel over, ac-, καὶ ὁ  
|comply

Ἀστυάγης δὲ ὅ τι δέοιτο αὐτοῦ ὁ Κῦρος οὐδὲν ἐδύνατο

|hold up as protection|gratify καὶ γὰρ |be weak, sick  
|against

αὐτοῦ |never ἀπέλειπε τὸν |grandfather ὃ δὲ |weep ποτὲ

|stop , ἀλλὰ |visible, ᾧ πᾶσιν ὅτι ὑπερεφοβείτο μὴ  
|conspicuous

οἱ ὁ |grandfather ποθάνη· καὶ γὰρ ἐκ νυκτὸς εἴ τις

δέοιτο Ἀστυάγης, πρῶτος |perceive Κῦρος καὶ πάντων

|resolute |leap up, |serve ὅ τι οἶοιτο |gratify ,  
|start up

ὥστε |altogether; yes, |regain, revive; γὺν Ἀστυάγην.  
|certainly |win over

Καὶ ἦν μὲν ἴσως πολυλογώτερος, ἅμα μὲν διὰ τὴν

|child-rearing, |force, compel ὑπὸ τοῦ |teacher καὶ διδόναι  
|education

λόγον ὧν ἐποίει καὶ λαμβάνειν παρ' ἄλλων, |when |judge ,

ἔτι δὲ καὶ διὰ τὸ |knowledge-loving πολλὰ μὲν αὐτὸς

and soon won their parents by the charm of his address and the true affection he bore their sons, so much so that when they wanted a favour from the king they bade their children ask Cyrus to arrange the matter for them. And whatever it might be, the kindness of the lad's heart and the eagerness of his ambition made him set the greatest store on getting it done. On his side, Astyages could not bring himself to refuse his grandson's lightest wish. For once, when he was sick, nothing would induce the boy to leave his side; he could not keep back his tears, and his terror at the thought that his grandfather might die was plain for every one to see. If the old man needed anything during the night Cyrus was the first to notice it, it was he who sprang up first to wait upon him, and bring him what he thought would please him. Thus the old king's heart was his.

During these early days, it must be allowed, the boy was something too much of a talker, in part, may be, because of his bringing-up. He had been trained by his master, whenever he sat in judgment, to give a reason for what he did, and to look for the like reason from others. And moreover, his curiosity and thirst for knowledge were such that he must needs inquire from every one he met the explanation of

*vocabulary*

**ἀγχίνοος** smart ~paranoia  
**αἰδώς** awe, shame, respect; genitals  
**ἀνερωτάω** question  
**διαγωνίζομαι** contend against  
**διαφαίνω** seem, show through  
 ~photon  
**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with  
**ἐμφαίνω** display in  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡλιξ** -χος (m) of the same age  
**ἥσυχος** quiet  
**θράσος** -ους (n, 3) boldness,  
 over-boldness  
**κατηγορέω** accuse; indicate

**κρείσσων** more powerful; better  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**νεαρός** young ~neon  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**πάμπαν** completely  
**προάγω** lead forward, advance  
**προπετής** hasty  
**προσπίπτω** attack; befall; kow-tow  
**σιωπάω** be silent  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συνουσία** society, sex  
**συντυγχάνω** fall in with; happen  
**φιλοστοργία** love, affection

ἀεὶ τοὺς παρόντας ἀνηρώτα πῶς ἔχοντα τυγχάνοι, καὶ ὅσα αὐτὸς ὑπ' ἄλλων ἐρωτῶτο, διὰ τὸ ἀγχίνους εἶναι ταχὺ ἀπεκρίνετο, ὥστ' ἐκ πάντων τούτων ἡ πολυλογία συνελέγετο αὐτῷ· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ γὰρ ἐν σώματι, ὅσοι νέοι ὄντες μέγεθος ἔλαβον, ὅμως ἐμφαίνεται τὸ νεαρὸν αὐτοῖς ὃ κατηγορεῖ τὴν ὀλιγοετίαν, οὕτω καὶ Κύρου ἐκ τῆς πολυλογίας οὐ θράσος διεφαίνετο, ἀλλ' ἀπλότης καὶ φιλοστοργία, ὥστ' ἐπεθύμει ἄν τις ἔτι πλείω αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν ἢ σιωπῶντι παρεῖναι.

Ὡς δὲ προῆγεν αὐτὸν ὁ χρόνος σὺν τῷ μεγέθει εἰς ὥραν τοῦ πρόσηβον γενέσθαι, ἐν τούτῳ δὴ τοῖς μὲν λόγοις μανοτέροις ἐχρήτο καὶ τῇ φωνῇ ἡσυχαιτέρα, αἰδοῦς δ' ἐνεπίμπλατο ὥστε καὶ ἐρυθραίνεσθαι ὁπότε συντυγχάνοι τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις, καὶ τὸ σκυλακῶδες τὸ πᾶσιν ὁμοίως προσπίπτειν οὐκέθ' ὁμοίως προπετεῖς εἶχεν. οὕτω δὴ ἡσυχαιότερος μὲν ἦν, ἐν δὲ ταῖς συνουσίαις πάμπαν ἐπίχαρις. καὶ γὰρ ὅσα διαγωνίζονται πολλάκις ἥλικες πρὸς ἀλλήλους, οὐχ ἅ κρείττων ἥδει



ἀεὶ τοὺς παρόντας |question |how? why? ἡ τυγχάνοι, καὶ  
 ὅσα αὐτὸς ὑπ' ἄλλων |ask , διὰ τὸ |smart εἶναι  
 ταχὺ ἀπεκρίνετο, ὥστ' ἐκ πάντων τούτων ἡ πολυλογία  
 |collect, assemble αὐτῷ· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ γὰρ ἐν σώματι, ὅσοι  
 νέοι ὄντες |tall, big ἔλαβον, |any-way, |display in τὸ |young  
 αὐτοῖς ὁ |accuse; |indicate τὴν ὀλνγέστιαν, οὕτω καὶ Κύρου  
 ἐκ τῆς πολυλογίας οὐ |boldness |seem, show through ἑπλότης  
 καὶ |love, affection , ὥστ' |wish, |covet ἄν τις ἔτι πλείω αὐτοῦ  
 ἀκούειν ἢ |be silent παρεῖναι.

Ὡς δὲ |lead forward, |advance ὃν ὁ χρόνος σὺν τῷ |tall, big εἰς |season, time  
 τοῦ πρόσηβον γενέσθαι, ἐν τούτῳ δὴ τοῖς μὲν λόγοις  
 μανοτέροις ἐχρήτο καὶ τῇ φωνῇ ἡσυχαιτέρᾳ, |awe, shame, respect; |genitals  
 |fill with ὥστε καὶ ἐρυθραίνεσθαι |when |fall in with; happen  
 τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις, καὶ τὸ σκυλακῶδες τὸ πᾶσιν ὁμοίως  
 |attack; |befall; |no more ἑμοίως |hasty εἶχεν. οὕτω δὴ  
 |kow-tow  
 |quiet μὲν ἦν, ἐν δὲ ταῖς συνουσίαις |completely  
 ἐπίχαρις. καὶ γὰρ ὅσα |contend against |often |of the same age  
 πρὸς ἀλλήλους, οὐχ ᾧ κρείττων ἦδει

this, that, and the other; and his own wits were so lively that he was ever ready with an answer himself for any question put to him, so that talkativeness had become, as it were, his second nature. But, just as in the body when a boy is overgrown, some touch of youthfulness is sure to show itself and tell the secret of his age, so for all the lad's loquacity, the impression left on the listener was not of arrogance, but of simplicity and warm-heartedness, and one would gladly have heard his chatter to the end rather than have sat beside him and found him dumb.

However, as he grew in stature and the years led him to the time when childhood passes into youth he became more chary of his words and quieter in his tone: at times, indeed, he was so shy that he would blush in the presence of his elders, and there was little sign left of the old forwardness, the impulsiveness of the puppy who will jump up on every one, master and stranger alike. Thus he grew more sedate, but his company was still most fascinating, and little wonder: for whenever it came to a trial of skill between

*vocabulary*

**ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at  
**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp  
**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in ~oligarch  
**ἐξιيمي** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὅ) wish, covet  
**ἐράω** desire sexually  
**ἐσσόμαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἥλιξ** -κος (m) of the same age  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**θεῖον** θεοῦ brimstone ~fume  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo

**καλινδέομαι** roll, wallow  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κατάρχω** hold ready (sacrificial materials) ~oligarch  
**λιπαρέω** (ι) persist  
**ὀκνηρός** timid; hesitating  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**παράδεισος** park  
**προκαλέω** challenge, call out ~gallo  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion  
**σφόδρα** very much  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame

ὦν, ταῦτα προυκαλείτο τοὺς συνόντας, ἀλλ' ἄπερ εὖ  
 ᾗδει ἑαυτὸν ἥττονα ὄντα, ἐξηρχε, φάσκων κάλλιον αὐτῶν  
 ποιήσειν, καὶ κατῆρχεν ἤδη ἀναπηδῶν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἢ  
 διατοξευσόμενος ἢ διακοντιούμενος ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων οὐπω  
 πάννυ ἔποχος ὦν, ἡττώμενος δὲ αὐτὸς ἐφ' ἑαυτῷ μάλιστα  
 ἐγέλα. ὥς δ' οὐκ ἀπεδίδρασκεν ἐκ τοῦ ἡττᾶσθαι εἰς τὸ μὴ  
 ποιεῖν ὃ ἡττῶτο, ἀλλ' ἐκαλινδεῖτο ἐν τῷ πειρᾶσθαι αὐτὸς  
 βέλτιον ποιεῖν, ταχὺ μὲν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἀφίκετο τῇ ἱππικῇ  
 τοῖς ἡλίξι, ταχὺ δὲ παρήει διὰ τὸ ἐρᾶν τοῦ ἔργου, ταχὺ δὲ  
 τὰ ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ θηρία ἀνηλώκει διώκων καὶ βάλλων  
 καὶ κατακαίνων, ὥστε ὁ Ἀστυάγης οὐκέτ' εἶχεν αὐτῷ  
 συλλέγειν θηρία. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος αἰσθόμενος ὅτι βουλόμενος  
 οὐ δύναιτό οἱ ζῶντα πολλὰ παρέχειν, ἔλεγε πρὸς αὐτόν· ὦ  
 πάππε, τί σε δεῖ θηρία ζητοῦντα πράγματ' ἔχειν; ἀλλ' ἐὰν  
 ἐμὲ ἐκπέμπῃς ἐπὶ θήραν σὺν τῷ θεῷ, νομῶ ὅσα ἂν ἴδω  
 θηρία, ἐμοὶ ταῦτα τρέφεσθαι. ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ σφόδρα ἐξιέναι  
 ἐπὶ τὴν θήραν οὐκέτι ὁμοίως λιπαρεῖν ἐδύνατο ὥσπερ παῖς  
 ὦν, ἀλλ' ὀκνηρότερον προσήει. καὶ ἃ πρόσθεν

ὦν, ταῦτα |challenge      τοὺς |be with; have sèx` ἅπερ εἶ  
 ἥδει ἐαυτὸν ἥττονα ὄντα, |take the|declare, promise, |in αὐτῶν  
 |lead in |think  
 ποιήσειν, καὶ |hold ready ἥδη |leap up, start up` τοὺς ἵππους ἢ  
 διατοξενσόμενος ἢ διακοντιούμενος ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων |no longer  
 |altogether, xery ὦν, ἥττώμενος δὲ αὐτὸς ἐφ' ἐαυτῷ μάλιστα  
 |laugh, . ὥς δ' οὐκ |escape      ἐκ τοῦ ἥττᾶσθαι εἰς τὸ μὴ  
 |smile  
 ποιεῖν ὃ ἥττῶτο, ἀλλ' |roll, wallow ἐν τῷ |try, test αὐθις  
 βέλτιον ποιεῖν, ταχὺ μὲν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἀφίκετο τῇ |of horses  
 τοῖς |of the, same` age` παρήει διὰ τὸ ἐρᾶν τοῦ ἔργου, ταχὺ δὲ  
 τὰ ἐν τῷ |park      θηρία |consume, |chase καὶ βάλλων  
 |spend on  
 καὶ κατακαίνων, ὥστε ὁ Ἀστυάγης οὐκέτ' εἶχεν αὐτῷ  
 |collect,      θηρία. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος |perceive      ὅτι βουλόμενος  
 |assemble  
 οὐ δύναιτό οἱ ζῶντα πολλὰ παρέχειν, ἔλεγε πρὸς αὐτόν· Ὡ  
 |grandfather` σε δεῖ θηρία |seek      πράγματ' ἔχειν; ἀλλ' ἐὰν  
 ἐμὲ |send forth ἐπὶ |hunt σὺν τῷ θείῳ, νομιῶ ὅσα ἂν ἴδω  
 θηρία, ἐμοὶ ταῦτα |nurture      |wish, covet δὲ |very much` ῥιέναι  
 ἐπὶ τὴν |hunt οὐκέτι ὁμοίως |persist      ἐδύνατο ὥσπερ παῖς  
 ὦν, ἀλλ' |timid;      |approach. καὶ ἂν πρόσθεν  
 |hesitating

himself and his comrades he would never challenge his mates to those feats in which he himself excelled: he would start precisely one where he felt his own inferiority, averring that he would outdo them all,—indeed, he would spring to horse in order to shoot or hurl the javelin before he had got a firm seat—and then, when he was worsted, he would be the first to laugh at his own discomfiture. He had no desire to escape defeat by giving up the effort, but took glory in the resolution to do better another time, and thus he soon found himself as good a horseman as his peers, and presently, such was his ardour, he surpassed them all, and at last the thinning of the game in the king's preserves began to show what he could do. What with the chasing and the shooting and the spearing, the stock of animals ran so low that Astyages was hard put to it to collect enough for him. Then Cyrus, seeing that his grandfather for all his goodwill could never furnish him with enough, came to him one day and said, "Grandfather, why should you take so much trouble in finding game for me? If only you would let me go out to hunt with my uncle, I could fancy every beast we came across had been reared for my particular delight!" But however anxious the lad might

*vocabulary***ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture**ἄρκτος** (f) bear**ἀσινής** unharmed**δυσχωρία** rough ground; lack of room**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp**ἐκχωρέω** depart, back off, cede**ἔλαφος** (f) deer**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet**ἕπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θεῖον** θεαίου brimstone ~fume**θηράω** hunt, chase**κάπρος** boar**λάω** grip, pin?**λέων** lion**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**πάντως** by all means**πάππος** grandfather**πάρδαλις** -ος (f) leopard**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into contact with**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex**ποῖος** what kind**πρόθυμος** (ō) willing, eager ~fume**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp**σφόδρα** very much**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry ~phylactery

τῷ Σάκα ἐμέμφετο ὅτι οὐ παρίει αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν πάππον, αὐτὸς ἤδη Σάκας ἐαυτῷ ἐγίγνετο· οὐ γὰρ προσήει, εἰ μὴ ἴδοι εἰ καιρὸς εἴη, καὶ τοῦ Σάκα ἐδεῖτο πάντως σημαίνειν αὐτῷ ὅποτε ἐγχωροίη καὶ ὅποτε καιρὸς εἴη· ὥστε ὁ Σάκας ὑπερεφίλει ἤδη καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες.

Ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν ἔγνω ὁ Ἀστυάγης σφόδρα αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμοῦντα ἔξω θηρᾶν, ἐκπέμπει αὐτὸν σὺν τῷ θείῳ καὶ φύλακας συμπέμπει ἐφ' ἵππων πρεσβυτέρους, ὅπως ἀπὸ τῶν δυσχωριῶν φυλάττοιεν αὐτὸν καὶ εἰ τῶν ἀγρίων τι φανείη θηρίων. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος τῶν ἐπομένων προθύμως ἐπυνθάνετο ποίοις οὐ χρή θηρίοις πελάζειν καὶ ποῖα χρή θαρροῦντα διώκειν. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄρκτοι τε πολλοὺς ἤδη πλησιάσαντας διέφθειραν καὶ κάπροι καὶ λέοντες καὶ παρδάλεις, αἱ δὲ ἔλαφοι καὶ δορκάδες καὶ οἱ ἄγριοι οἶες καὶ οἱ ὄνοι οἱ ἄγριοι ἀσινεῖς εἰσιν. ἔλεγον δὲ καὶ τοῦτο, τὰς δυσχωρίας ὅτι δέοι φυλάττεσθαι οὐδὲν ἦττον ἢ τὰ θηρία· πολλοὺς γὰρ ἤδη αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἵπποις κατακρημνισθῆναι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πάντα ταῦτα ἐμάνθανε προθύμως· ὥς δὲ



τῷ Σάκα |blame; reject ὅτι οὐ |dangle; pass over, allow ν πρὸς τὸν |grandfather

αὐτὸς ἤδη Σάκας ἐαυτῷ ἐγίγνετο· οὐ γὰρ |approach, εἰ μὴ

ἴδοι εἰ καιρὸς εἶη, καὶ τοῦ Σάκα ἐδεῖτο |by all |give orders to; means |show; mark

αὐτῷ ὁπότε |depart, back off, cede καὶ ὁπότε καιρὸς εἶη· ὥστε ὁ Σάκας

ὑπερεφίλει ἤδη καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες.

Ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν ἔγνω ὁ Ἀστυάγης |very much ἵπτον |wish, covet

ἔξω |hunt, chase, |send forth αὐτὸν σὺν τῷ θείῳ καὶ |guard; sentry

|send with ἐφ' ἵππων πρεσβυτέρους, ὅπως ἀπὸ τῶν

|rough ground; lack of room; ὑλάττοιεν αὐτὸν καὶ εἰ τῶν |wild, savage τι

φανείη θηρίων. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος τῶν ἐπομένων |willing, eager

ἐπυνθάνετο |what kind' χρὴ θηρίοις |bring/come to, near, into |what kind,

θαρροῦντα διώκειν. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι |contact with bear τε πολλοὺς

ἤδη |bring/be near; have sex διέφθειραν καὶ |boar καὶ λέοντες καὶ

|leopard, αἰ δὲ |deer καὶ δορκάδες καὶ οἱ |wild, savage ζῖες καὶ

οἱ |donkey, |wild, savage |unharm'd ἵν'. ἔλεγον δὲ καὶ τοῦτο, τὰς

|rough ground; lack of room; καὶ δέοι φυλάττεσθαι οὐδὲν ἥττον ἢ τὰ θηρία·

πολλοὺς γὰρ ἤδη αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἵπποις κατακρημνισθῆναι.

καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πάντα ταῦτα ἐμάνθανε |willing, eager ὥς δὲ

be to go out to the chase, he had somehow lost the old childish art of winning what he wanted by coaxing: and he hesitated a long time before approaching the king again. If in the old days he had quarrelled with Sacas for not letting him in, now he began to play the part of Sacas against himself, and could not summon courage to intrude until he thought the right moment had come: indeed, he implored the real Sacas to let him know when he might venture. So that the old butler's heart was won, and he, like the rest of the world, was completely in love with the young prince.

At last when Astyages saw that the lad's heart was really set on hunting in the open country, he gave him leave to go out with his uncle, taking care at the same time to send an escort of mounted veterans at his heels, whose business it was to keep watch and ward over him in any dangerous place or against any savage beast. Cyrus plied his retinue with questions about the creatures they came across, which must he avoid and which might he hunt? They told him he must be on his guard against bears and wild-boars and lions and leopards: many a man had found himself at too close quarters with these dangerous creatures, and been torn to pieces: but antelopes, they said, and deer and mountain sheep and wild asses were harmless enough. And the huntsman, they added, ought to be as careful about dangerous places as about the beasts themselves: many a time horse and rider had gone headlong down a precipice to death. The lad seemed to take all their lessons to heart at the time: but then he

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀνιάω** (i) vex  
**ἀντιόω** meet, fight, join  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard  
**ἐλαφος** (f) deer  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out  
**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe  
**ἐπιμένω** wait, stay ~remain  
**εὖστοχος** well-aimed  
**θεῖον** θεείου brimstone ~fume  
**θέω** run, run for  
**κάπρος** boar

**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off  
 ~ballistic  
**καταίρω** swoop; land  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**λοιδορέω** abuse, revile  
**μέτωπον** forehead, front  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**προσελεύω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add  
**ὑπερχαίρω** rejoice greatly at  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

εἶδεν ἔλαφον ἐκπηδήσασαν, πάντων ἐπιλαθόμενος ὧν  
 ἤκουσεν ἐδίωκεν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὁρῶν ἢ ὅπη ἔφευγε. καί  
 πως διαπηδῶν αὐτῷ ὁ ἵππος πίπτει εἰς γόνατα, καὶ  
 μικροῦ κάκεινον ἐξετραχήλισεν. οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ἐπέμεινεν  
 ὁ Κῦρος μόλις πως, καὶ ὁ ἵππος ἐξανέστη. ὥς δ' εἰς τὸ  
 πεδίον ἦλθεν, ἀκοντίσας καταβάλλει τὴν ἔλαφον, καλόν  
 τι χρῆμα καὶ μέγα. καὶ ὁ μὲν δὴ ὑπερέχαιρεν· οἱ δὲ  
 φύλακες προσελάσαντες ἐλοιδόρουν αὐτὸν καὶ ἔλεγον  
 εἰς οἶον κίνδυνον ἔλθοι, καὶ ἔφασαν κατερεῖν αὐτοῦ. ὁ  
 οὖν Κῦρος εἰστήκει καταβεβηκώς, καὶ ἀκούων ταῦτα  
 ἡμιᾶτο. ὥς δ' ἦσθετο κραυγῆς, ἀνεπήδησεν ἐπὶ τὸν  
 ἵππον ὥσπερ ἐνθουσιῶν, καὶ ὥς εἶδεν ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου  
 κάπρον προσφερόμενον, ἀντίος ἐλαύνει καὶ διατεινόμενος  
 εὐστόχως βάλλει εἰς τὸ μέτωπον καὶ κατέσχε τὸν κάπρον.  
 ἐνταῦθα μέντοι ἤδη καὶ ὁ θεῖος αὐτῷ ἐλοιδορεῖτο, τὴν  
 θρασύτητα ὁρῶν. ὁ δ' αὐτοῦ λαιδορουμένου ὅμως ἐδεῖτο  
 ὅσα αὐτὸς ἔλαβε, ταῦτα ἑᾶσαι εἰσκομίσαντα δοῦναι τῷ  
 πάππῳ. τὸν δὲ θεῖον εἰπεῖν φασιν· Ἄλλ' ἣν αἰσθῆται ὅτι

εἶδεν |deer      ἐκπηδήσασαν, πάντων ἐπιλαθόμενος ὦν  
 ἤκουσεν ἐδίωκεν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὁρῶν ἢ |wherever, however γε. καί  
 πως διαπηδῶν αὐτῷ ὁ ἵππος πίπτει εἰς |knee , καὶ  
 μικροῦ κάκεινον ἐξετραχήλισεν. οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' |wait, stay  
 ὁ Κῦρος |with difficulty, καὶ ὁ ἵππος |raise, bring/send ὧς εἰς τὸ  
 |barely |out  
 πεδίον ἦλθεν, |throw, |throw down, cast, off |deer , καλόν  
 |(+gen) at  
 τι χρῆμα καὶ μέγα. καὶ ὁ μὲν δὴ |rejoice greatly οἱ δὲ  
 |at  
 |guard; |go to, approach |abuse, revile αὐτὸν καὶ ἔλεγον  
 |sentry  
 εἰς οἶον κίνδυνον ἔλθοι, καὶ ἔφασαν κατερεῖν αὐτοῦ. ὁ  
 οὖν Κῦρος εἰστήκει καταβεβηκώς, καὶ ἀκούων ταῦτα  
 |vex . ὥς δ' |perceive |screaming, |leap up, start up ἰὼν τὸν  
 |shouting  
 ἵππον ὥσπερ ἐνθουσιῶν, καὶ ὥς εἶδεν ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου  
 |boar |present; resemble; ἀντίος ἐλαύνει καὶ |extend; (mp) try  
 |add |hard  
 |well-aimed βάλλει εἰς τὸ |forehead, καὶ κατέσχε τὸν |boar .  
 |front  
 |there, here, ἐντοὶ ἤδη καὶ ὁ θεῖος αὐτῷ |abuse, revile , τὴν  
 θρασύτητα ὁρῶν. ὁ δ' αὐτοῦ |abuse, revile |anyway, nevertheless  
 ὅσα αὐτὸς ἔλαβε, ταῦτα ἐᾶσαι εἰσκομίσαντα δοῦναι τῷ  
 |grandfather ἔν δὲ θεῖον εἰπεῖν φασιν· Ἄλλ' ἦν |perceive ὅτι

saw a stag leap up, and forgot all the wise cautions he had heard, giving chase forthwith, noticing nothing except the beast ahead of him. His horse, in its furious plunge forward, slipped, and came down on its knees, all but throwing the rider over its head. As luck would have it the boy managed to keep his seat, and the horse recovered its footing. When they reached the flat bottom, Cyrus let fly his javelin, and the stag fell dead, a beautiful big creature. The lad was still radiant with delight when up rode the guard and took him severely to task. Could he not see the danger he had run? They would certainly tell his grandfather, that they would. Cyrus, who had dismounted, stood quite still and listened ruefully, hanging his head while they rated him. But in the middle of it all he heard the view-halloo again: he sprang to his horse as though frenzied—a wild-boar was charging down on them, and he charged to meet it, and drawing his bow with the surest aim possible, struck the beast in the forehead, and laid him low. But now his uncle thought it was high time to scold his nephew himself; the lad's boldness was too much. Only, the more he scolded the more Cyrus begged he would let him take back the spoil as a present for his grandfather. To which appeal, says the story, his uncle made reply: "But if your grandfather finds out

*vocabulary*

**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin  
**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit  
**διαδέω** bandage, bind  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**ἐπειδὴν** when, after  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἡλικιώτης** -ου (m, 1) equal in age, contemporary  
**θηράω** hunt, chase  
**ἵκετεύω** approach to beg  
**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay aside ~thesis  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that

**λοιδορέω** abuse, revile  
**μαστιγόω** (ἰ) whip  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great  
**ὅπου** where  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**παράδεισος** park  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle  
**τιμωρέω** (ἰ) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**φλυαρέω** talk foolishly  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ἐδίωκες, οὐ σοὶ μόνον λοιδορήσεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμοί, ὅτι  
 σε εἶων. Καὶ ἦν βούληται, φάναι αὐτόν, μαστιγωσάτω,  
 ἐπειδάν γε ἐγὼ δῶ αὐτῷ. καὶ σύγε, ὅ τι βούλει, ἔφη,  
 ὦ θεῖε, τιμωρησάμενος τοῦτο ὅμως χάρισαί μοι. καὶ  
 ὁ Κναξάρης μέντοι τελευτῶν εἶπε· Ποίει ὅπως βούλει·  
 σὺ γὰρ νῦν γε ἡμῶν ἕοικας βασιλεὺς εἶναι. οὕτω δὴ  
 ὁ Κῦρος εἰσκομίσας τὰ θηρία ἐδίδου τε τῷ πάππῳ καὶ  
 ἔλεγεν ὅτι αὐτὸς ταῦτα θηράσειεν ἐκείνῳ. καὶ τὰ ἀκόντια  
 ἐπεδείκνυ μὲν οὐ, κατέθηκε δὲ ἡματωμένα ὅπου ᾤετο τὸν  
 πάππον ὄψεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ἀστυάγης ἄρα εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ παῖ,  
 δέχομαι μὲν ἔγωγε ἡδέως ὅσα σὺ δίδως, οὐ μέντοι δέομαί  
 γε τούτων οὐδενός, ὥστε σε κινδυνεύειν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 ἔφη· Εἰ τοίνυν μὴ σὺ δέῃ, ἱκετεύω, ὦ πάππε, ἐμοὶ δὸς  
 αὐτά, ὅπως τοῖς ἡλικιώταις ἐγὼ διαδῶ. Ἄλλ', ὦ παῖ, ἔφη  
 ὁ Ἀστυάγης, καὶ ταῦτα λαβὼν διαδίδου ὅτῳ σὺ βούλει  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὅποσα θέλεις. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν ἐδίδου  
 τε ἄρας τοῖς παισὶ καὶ ἅμα ἔλεγεν· ὦ παῖδες, ὥς ἄρα  
 ἐφλυαροῦμεν ὅτε τὰ ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ θηρία ἐθηρῶμεν·



|chase , οὐ σοὶ μόνον |abuse, revile , ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμοί, ὅτι  
 σε εἶων. Καὶ ἦν βούληται, φάναι αὐτόν, |whip ,  
 |when, γε ἐγὼ δὴ αὐτῷ. καὶ σύγε, ὅ τι βούλει, ἔφη,  
 |after  
 ὦ θεῖε, |take vengeance, τοῦτο |any- |gratify μοι. καὶ  
 |punish, aid  
 ὁ Κυμαξάρης |however ἐλευτῶν ἐπεί ποῖε ὅπως βούλει·  
 |never-  
 |theless  
 σὺ γὰρ νῦν γε ἡμῶν ἔοικας βασιλεὺς εἶναι. οὕτω δὲ  
 ὁ Κῦρος εἰσκομίσας τὰ θηρία ἐδίδου τε τῷ |grandfather...  
 ἔλεγεν ὅτι αὐτὸς ταῦτα |hunt, chase ἐκείνῳ. καὶ τὰ |diminutive  
 |of javelin  
 |display, μὲν οὐ, |put down δὲ ἡματωμένα |where ἔτετο τὸν  
 |exhibit  
 |grandfather... εἶσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ἀστυάγης ἄρα εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ παῖ,  
 |accept, re-... ἔγωγε |sweet ὅσα σὺ δίδως, οὐ |however... ἔομαι  
 |ceive, await  
 γε τούτων οὐδενός, ὥστε σε |encounter danger; `(+inf) ὅρος  
 |there is a danger that  
 ἔφη· Εἰ |well, then... σὺ δέη, |approach... |to|grandfather... ἵ δὲ  
 |beg  
 αὐτά, ὅπως τοῖς |equal in age, `con-|bandage, `bind, ὦ παῖ, ἔφη  
 |temporary  
 ὁ Ἀστυάγης, καὶ ταῦτα λαβὼν |distribute, `send out βούλει  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων |as/how many/great... ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν ἐδίδου  
 τε ἄρας τοῖς παισὶ καὶ ἅμα ἔλεγεν· ὦ παῖδες, ὥς ἄρα  
 |talk foolishly ὅτε τὰ ἐν τῷ |park θηρία |hunt, chase

that you have gone in chase yourself, he will not only scold you for going but me for letting you go." "Well, let him whip me if he likes," said the boy, "when once I have given him my beasts: and you too, uncle," he went on, "punish me however you choose, only do not refuse me this." So Cyaxares was forced to yield:—"Have it your own way then, you are little less than our king already." Thus it was that Cyrus was allowed to bring his trophies home, and in due course presented them to his grandfather. "See, grandfather, here are some animals I have shot for you." But he did not show his weapons in triumph: he only laid them down with the gore still on them where he hoped his grandfather would see them. It is easy to guess the answer Astyages gave:—"I must needs accept with pleasure every gift you bring me, only I want none of them at the risk of your own life." And Cyrus said, "If you really do not want them yourself, grandfather, will you give them to me? And I will divide them among the lads." "With all my heart," said the old man, "take them, or anything else you like; bestow them where you will, and welcome." So Cyrus carried off the spoil, and divided it with his comrades, saying all the while, "What foolery it was, when

*vocabulary***ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally**ἅμαρτέω** act together, be a companion**ἀναβλέπω** look up; gain sight, open  
one's eyes**ἀνδρεῖος** of a man, manly**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἔλαφος** (f) deer**ἐπιδίδωμι** give, give with, give  
reciprocally ~donate**ζῶον** being, animal; picture**ἡλίθιος** idle, vain, foolish**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**θηράω** hunt, chase**ἰσώω** (ἷ) liken to**κάπρος** boar**λειμών** -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic**λεπτός** thin**λιπαρός** anointed, shining ~lipid**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**πάππος** grandfather**χωλός** lame**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὅμοιον ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ εἶναι οἶόνπερ εἴ τις δεδεμένα ζῶα  
 θηρώῃ. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἐν μικρῷ χωρίῳ ἦν, ἔπειτα  
 λεπτὰ καὶ ψωραλέα, καὶ τὸ μὲν αὐτῶν χολὸν ἦν, τὸ δὲ  
 κολοβόν· τὰ δ' ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι καὶ λειμῶσι θηρία ὡς μὲν  
 καλά, ὡς δὲ μεγάλα, ὡς δὲ λιπαρὰ ἐφαίνετο. καὶ αἱ μὲν  
 ἔλαφοι ὥσπερ πτηναὶ ἦλλοντο πρὸς τὸν οὐρανόν, οἱ δὲ  
 κάπροι ὥσπερ τοὺς ἄνδρας φασὶ τοὺς ἀνδρείους ὁμόσε  
 ἐφέροντο· ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς πλατύτητος οὐδὲ ἀμαρτεῖν οἶόν τ' ἦν  
 αὐτῶν· καλλίῳ δὲ, ἔφη, ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ καὶ τεθνηκότα εἶναι  
 ταῦτα ἢ ζῶντα ἐκείνα τὰ περιωκοδομημένα. ἀλλ' ἄρα ἄν,  
 ἔφη, ἀφείεν καὶ ὑμᾶς οἱ πατέρες ἐπὶ θήραν; καὶ ῥαδίως  
 γ' ἄν, ἔφασαν, εἰ Ἀστυάγης κελεύοι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε·  
 Τίς οὖν ἂν ἡμῖν Ἀστυάγει μνησθείη; τίς γὰρ ἄν, ἔφασαν,  
 σοῦ γε ἰκανώτερος πείσαι; Ἀλλὰ μὰ τὸν Δία, ἔφη, ἐγὼ μὲν  
 οὐκ οἶδ' ὅστις ἄνθρωπος γεγένημαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ οἶός τ' εἰμὶ  
 λέγειν ἔγωγε οὐδ' ἀναβλέπειν πρὸς τὸν πάππον ἐκ τοῦ  
 ἴσου ἔτι δύναμαι. ἦν δὲ τοσοῦτον ἐπιδιδῶ, δέδοικα, ἔφη,  
 μὴ παντάπασι βλάξ τις καὶ ἡλίθιος γένωμαι·

|like ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ εἶναι οἷόνπερ εἴ τις δεδεμένα ζῶα  
 |hunt, chase . πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἐν |small |area; downwards τα  
 |thin καὶ ψωραλέα, καὶ τὸ μὲν αὐτῶν |lame ἦν, τὸ δὲ  
 κολοβόν· τὰ δ' ἐν τοῖς |mountain |meadow |wild animal, ἐν  
 καλά, ὡς δὲ μέγала, ὡς δὲ |shining ἐφαίνετο. καὶ αἱ μὲν  
 |deer ὥσπερ πτηναὶ |to jump πρὸς τὸν οὐρανόν, οἱ δὲ  
 |boar ὥσπερ τοὺς ἄνδρας φασὶ τοὺς |of a man, |to the same spot  
 |manly ἐφέροντο· ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς πλατύτητος οὐδὲ ἀμαρτεῖν οἷόν τ' ἦν  
 αὐτῶν· καλλίω δὴ, ἔφη, ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ καὶ τεθνηκότα εἶναι  
 ταῦτα ἢ ζῶντα ἐκείνα τὰ περιωκοδομημένα. ἀλλ' |interrogative pcl  
 ἔφη, |throw, release, |mās οἱ πατέρες ἐπὶ |hunt , καὶ |easy  
 |use up γ' ἂν, ἔφασαν, εἰ Ἀστυάγης κελεύοι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε·  
 Τίς οὖν ἂν ἡμῖν Ἀστυάγει |remind; (mid) remember, ἔφασαν,  
 |turn one's thoughts to σοῦ γε |sufficient; fit, πείσαι; Ἀλλὰ μὰ τὸν Δία, ἔφη, ἐγὼ μὲν  
 |empowered οὐκ οἶδ' ὅστις ἄνθρωπος γεγένημαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ οἶός τ' εἰμὶ  
 λέγειν ἔγωγε οὐδ' |look up; gain sight, open |grandfather' τοῦ  
 |one's eyes ἴσου ἔτι δύναμαι. ἦν δὲ |so much |give, give to fear , ἔφη,  
 |with, give μὴ |altogether; βλάξ τις καὶ |idle, vain, foolish...  
 |yes, certainly |recipro- cally

we used to hunt in the park! It was no better than hunting creatures tied by a string. First of all, it was such a little bit of a place, and then what scarecrows the poor beasts were, one halt, and another maimed! But those real animals on the mountains and the plains—what splendid beasts, so gigantic, so sleek and glossy! Why, the stags leapt up against the sky as though they had wings, and the wild-boars came rushing to close quarters like warriors in battle! And thanks to their breadth and bulk one could not help hitting them. Why, even as they lie dead there,” cried he, “they look finer than those poor walled-up creatures when alive! But you,” he added, “could not your fathers let you go out to hunt too?” “Gladly enough,” answered they, “if only the king gave the order.” “Well,” said Cyrus, “who will speak to Astyages for us?” “Why,” answered they, “who so fit to persuade him as yourself?” “No, by all that’s holy, not I!” cried Cyrus. “I cannot think what has come over me: I cannot speak to my grandfather any more; I cannot look him straight in the face. If this fit grows on me, I am afraid I shall become no better than an idiot. And yet, when I was a little boy,

*vocabulary***ἄλυπος** (ῥ) painless**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀπαγορεύω** forbid; fail, be worn out**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental

~after

**δάκνω** bite**διακελεύομαι** give orders to, encourage**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**ἐνδίδωμι** hand over, lend, show, allow**ἐνδοθεν** from within**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

**ἡλικιώτης** -ου (m, 1) equal in age,

contemporary

**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**κινέω** (ι) set in motion, move, remove

~kinetic

**μαστιγώω** (ι) whip**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house

slave

**πάππος** grandfather**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order

before

**σιγά** silence**σιγάω** (ι) be silent**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away

from ~demagogue

**χαρίεις** graceful

παιδάριον δ' ὦν δεινότατος λαλεῖν ἐδόκουν εἶναι. καὶ οἱ παῖδες εἶπον· Πονηρὸν λέγεις τὸ πρᾶγμα, εἰ μὴδ' ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν ἄν τι δέῃ δυνήσῃ πράττειν, ἀλλ' ἄλλου τινὸς τὸ ἐπὶ σὲ ἀνάγκη ἔσται δεῖσθαι ἡμᾶς. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐδήχθη, καὶ σιγῇ ἀπελθὼν διακελευσάμενος ἑαυτῷ τολμᾶν εἰσῆλθεν, ἐπιβουλεύσας ὅπως ἂν ἀλυπότατα εἴποι πρὸς τὸν πάππον καὶ διαπράξειεν αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς παισὶν ὧν ἐδέοντο. ἤρξατο οὖν ὧδε.

Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ πάππε, ἦν τις ἀποδρᾶ σε τῶν οἰκετῶν καὶ λάβῃς αὐτόν, τί αὐτῷ χρήσῃ; Τί ἄλλο, ἔφη, ἢ δήσας ἐργάζεσθαι ἀναγκάσω; Ἦν δὲ αὐτόματος πάλιν ἔλθῃ, πῶς ποιήσεις; Τί δέ, ἔφη, εἰ μὴ μαστιγώσας γε, ἵνα μὴ αὐθις τοῦτο ποιῇ, ἐξ ἀρχῆς χρήσομαι; Ὡρα ἄν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, σοὶ παρασκευάζεσθαι εἴη ὅτῳ μαστιγώσεις με, ὥς βουλεύομαί γε ὅπως σε ἀποδρῶ λαβὼν τοὺς ἡλικιώτας ἐπὶ θήραν. καὶ ὁ Ἀστυάγης, Καλῶς, ἔφη, ἐποίησας προειπών· ἔνδοθεν γάρ, ἔφη, ἀπαγορεύω σοι μὴ κινεῖσθαι. χαρίεν γάρ, ἔφη, εἰ ἔνεκα κρεαδίῳ τῇ θυγατρὶ τὸν παῖδα ἀποβουκολήσαιμι.



παιδάριον δ' ὦν δεινότατος λαλεῖν ἐδόκουν εἶναι. καὶ οἱ  
 παῖδες εἶπον· |oppressed; knáx-ς τὸ πρᾶγμα, εἰ |and nóti; ἡὸt even  
 |ish; useless  
 ἡμῶν ἂν τι δέῃ δυνήσῃ πράττειν, ἀλλ' ἄλλου τινὸς τὸ ἐπὶ  
 σὲ |necessity ἔσται δεῖσθαι ἡμᾶς. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος  
 |bite , καὶ σιγῇ ἀπελθὼν |give orders to, en- ἐαυτῷ |dare  
 |courage  
 εἰσῆλθεν, |plot, plan, harm ὕπως ἂν |painless εἴποι πρὸς  
 τὸν |grandfather ... |travel over, αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς παισὶν ὦν  
 |accomplish  
 ἐδέοντο. ἤρξατο οὖν |thus

Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ |grandfather τις |escape σε τῶν |household;  
 |house slave  
 καὶ λάβῃς αὐτόν, τί αὐτῷ χρήσῃ; Τί ἄλλο, ἔφη, ἢ δήσας  
 |work |force, , Ἦν δὲ |self-willed, πάλιν ἔλθῃ, |how? why?  
 |compel |accidental  
 ποιήσεις; Τί δέ, ἔφη, εἰ μὴ |whip γε, ἵνα μὴ αὐθις  
 τοῦτο ποιῇ, ἐξ ἀρχῆς χρήσομαι; |season, ἔτι, ἡ ὁ Κῦρος, σοὶ  
 |prepare, render εἴη ὅτῳ μαστιγώσεις με, ὥς |(mp) to deliberate  
 γε ὅπως σε |escape λαβὼν τοὺς |equal in age, con-|hunt . καὶ  
 |temporary  
 ὁ Ἀστυάγης, Καλῶς, ἔφη, ἐποίησας |foretell, proclaim, θεν  
 |order before  
 γάρ, ἔφη, |forbid; fail, σοι μὴ |move, |graceful , ἄρ, ἔφη, εἰ  
 |be worn out |remove  
 ἔνεκα κρεαδίων τῇ θυγατρὶ τὸν παῖδα ἀποβουκολήσαιμι.

they tell me, I was sharp enough at talking.” To which the other lads retorted, “Well, it is a bad business altogether: and if you cannot bestir yourself for your friends, if you can do nothing for us in our need, we must turn elsewhere.” When Cyrus heard that he was stung to the quick: he went away in silence and urged himself to put on a bold face, and so went in to his grandfather, not, however, without planning first how he could best bring in the matter. Accordingly he began thus: “Tell me, grandfather,” said he, “if one of your slaves were to run away, and you caught him, what would you do to him?” “What else should I do,” the old man answered, “but clap irons on him and set him to work in chains?” “But if he came back of his own accord, how would you treat him then?” “Why, I would give him a whipping, as a warning not to do it again, and then treat him as though nothing had happened.” “It is high time then,” said the boy, “that you began getting a birch ready for your grandson: for I am planning to take my comrades and run away on a hunting expedition.” “Very kind of you to tell me, beforehand,” said Astyages. “And now listen, I forbid you to set foot outside the palace grounds. A pretty thing,” he added, “if for the sake of a day’s hunting I should let my daughter’s

*vocabulary*

ἀκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute

ἀμιλλάομαι contend

ἀνδάνω please ~hedonism

ἀνιάρός (αἶ) troublesome, tiresome

ἀπαγορεύω forbid; fail, be worn out

βασιλικός royal

γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis

διάγω lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

διαγωνίζομαι contend against

ἐμπίμπλημι fill with

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

εὐφροαίνω gladden ~frenzy

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

ἡδονή pleasure

ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

θεάομαι look at, behold, consider

~theater

θήρα hunt ~fierce

θηράω hunt, chase

ἱππάσιμος fit for horses or riding

ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

καταγελάω laugh at, deride

κράτιστος best

κωλύω (ῥ) hinder, prevent

λυπέω (ῥ) annoy, distress

ὀνομαστί by name

πάππος grandfather

πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex

σιγάω (ι) be silent

σιωπή silence

σκύλαξ -κος (f) puppy

συναίρῃω put together, crush ~heresy

συναλίζω collect; eat with

συνελαύνω drive together ~elastic

φθονερός jealous

χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

χωρίον area; downwards

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐπείθετο μὲν καὶ ἔμεινεν, ἀνιαρὸς δὲ καὶ σκυθρωπὸς ὦν σιωπῇ διῆγεν. ὁ μέντοι Ἀστυάγης ἐπεὶ ἔγνω αὐτὸν λυπούμενον ἰσχυρῶς, βουλόμενος αὐτῷ χαρίζεσθαι ἐξάγει ἐπὶ θήραν, καὶ πεζοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ ἱππέας συναλίσας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας καὶ συνελάσας εἰς τὰ ἱππάσιμα χωρία τὰ θηρία ἐποίησε μεγάλην θήραν. καὶ βασιλικῶς δὴ παρὼν αὐτὸς ἀπηγόρευε μηδένα βάλλειν, πρὶν Κῦρος ἐμπλησθεῖη θηρῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος οὐκ εἶα κωλύειν, ἀλλ', Εἰ βούλει, ἔφη, ὦ πάππε, ἡδέως με θηρᾶν, ἄφες τοὺς κατ' ἐμὲ πάντας διώκειν καὶ διαγωνίζεσθαι ὅπως ἂν ἕκαστος κράτιστα δύναιτο. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἀφίησι, καὶ στὰς ἐθεᾶτο ἀμυλλωμένους ἐπὶ τὰ θηρία καὶ φιλονικούντας καὶ διώκοντας καὶ ἀκοντίζοντας. καὶ Κύρῳ ἦδετο οὐ δυναμένῳ σιγᾶν ὑπὸ τῆς ἡδονῆς, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ σκύλακι γενναίῳ ἀνακλάζοντι, ὅποτε πλησιάζοι θηρίῳ, καὶ παρακαλοῦντι ὀνομαστὶ ἕκαστον. καὶ τοῦ μὲν καταγελῶντα αὐτὸν ὁρῶν ἠὺφραίνετο, τὸν δέ τινα καὶ ἐπαινοῦντα αὐτὸν ἡσθάνετο οὐδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν φθονερῶς.

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐπείθετο μὲν καὶ ἔμεινεν, |troublesome,  
 |tiresome  
 δὲ καὶ σκυθρωπὸς ὢν |silence |lead through; |ντοὶ Ἀστυάγης  
 |pass a time  
 ἐπεὶ ἔγνω αὐτὸν |annoy, |ισχυρῶς, βουλόμενος αὐτῷ  
 |distress  
 χαρίζεσθαι ἐξάγει ἐπὶ |hunt , καὶ πεζοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ  
 ἱππέας |collect; eat with ` τοὺς παῖδας καὶ συνελάσας εἰς τὰ  
 |fit for horses |χωρία τὰ θηρία ἐποίησε μεγάλην |hunt . καὶ  
 |or riding  
 |royal δὴ παρὼν αὐτὸς |forbid; fail, |μηδένα βάλλειν,  
 |be worn out  
 πρὶν Κῦρος |fill with θηρῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος οὐκ εἶα  
 κωλύειν, ἀλλ', Εἰ βούλει, ἔφη, ὦ πάππε, |sweet με |hunt, ,  
 |chase  
 ἄφες τοὺς κατ' ἐμὲ πάντας διώκειν καὶ |contend against  
 ὅπως ἂν ἕκαστος |best δύναίτο. |there, here Ὡς ὁ  
 Ἀστυάγης ἀφίησι, καὶ στὰς ἐθεᾶτο |contend ἐπὶ τὰ  
 θηρία καὶ φιλονικοῦντας καὶ διώκοντας καὶ |throw, (+gen) at  
 καὶ Κύρῳ ἦδετο οὐ δυναμένῳ |be silent τὸ τῆς |pleasure, ἀλλ'  
 ὥσπερ |puppy |noble, |ἀνακλάζοντι, ὅποτε |bring/be near;  
 |sincere |have sex  
 θηρίῳ, καὶ παρακαλοῦντι |by name ἕκαστον. καὶ τοῦ μὲν  
 |laugh at, deride αὐτὸν ὀρώων |gladden , τὸν δέ τινα καὶ  
 |concur αὐτὸν ἡσθάνετο οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν |jealous .

lamb get lost.” So Cyrus did as he was ordered and stayed at home, but he spent his days in silence and his brow was clouded. At last Astyages saw how bitterly the lad felt it, and he made up his mind to please him by leading out a hunting-party himself. He held a great muster of horse and foot, and the other lads were not forgotten: he had the beasts driven down into the flat country where the horses could be taken easily, and then the hunt began in splendid style. After the royal fashion—for he was present in person himself—he gave orders that no one was to shoot until Cyrus had hunted to his heart’s content. But Cyrus would not hear of any such hindrance to the others: “Grandfather,” he cried, “if you wish me to enjoy myself, let my friends hunt with me and each of us try our best.” Thereupon Astyages let them all go, while he stood still and watched the sight, and saw how they raced to attack the quarry and how their ambition burned within them as they followed up the chase and let fly their javelins. But above all he was overjoyed to see how his grandson could not keep silence for sheer delight, calling upon his fellows by name whenever he came up with the quarry, like a noble young hound, baying from pure excitement. It gladdened the old man’s heart to hear how gleefully the boy would laugh at one of his comrades and how eagerly he would applaud another without the slightest touch of jealousy. At length it

*vocabulary*

**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy  
**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**ἐκκαίδεκα** 16  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡδονή** pleasure  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce  
**θηράω** hunt, chase  
**λάσιος** shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin

**μεθόριος** lying between  
**ὅπου** where  
**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold, help  
**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φρούριον** fort  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

τέλος δ' οὖν πολλά θηρία ἔχων ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἀπήει. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν οὕτως ἦσθη τῇ τότε θήρᾳ ὥστε αἰὶ ὀπότε οἰόν τ' εἶη συνεξήει τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ ἄλλους τε πολλοὺς παρελάμβανε καὶ τοὺς παῖδας, Κύρου ἕνεκα. τὸν μὲν δὴ πλείστον χρόνον οὕτω διῆγεν ὁ Κύρος, πᾶσιν ἡδονῆς μὲν καὶ ἀγαθοῦ τινος συναίτιος ὢν, κακοῦ δὲ οὐδενός.

Ἀμφὶ δὲ τὰ πέντε ἢ ἑκκαίδεκα ἔτη γενομένου αὐτοῦ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέως γαμεῖν μέλλων ἐπεθύμησε καὶ αὐτὸς θηρᾶσαι ἐς τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον. ἀκούων οὖν ἐν τοῖς μεθορίοις τοῖς τε αὐτῶν καὶ τοῖς Μήδων πολλὰ θηρία εἶναι ἀθήρευτα διὰ τὸν πόλεμον, ἐνταῦθα ἐπεθύμησεν ἐξελθεῖν. ὅπως οὖν ἀσφαλῶς θηρώῃ, ἱππέας τε προσέλαβε πολλοὺς καὶ πελταστάς, οἵτινες ἔμελλον αὐτῷ ἐκ τῶν λασίων τὰ θηρία ἐξελᾶν ἐς τὰ ἐργάσιμά τε καὶ εὐήλατα. ἀφικόμενος δὲ ὅπου ἦν αὐτοῖς τὰ φρούρια καὶ ἡ φυλακή, ἐνταῦθα ἐδειπνοποιεῖτο, ὥς πρῶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ θηράσων. ἤδη δὲ ἐσπέρας γενομένης ἡ διαδοχὴ τῇ πρόσθεν φυλακῇ ἔρχεται ἐκ πόλεως καὶ ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοί. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτῷ πολλῇ



τέλος δ' οὖν πολλὰ θηρία ἔχων ὁ Ἀστυάγης |be absent, go ὀ  
|away, return  
λοιπὸν οὕτως |be pleased, 'en-|hunt ὥστε αἰεὶ |when οἶόν τ' εἶη  
|joy  
συνεξήει τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ ἄλλους τε πολλοὺς |receive, undertake, associate  
|with  
καὶ τοὺς παῖδας, Κύρου ἕνεκα. τὸν μὲν δὴ πλείστον  
χρόνον οὕτω |lead through; |os, πᾶσιν |pleasure, ἐν καὶ ἀγαθοῦ  
|pass a time  
τινος συναίτιος ὢν, κακοῦ δὲ οὐδενός.

Ἀμφὶ δὲ τὰ πέντε ἢ |16 ἔτη γενομένου αὐτοῦ ὁ υἱὸς  
τοῦ Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέως |marry, take ἄλλων |wish, covet καὶ  
|as a lover  
αὐτὸς |hunt, ἐς τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον. ἀκούων οὖν ἐν τοῖς  
|chase  
|lying τοῖς τε αὐτῶν καὶ τοῖς Μήδων πολλὰ θηρία εἶναι  
|between  
ἀθήρευτα διὰ τὸν πόλεμον, |there, here|wish, covet ἐξελθεῖν.  
ὅπως οὖν ἀσφαλῶς |hunt, , |rider τε |add, borrow, ἁλλοὺς  
|chase |take hold, help  
καὶ |light troops , οἵτινες ἔμελλον αὐτῷ ἐκ τῶν λασίων τὰ  
θηρία |drive out; τὰ ἐργάσιμά τε καὶ εὐήλατα. |arrive  
δὲ |where ἦν αὐτοῖς τὰ |fort καὶ ἡ |guard, , |there, here  
|prison,  
|make dinner , ὥς πρὶ τῇ |the next; |watch  
|later |hunt, ἤδη δὲ  
|chase  
ἐσπέρας γενομένης ἡ διαδοχὴ τῇ πρόσθεν |guard, ἔρχεται  
|prison,  
ἐκ πόλεως καὶ |rider καὶ |on foot; footsoldier αὐτῷ πολλή  
|watch

was time to turn, and home they went, laden with their mighty trophies. And ever afterwards, so well pleased was the king with the day's hunting, that whenever it was possible, out he must go with his grandson, all his train behind him, and he never failed to take the boys also, "to please Cyrus." Thus did Cyrus spend his early life, sharing in and helping towards the happiness of all, and bringing no sorrow to any man.

But when he was about fifteen years of age, it chanced that the young Prince of Assyria, who was about to marry a wife, planned a hunting-party of his own, in honour of the bridal. And, having heard that on the frontiers of Assyria and Media there was much game to be got, untouched and unmolested because of the war, the prince chose these marches for his hunting-ground. But for safety sake he took with him a large escort of cavalry and targeteers, who were to drive the beasts down from their lairs into the cultivated levels below where it was easy to ride. He set out to the place where the Assyrian outposts were planted and a garrison on duty, and there he and his men prepared to take their supper, intending to begin the hunt with the morrow's dawn. And as evening had fallen, it happened that the night-watch, a considerable body of horse and foot, arrived from the city to relieve the garrison on guard. Thus the prince found that he had something like a large army at

*vocabulary***ἄθροός** grouped**ἄλλοσε** elsewhere ~alien**ἀφθονία** abundance**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐκβοηθέω** sally, go to help**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐπιτυγχάνω** meet, attain**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**ἱερεῖον** animal victim ~hieroglyph**ἵππότης** -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo**καταθέω** run down**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**καταμένω** stay; not change**κράτιστος** best**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**ληλατέω** plunder**μεθόριος** lying between**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμός** unite ~homoerotic**ὄριον** boundary**παρατυγχάνω** happen to be present**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**φρούριον** fort**φρουρός** watcher, guard**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch ~phylactery**φυλή** (ἰ) tribe, military unit**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

στρατιὰ παρῆναι· δύο γὰρ ὁμοῦ ἦσαν φυλακαί, πολλοὺς τε αὐτὸς ἦκεν ἔχων ἱππέας καὶ πεζοὺς. ἐβουλευσατο οὖν κράτιστον εἶναι λεηλατῆσαι ἐκ τῆς Μηδικῆς, καὶ λαμπρότερόν τ' ἂν φανῆναι τὸ ἔργον τῆς θήρας καὶ ἱερείων ἂν πολλὴν ἀφθονίαν ἐνόμιζε γενέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ πρῶ ἀναστὰς ἦγε τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ τοὺς μὲν πεζοὺς κατέλιπεν ἀθρόους ἐν τοῖς μεθορίοις, αὐτὸς δὲ τοῖς ἵπποις προσελάσας πρὸς τὰ τῶν Μήδων φρούρια, τοὺς μὲν βελτίστους καὶ πλείστους ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐνταῦθα κατέμεινεν, ὥς μὴ βοηθοῖεν οἱ φρουροὶ τῶν Μήδων ἐπὶ τοὺς καταθέοντας, τοὺς δ' ἐπιτηδείους ἀφῆκε κατὰ φυλὰς ἄλλους ἄλλοσε καταθεῖν, καὶ ἐκέλευε περιβαλλομένους ὅτῃ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι ἐλαύνειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἔπραττον.

Σημανθέντων δὲ τῷ Ἀστυάγει ὅτι πολέμιοί εἰσιν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ, ἐξεβοήθει καὶ αὐτὸς πρὸς τὰ ὅρια σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν καὶ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὡσαύτως σὺν τοῖς παρατυχοῦσιν ἱππόταις, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις δὲ ἐσήμαινε

στρατιὰ παρῆναι· δύο γὰρ ὁμοῦ ἦσαν |guard, , πολλούς  
 |prison,  
 τε αὐτὸς ἦκεν ἔχων ἱππέας καὶ πεζοὺς. |watch ἐβουλεύσατο  
 οὖν |best εἶναι |plunder ἐκ τῆς Μηδικῆς, καὶ  
 |brilliant τ' ἂν φανῆναι τὸ ἔργον τῆς θήρας καὶ  
 |animal ἂν πολλὴν |abundance ἐνόμιζε γενέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ  
 |victim  
 πρῶ ἀναστὰς ἦγε τὸ |army , καὶ τοὺς μὲν πεζοὺς  
 |leave |grouped ἐν τοῖς |lying , αὐτὸς δὲ τοῖς ἵπποις  
 |behind, |between  
 |abandon  
 |go to, approach πρὸς τὰ τῶν Μήδων |fort , τοὺς μὲν  
 |best, noblest καὶ πλείστους ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ |there, here  
 |stay; not change μὴ βοηθοῖεν οἱ |watcher, τῶν Μήδων ἐπὶ  
 |guard  
 τοὺς |run down , τοὺς δ' |fit, suitable ἀφῆκε κατὰ |tribe  
 ἄλλους |elsewhere|run down , καὶ ἐκέλευε |excel; don  
 ὅτῳ τις |meet, attain ἐλαύνειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν. οἱ μὲν δὴ  
 ταῦτα ἔπραττον.  
 |give orders to; δὲ τῷ Ἀστυάγει ὅτι πολέμοί εἰσιν ἐν τῇ  
 |show; mark  
 χώρα, |sally, go to help αὐτὸς πρὸς τὰ |boundary τοῖς περὶ  
 αὐτὸν καὶ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ |in the same way οἷς |happen to be present  
 |horseman , καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις δὲ |give orders to;  
 |show; mark

his call: the two garrisons as well as the troop of horse and foot for the hunt. And then he asked himself whether it would not be the best of plans to drive off booty from the country of the Medes? In this way more lustre would be given to the chase, and there would be great store of beasts for sacrifice. With this intent he rose betimes and led his army out: the foot soldiers he massed together on the frontier, while he himself, at the head of his cavalry, rode up to the border fortresses of the Medes. Here he halted with the strongest and largest part of his company, to prevent the garrisons from sallying out, and meanwhile he sent picked men forward by detachments with orders to raid the country in every direction, waylay everything they chanced upon, and drive the spoil back to him.

While this was going on news was brought to Astyages that the enemy was across the border, and he hastened to the rescue at once, himself at the head of his own body-guard, and his son with such troopers as were ready to hand, leaving word for others to follow with all despatch. But

*vocabulary***ἀντιόω** meet, fight, join**ἄρnuμαι** get, win**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐκβοηθέω** sally, go to help**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station**ἡρέμα** quietly, gently, slowly**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite**οὐχ οὐν** not so?; and so**πάππος** grandfather**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**στῖφος** -εος (n, 3) close array**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax

πᾶσιν ἐκβοηθεῖν. ὥς δὲ εἶδον πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους  
 τῶν Ἀσσυρίων συντεταγμένους καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἡσυχίαν  
 ἔχοντας, ἔστησαν καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν  
 ἐκβοηθοῦντας καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πασσυδί, ἐκβοηθεῖ καὶ  
 αὐτὸς πρῶτον τότε ὅπλα ἐνδύς, οὐποτε οἰόμενος· οὕτως  
 ἐπεθύμει αὐτοῖς ἐξοπλίσασθαι· μάλα δὲ καλὰ ἦν καὶ  
 ἀρμόττοντα αὐτῷ ἃ ὁ πάππος περὶ τὸ σῶμα ἐπεποιήτο.  
 οὕτω δὴ ἐξοπλισάμενος προσήλασε τῷ ἵππῳ. καὶ ὁ  
 Ἀστυάγης ἐθαύμασε μὲν τίνος κελεύσαντος ἦκοι, ὅμως  
 δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ μένειν παρ' ἐαυτόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὥς εἶδε  
 πολλοὺς ἱππέας ἀντίους, ἤρετο· Ἦ οὐτοι, ἔφη, ὦ πάππε,  
 πολέμοί εἰσιν, οἳ ἐφεστήκασιν τοῖς ἵπποις ἡρέμα; Πολέμοι  
 μέντοι, ἔφη. Ἦ καὶ ἐκεῖνοι, ἔφη, οἳ ἐλαύνοντες; Καὶ κεῖνοι  
 μέντοι. Νῆ τὸν Δ', ἔφη, ὦ πάππε, ἀλλ' οὖν πονηροί γε  
 φαινόμενοι καὶ ἐπὶ πονηρῶν ἱππαρίων ἄγουσιν ἡμῶν τὰ  
 χρήματα· οὐκοῦν χρή ἐλαύνειν τινὰς ἡμῶν ἐπ' αὐτούς.  
 Ἄλλ' οὐχ ὁρᾷς, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, ὅσον τὸ στίφος τῶν ἱππέων  
 ἔστηκε συντεταγμένον; οἳ ἦν



πᾶσιν |sally, go to help ὅς δὲ εἶδον πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους  
 τῶν Ἀσσυρίων |gather, assemble καὶ τοὺς |rider |peace and quiet  
 ἔχοντας, ἔστησαν καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν  
 |sally, go to help καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πασσυδί, |sally, go to help  
 αὐτὸς πρῶτον τότε |tool |go into, put on οἰόμενος· οὕτως  
 |wish, covet αὐτοῖς |prepare, arm μάλα δὲ καλὰ ἦν καὶ  
 ἀρμόττοντα αὐτῷ ᾧ ὁ |grandfather -ρὶ τὸ σῶμα ἐπεποίητο.  
 οὕτω δὲ |prepare, arm |go to, approach ἧ ἵππῳ. καὶ ὁ  
 Ἀστυάγης |marvel μὲν τίνος κελεύσαντος ἦκοι, |anyway, nevertheless never-  
 δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ μένειν παρ' ἐαυτόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὥς εἶδε  
 πολλοὺς |rider ἀντίους, ἤρετο· Ἦ οὐτοι, ἔφη, ὦ |grandfather  
 πολέμοι εἰσιν, οἷ |set; (mp) come/be near, di-quietly, gen-έμοι  
 |rect, stop |tly, slowly  
 |however ἔφη. Ἦ καὶ ἐκεῖνοι, ἔφη, οἱ |drive , Κἀκεῖνοι  
 |however Νῆ τὸν Δί, ἔφη, ὦ |grandfather ἧ οὖν |oppressed; knav-  
 |ish; useless  
 φαινόμενοι καὶ ἐπὶ |oppressed; knav-ρίων ἄγουσιν ἡμῶν τὰ  
 |ish; useless  
 χρήματα· |not so?; and so|drive τινὰς ἡμῶν ἐπ' αὐτούς.  
 Ἀλλ' οὐχ ὁρᾷς, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, ὅσον τὸ |close τῶν |rider  
 |array  
 ἔστηκε |gather, assemble , οἷ ἦν

when they were in sight of the Assyrians, and saw their serried ranks, horse and foot, drawn up in order, compact and motionless, they came to a halt themselves. Now Cyrus, seeing that all the rest of the world was off to the rescue, boot and saddle, must needs ride out too, and so put on his armour for the first time, and could scarcely believe it was true, he had longed so often and so ardently to wear it all. And right beautiful it was, and right well it fitted the lad, the armour that his grandsire had had made for him. So he put on the whole accoutrement, mounted his charger, and galloped to the front. And Astyages, though he wondered who had sent the boy, bade him stay beside him, now that he had come. Cyrus, as he looked at the horsemen facing them, turned to his grandfather with the question, "Can those men yonder be our enemies, grandfather, those who are standing so quietly beside their horses?" "Enemies they are too for all that," said the king. "And are those enemies too?" the boy asked, "those who are riding over there?" "Yes, to be sure." "Well, grandfather, a sorry set they look, and sorry jades they ride to ravage our lands! It would be well for some of us to charge them!" "Not yet, my boy," answered his grandfather, "look at the mass

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**γρηγορέω** be fully awake  
**ἔλεος** ἐλοῦ pity, mercy ~alms  
**ἐξορμάω** veer off course ~hormone  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κινέω** (i) set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic

**λάω** grip, pin?  
**ληλατέω** plunder  
**λεία** booty  
**λεῖος** smooth  
**οὔπω** no longer  
**παίω** hit  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into contact with  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**προσέχω** direct to; think about  
**ῥώννυμι** (ō) strengthen; (pf pass) be strong, eager, healthy  
**ῥώομαι** move nimbly, rush, stream  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**ὑποτέμνω** undercut, intercept

ἐπ' ἐκείνους ἡμεῖς ἐλαύνωμεν, ὑποτεμοῦνται ἡμᾶς πάλιν ἐκείνοι· ἡμῖν δὲ οὐπω ἡ ἰσχὺς πάρεστιν. Ἄλλ' ἦν σὺ μένης, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ ἀναλαμβάνης τοὺς προσβοηθοῦντας, φοβήσονται οὗτοι καὶ οὐ κινήσονται, οἱ δ' ἄγοντες εὐθὺς ἀφήσουσι τὴν λείαν, ἐπειδὰν ἴδωσί τινας ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἐλαύνοντας.

Ταῦτ' εἰπόντος αὐτοῦ ἔδοξέ τι λέγειν τῷ Ἀστυάγει. καὶ ἅμα θαυμάζων ὥς καὶ ἐφρόνει καὶ ἐγρηγόρει κελεύει τὸν υἱὸν λαβόντα τάξιν ἱππέων ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄγοντας τὴν λείαν. ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη, ἐπὶ τούσδε, ἦν ἐπὶ σὲ κινῶνται, ἐλῶ, ὥστε ἀναγκασθήσονται ἡμῖν προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν. οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κναξάρης λαβὼν τῶν ἐρρωμένων ἵππων τε καὶ ἀνδρῶν προσελαύνει. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ὥς εἶδεν ὀρμωμένους, ἐξορμᾷ, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος ἡγείτο ταχέως, καὶ ὁ Κναξάρης μέντοι ἐφείπετο, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ οὐκ ἀπελείποντο. ὥς δὲ εἶδον αὐτοὺς πελάζοντας οἱ λεηλατοῦντες, εὐθὺς ἀφέντες τὰ χρήματα ἔφευγον. οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον ὑπετέμνοντο, καὶ οὓς μὲν κατελάμβανον εὐθὺς ἔπαιον, πρῶτος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος,

ἐπ' ἐκείνους ἡμείς |drive , |undercut, ἡμᾶς πάλιν  
 |intercept  
 ἐκεῖνοι· ἡμῖν δὲ |no longer|strength; body ν. Ἄλλ' ἦν σὺ μένης,  
 |of troops  
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ |take up, recover, τοὺς προσβοηθοῦντας,  
 |resume  
 |scare, scare οὗτοι καὶ σὺ |move, , οἱ δ' ἄγοντες εὐθὺς  
 |away |remove  
 ἀφήσουσι τὴν λείαν, |when, ἴδωσί τινες ἐπ' αὐτοὺς  
 |after  
 |drive

Ταῦτ' εἰπόντος αὐτοῦ ἔδοξέ τι λέγειν τῷ Ἀστυάγει. καὶ  
 ἅμα |marvel ὥς καὶ |think, be wise ἡγρηγόρει κελεύει τὸν  
 υἱὸν λαβόντα τάξιν |rider |drive ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄγοντας τὴν  
 λείαν. ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη, ἐπὶ τούσδε, ἦν ἐπὶ σέ |move, , ἐλῶ,  
 |remove  
 ὥστε |force, compel ἡμῖν |direct to; γὼν νοῦν. οὕτω δὴ  
 |think about  
 ὁ Κναξάρης λαβὼν τῶν ἐρρωμένων ἵππων τε καὶ ἀνδρῶν  
 |go to, approach καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ὡς εἶδεν |spur, rush at , |veer off course  
 καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος ἠγγέλτο ταχέως, καὶ ὁ Κναξάρης |however  
 |ἐφάπεω?: drive, meet, follow; or οὐκ ἀπελείποντο. ὥς δὲ εἶδον  
 |ἐφάπεω?: drive, meet, follow  
 αὐτοὺς |bring/come to, |plunder , εὐθὺς ἀφέντες τὰ  
 |near, into contact  
 |with  
 |possession, , ον. οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον |undercut, , καὶ  
 |money, busi- |intercept  
 |ness  
 οὓς μὲν |seize, understand, catch, |hit , πρῶτος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος,  
 |overtake; (mp) happen

of horsemen there. If we were to charge the others now, these friends of theirs would charge us, for our full strength is not yet on the field." "Yes, but," suggested the boy, "if you stay here yourself, ready to receive our supporters, those fellows will be afraid to stir either, and the cattle-lifters will drop their booty quick enough, as soon as they find they are attacked."

Astyages felt there was much in what the boy said, and thinking all the while what wonderful sense he showed and how wide-awake he was, gave orders for his son to take a squadron of horse and charge the raiders. "If the main body move to attack," he added, "I will charge myself and give them enough to do here." Accordingly Cyaxares took a detachment of horse and galloped to the field. Cyrus seeing the charge, darted forward himself, and swept to the van, leading it with Cyaxares close at his heels and the rest close behind them. As soon as the plunderers saw them, they left their booty and took to flight. The troopers, with Cyrus at their head, dashed in to cut them off, and some they overtook at once and hewed down then and there; others slipped past, and then they followed in

*vocabulary***ἄθροός** grouped**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made  
~Alexander**ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite**ἄτακτος** disorderly**γενναῖος** noble, sincere ~genesis**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel**θεῖον** θεεῖου brimstone ~fume**θέω** run, run for**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**κάπρος** boar**κατόπιν** behind, hereafter**κύω** be pregnant**παίω** hit**παραλλάσσω** change, differ**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**στῖφος** -εος (n, 3) close array**σφέτερος** their**ὑπαντάω** meet**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

ὅσοι δὲ παραλλάξαντες αὐτῶν ἔφθασαν, κατόπιν τούτους  
 ἐδίωκον, καὶ οὐκ ἀνίεσαν, ἀλλ' ἤρουν τινὰς αὐτῶν. ὥσπερ  
 δὲ κύων γενναῖος ἄπειρος ἀπρονοήτως φέρεται πρὸς  
 κάπρον, οὕτω καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐφέρετο, μόνον ὁρῶν τὸ παίειν  
 τὸν ἀλίσκόμενον, ἄλλο δ' οὐδὲν προνοῶν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι  
 ὡς ἐώρων πονοῦντας τοὺς σφετέρους, προυκίνησαν τὸ  
 στῖφος, ὡς παυσομένους τοῦ διωγμοῦ, ἐπεὶ σφᾶς ἴδοιεν  
 προορμήσαντας. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἀνίει, ἀλλ'  
 ὑπὸ τῆς χαρμονῆς ἀνακαλῶν τὸν θεῖον ἐδίωκε καὶ ἰσχυρὰν  
 τὴν φυγὴν τοῖς πολεμίοις κατέχων ἐποίει, καὶ ὁ Κναζάρης  
 μέντοι ἐφείπετο, ἴσως καὶ αἰσχνυόμενος τὸν πατέρα, καὶ  
 οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ εἶποντο, προθυμότεροι ὄντες ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ  
 εἰς τὸ διώκειν καὶ οἱ μὴ πάνυ πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους ἄλκιμοι  
 ὄντες. ὁ δὲ Ἀστυάγης ὡς ἐώρα τοὺς μὲν ἀπρονοήτως  
 διώκοντας, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους ἀθρόους τε καὶ τεταγμένους  
 ὑπαντῶντας, δείσας περὶ τε τοῦ υἱοῦ καὶ τοῦ Κύρου μὴ  
 εἰς παρεσκευασμένους ἀτάκτως ἐμπεσόντες πάθοιέν τι,  
 ἡγείτο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς





hot pursuit, and caught some of them too. And Cyrus was ever in the front, like a young hound, untrained as yet but bred from a gallant stock, charging a wild-boar recklessly; forward he swept, without eyes or thought for anything but the quarry to be captured and the blow to be struck. But when the Assyrian army saw their friends in trouble they pushed forward, rank on rank, saying to themselves the pursuit would stop when their own movement was seen. But Cyrus never slackened his pace a whit: in a transport of joy he called on his uncle by name as he pressed forward, hanging hot-foot on the fugitives, while Cyaxares still clung to his heels, thinking maybe what his father Astyages would say if he hung back, and the others still followed close behind them, even the faint-hearted changed into heroes for the nonce.

Now Astyages, watching their furious onslaught, and seeing the enemy move steadily forward in close array to meet them, decided to advance without a moment's delay himself, for fear that his son and Cyrus might come to harm, crashing in disorder against

*vocabulary***αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**αἰτίος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**ἀκροβολίζομαι** fight with missiles**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard**ἐγγύς** near**εἶωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**ἐκκλίνω** (t) turn away, back down,  
shun**ἐνέδρα** ambush, trickery**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντός** within**ἐπέχω** hold, cover; offer; assail**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**κατακαίνω** kill**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy

**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad**μέχρι** as far as, until**ὁμόθεν** from the same place

~homoerotic

**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**παίω** hit**παλτός** brandished, hurled**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**σφέτερος** their**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow**τόξον** bow ~toxic**ὑπείμι** be under**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

πολεμίους. οἱ δ' αὖ πολέμοι ὥς εἶδον τοὺς Μήδους προκινήθοντας, διατεινόμενοι οἱ μὲν τὰ παλτὰ οἱ δὲ τὰ τόξα εἰστήκεσαν, ὥς δὴ, ἐπειδὴ εἰς τόξευμα ἀφίκοντο, στησομένους, ὥσπερ τὰ πλείστα εἰώθεσαν ποιεῖν. μέχρι γὰρ τοσούτου, ὅποτε ἐγγύτατα γένοιτο, προσήλανον ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἠκροβολίζοντο πολλάκις μέχρι ἑσπέρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρων τοὺς μὲν σφετέρους φυγῇ εἰς ἑαυτοὺς φερομένους, τοὺς δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ὁμοῦ ἀγομένους, τὸν δὲ Ἀστυάγην σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἐντὸς γιγνόμενον ἤδη τοξεύματος, ἐκκλίνουσι καὶ φεύγουσιν ὁμόθεν διώκοντας ἀνὰ κράτος· ἥρουν δὲ πολλούς· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀλισκομένους ἔπαιον καὶ ἵππους καὶ ἄνδρας, τοὺς δὲ πίπτοντας κατέκαινον· καὶ οὐ πρόσθεν ἔστησαν πρὶν ἢ πρὸς τοῖς πεζοῖς τῶν Ἀσσυρίων ἐγένοντο. ἐνταῦθα μέντοι δέισαντες μὴ καὶ ἐνέδρα τις μείζων ὑπέιη, ἐπέσχον. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἀνῆγεν ὁ Ἀστυάγης, μάλα χαίρων καὶ τῇ ἱποκρατίᾳ, καὶ τὸν Κῦρον οὐκ ἔχων ὅ τι χρὴ λέγειν, αἴτιον μὲν ὄντα εἰδὼς τοῦ ἔργου, μαινόμενον δὲ

πολεμίους. οἱ δ' αὖ πολέμοι ὥς εἶδον τοὺς Μήδους  
 προκινήντας, |extend; (mp) οἱ μὲν τὰ |brandished, ἃ δὲ τὰ  
 |try hard |hurled  
 |bow εἰστήκεσαν, ὥς δὴ, ἐπειδὴ εἰς |arrow ἀφίκοντο,  
 στησομένους, ὥσπερ τὰ πλείστα |be accustomed, in the|as far as, until  
 |habit  
 γὰρ τοσούτου, |when |near γένοιτο, |go to, approach  
 ἀλλήλοις καὶ |fight with missiles |often |as far as, until |s.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐώρων τοὺς μὲν |their |flight, means |ντοὺς  
 |of escape  
 φερομένους, τοὺς δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ὁμοῦ  
 ἀγομένους, τὸν δὲ Ἀστυάγην σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις |within  
 γιγνόμενον ἤδη |arrow , |turn away, back |φεύγουσιν  
 |down, shun  
 |from the|chase ἀνὰ |strength, ἢ - ἢν δὲ πολλούς· καὶ  
 |same |power; vic-  
 |place |tory  
 τοὺς μὲν |be captured |hit καὶ ἵππους καὶ ἄνδρας,  
 τοὺς δὲ πίπτοντας |kill καὶ οὐ πρόσθεν ἔστησαν  
 πρὶν ἢ πρὸς τοῖς |on foot; footsoldier - ἴων ἐγένοντο. |there, here  
 μέντοι δείσαντες μὴ καὶ |ambush, |s μείζων |be un-|hold, cover;  
 |trickery |der |offer; assail  
 ἐκ τούτου δὴ |lead ὑπ' |στυάγης, μάλα χαίρων καὶ τῇ  
 |(mp) set sail  
 ἵπποκρατία, καὶ τὸν Κῦρον οὐκ ἔχων ὅ τι χρὴ λέγειν,  
 αἵτιον μὲν ὄντα εἰδὼς τοῦ ἔργου, |be berserk δὲ

the solid battalions of the foe. The Assyrians saw the movement of the king and came to a halt, spears levelled and bows bent, expecting that, when their assailants came within range, they would halt likewise as they had usually done before. For hitherto, whenever the armies met, they would only charge up to a certain distance, and there take flying shots, and so keep up the skirmish until evening fell. But now the Assyrians saw their own men borne down on them in rout, with Cyrus and his comrades at their heels in full career, while Astyages and his cavalry were already within bowshot. It was more than they could face, and they turned and fled. After them swept the Medes in full pursuit, and those they caught they mowed down, horse and man, and those that fell they slew. There was no pause until they came up with the Assyrian foot. Here at last they drew rein in fear of some hidden ambushade, and Astyages led his army off. The exploit of his cavalry pleased him beyond measure, but he did not know what he could

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ᾠοιδή** song  
**ἀποκαλέω** call back; call a name  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἀφέλλω** drag away  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**διαχειρίζω** handle, kill  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet  
**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty  
**ἐπιτέλλω** order ~apostle  
**ἐπιχώριος** native  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater

**μέμφομαι** blame; reject  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**περιελάνω** drive around  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**τήχω** melt  
**τιμάω** (ἰ) honor, exalt  
**τιμόω** honor, exalt  
**τόλμη** courage

γιγνώσκων τῇ τόλμῃ. καὶ γὰρ τότε ἀπιόντων οἴκαδε  
μόνος τῶν ἄλλων ἐκείνος οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τοὺς πεπτωκότας  
περιελαύνων ἐθεᾶτο, καὶ μόλις αὐτὸν ἀφελκύσαντες οἱ  
ἐπὶ τοῦτο ταχθέντες προσήγαγον τῷ Ἀστυάγει, μάλα  
ἐπίπροσθεν ποιούμενον τοὺς προσάγοντας, ὅτι ἑώρα τὸ  
πρόσωπον τοῦ πάππου ἡγριωμένον ἐπὶ τῇ θέᾳ τῇ αὐτοῦ.

Ἐν μὲν δὴ Μήδοις ταῦτα ἐγεγένητο, καὶ οἱ τε ἄλλοι  
πάντες τὸν Κῦρον διὰ στόματος εἶχον καὶ ἐν λόγῳ καὶ  
ἐν ᾠδαῖς, ὃ τε Ἀστυάγης καὶ πρόσθεν τιμῶν αὐτὸν τότε  
ὑπερεξεπέπληκτο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Καμβύσης δὲ ὁ τοῦ Κύρου  
πατὴρ ἦδετο μὲν πυνθανόμενος ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ δ' ἤκουσεν  
ἔργα ἀνδρὸς ἤδη διαχειριζόμενον τὸν Κῦρον, ἀπεκάλει δῆ,  
ὅπως τὰ ἐν Πέρσαις ἐπιχώρια ἐπιτελοίῃ. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
δὲ ἐνταῦθα λέγεται εἰπεῖν ὅτι ἀπιέναι βούλοιτο, μὴ ὁ  
πατὴρ τι ἄχθοιτο καὶ ἡ πόλις μέμφοιτο. καὶ τῷ Ἀστυάγει  
δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀναγκαῖον ἀποπέμπειν αὐτόν. ἔνθα δὴ  
ἵππους τε αὐτῷ δούς οὓς αὐτὸς ἐπεθύμει λαβεῖν καὶ ἄλλα  
συσκευάσας πολλὰ ἔπεμπε καὶ διὰ τὸ φιλεῖν αὐτόν



γινώσκων τῇ |courage καὶ γὰρ τότε |be absent, go|homeward  
|away, return

μόνος τῶν ἄλλων ἐκεῖνος οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τοὺς |fall

|drive around ἐθεᾶτο, καὶ |with difficulty|drag away οἱ  
|barely

ἐπὶ τοῦτο ταχθέντες |bring to a place ᾧ Ἀστυάγει, μάλα

ἐπίπροσθεν ποιούμενον τοὺς |bring to a place, ὅτι ἑώρα τὸ

|face τοῦ |grandfather, ριωμένον ἐπὶ τῇ θέᾳ τῇ αὐτοῦ.

Ἐν μὲν δὴ Μήδοις ταῦτα ἐγεγένητο, καὶ οἱ τε ἄλλοι

πάντες τὸν Κῦρον διὰ |mouth εἶχον καὶ ἐν λόγῳ καὶ

ἐν ᾠδαῖς, ὅ τε Ἀστυάγης καὶ πρόσθεν τιμῶν αὐτὸν τότε

ὑπερεξεπέπληκτο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Καμβύσης δὲ ὁ τοῦ Κύρου

πατὴρ ἦδετο μὲν |learn, inquire, ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ δ' ἤκουσεν  
|(+gen) hear of

ἔργα ἀνδρὸς ἥδη |handle, kill τὸν Κῦρον, |call back; ἤ,  
|call a name

ὅπως τὰ ἐν Πέρσαις |native ἐπιτελοίη. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος

δὲ |there, here ἔγεται εἰπεῖν ὅτι |be absent, go ἵλοιτο, μὴ ὁ  
|away, return

πατὴρ τι |be burdened with ἄλυσ |blame;  
|reject

δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀναγκαῖον |send away αὐτόν. ἔνθα δὴ

ἵππους τε αὐτῷ δοὺς οὓς αὐτὸς |wish, λαβεῖν καὶ ἄλλα  
|covet

|pack up πολλὰ ἔπεμπε καὶ διὰ τὸ |love αὐτόν

say to Cyrus. It was he to whom the engagement was due, and the victory; but the boy's daring was on the verge of madness. Even during the return home his behaviour was strange; he could not forbear riding round alone to look into the faces of the slain, and those whose duty it was could hardly drag him away to lead him to Astyages: indeed, the youth was glad enough to keep them as a screen between himself and the king, for he saw that the countenance of his grandfather grew stern at the sight of him.

So matters passed in Media: and more and more the name of Cyrus was on the lip of every man, in song and story everywhere, and Astyages, who had always loved him, was astonished beyond all measure at the lad. Meanwhile his father, Cambyzes, rejoiced to hear such tidings of his son; but, when he heard that he was already acting like a man of years, he thought it full time to call him home again that he might complete his training in the discipline of his fatherland. The story tells how Cyrus answered the summons, saying he would rather return home at once so that his father might not be vexed or his country blame him. And Astyages, too, thought it his plain duty to send the boy back, but he must needs give him horses to take with him, as many as he would care to choose, and other gifts beside, not only for the love he bore him

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar  
**ἀνιάω** (ῖ) vex  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course ~atrophy  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**δάκρυον** tear  
**δακρύω** weep  
**δείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out

**δηλέομαι** hurt, spoil, steal ~delenda  
**δηλόω** show, disclose  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**ἐκδύω** take off; leave; avoid  
**ἐπιμνησκόμαι** remember, speak about ~mnemonic  
**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order  
**ἡλικιώτης** -ου (m, f) equal in age, contemporary  
**ἡλιξ** -χος (m) of the same age  
**παιδικός** childlike; a darling  
 ~pediatrician  
**πάππος** grandfather  
**στολή** equipment  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

καὶ ἅμα ἐλπίδας ἔχων μεγάλας ἐν αὐτῷ ἄνδρα ἔσεσθαι  
 ἱκανὸν καὶ φίλους ὠφελεῖν καὶ ἐχθροὺς ἀνιᾶν. ἀπιόντα  
 δὲ τὸν Κῦρον προύπεμπον πάντες καὶ παῖδες καὶ ἡλικίες  
 καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γέροντες ἐφ' ἵππων καὶ Ἀστυάγης αὐτός,  
 καὶ οὐδένα ἔφασαν ὄντιν' οὐ δακρύοντ' ἀποστρέφεσθαι.  
 καὶ Κῦρον δὲ αὐτὸν λέγεται σὺν πολλοῖς δακρύοις  
 ἀποχωρῆσαι. πολλὰ δὲ δῶρα διαδοῦναί φασιν αὐτὸν τοῖς  
 ἡλικιώταις ὧν Ἀστυάγης αὐτῷ ἐδεδώκει, τέλος δὲ καὶ ἣν  
 εἶχε στολὴν τὴν Μηδικὴν ἐκδύντα δοῦναί τι, δηλοῦνθ'  
 ὅτι τοῦτον μάλιστα ἠσπάζετο. τοὺς μέντοι λαβόντας  
 καὶ δεξαμένους τὰ δῶρα λέγεται Ἀστυάγει ἀπενεγκεῖν,  
 Ἀστυάγην δὲ δεξάμενον Κύρῳ ἀποπέμψαι, τὸν δὲ πάλιν  
 τε ἀποπέμψαι εἰς Μήδους καὶ εἰπεῖν· Εἰ βούλει, ὦ πάππε,  
 ἐμὲ καὶ πάλιν ἵεναι ὥς σὲ μὴ αἰσχυνόμενον, ἕα ἔχειν εἴ τώ  
 τι ἐγὼ δέδωκα· Ἀστυάγην δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντα ποιῆσαι  
 ὥσπερ Κῦρος ἐπέστειλεν.

Εἰ δὲ δεῖ καὶ παιδικοῦ λόγου ἐπιμνησθῆναι, λέγεται, ὅτε  
 Κῦρος ἀπῆει καὶ ἀπηλλάττοντο ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, τοὺς

καὶ ἅμα |hope ἔχων μεγάλας ἐν αὐτῷ ἄνδρα ἔσεσθαι

|sufficient; fit, φίλους |help, be useful |hated, dis-vex |be absent, go away,  
|empowered |tasteful |return

δὲ τὸν Κῦρον προύπεμπον πάντες καὶ παῖδες καὶ |of the same age

καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ |old; old man, ἴππων καὶ Ἀστυάγης αὐτός,

καὶ οὐδένα ἔφασαν ὄντιν' οὐ |weep |turn back

καὶ Κῦρον δὲ αὐτὸν λέγεται σὺν πολλοῖς δακρύοις

|go away from, πολλά δὲ |gift |distribute, send out αὐτὸν τοῖς  
|retreat

|equal in age, ἢν Ἀστυάγης αὐτῷ ἐδεδώκει, τέλος δὲ καὶ ἦν  
|contemporary

εἶχε |equipment ἢν Μηδικὴν |take off δοῦναί τι, δηλοῦνθ'

ὅτι τοῦτον μάλιστα |greet, τοὺς |however λαβόντας  
|salute

καὶ δεξαμένους τὰ |gift λέγεται Ἀστυάγει |carry off ,

Ἀστυάγην δὲ δεξάμενον Κύρῳ |send away , τὸν δὲ πάλιν

τε |send away εἰς Μήδους καὶ εἰπεῖν· Εἰ βούλει, ὦ |grandfather

ἐμὲ καὶ πάλιν ἰέναι ὡς σὲ μὴ |spoil, disgrace , ἕα ἔχειν εἴ τώ

τι ἐγὼ δέδωκα· Ἀστυάγην δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντα ποιῆσαι

ὥσπερ Κῦρος |send to, order

Εἰ δὲ δεῖ καὶ παιδικοῦ λόγου |remember, , λέγεται, ὅτε  
|speak about

Κῦρος |be absent, free from, remove; π' ἀλλήλων, τοὺς  
|go away, be freed, depart  
|return

but for the high hopes he had that the boy would one day prove a man of mark, a blessing to his friends, and a terror to his foes. And when the time came for Cyrus to go, the whole world poured out to speed him on his journey — little children and lads of his own age, and grown men and greybeards on their steeds, and Astyages the king. And, so says the chronicle, the eyes of none were dry when they turned home again. Cyrus himself, they tell us, rode away in tears. He heaped gifts on all his comrades, sharing with them what Astyages had given to himself; and at last he took off the splendid Median cloak he wore and gave it to one of them, to tell him, plainer than words could say, how his heart clung to him above the rest. And his friends, they say, took the gifts he gave them, but they brought them all back to Astyages, who sent them to Cyrus again. But once more Cyrus sent them back to Media with this prayer to his grandfather: — ” If you would have me hold my head up when I come back to you

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

**ἐνοράω** look at, notice something in

**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through

**ἡνίκα** when

**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty

~kaleidoscope

**ναί** yea

**Πέρσης** Persian

**ποῖ** whither? how long?

**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in

**συγγενεύς** inborn, kin to

**συγγενής** inborn, kin to

**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

συγγενείς φιλοῦντας τῷ στόματι ἀποπέμπεσθαι αὐτὸν  
 νόμῳ Περσικῷ· καὶ γὰρ νῦν ἔτι τοῦτο ποιοῦσι Πέρσαι·  
 ἄνδρα δέ τινα τῶν Μήδων μάλα καλὸν καὶ ἀγαθὸν ὄντα  
 ἐκπεπλήχθαι πολὺν τινα χρόνον ἐπὶ τῷ κάλλει τοῦ  
 Κύρου, ἥνίκα δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς συγγενείς φιλοῦντας αὐτόν,  
 ὑπολειφθῆναι· ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον, προσελθεῖν τῷ  
 Κύρῳ καὶ εἰπεῖν· Ἐμὲ μόνον οὐ γινώσκεις τῶν συγγενῶν,  
 ὦ Κῦρε; Τί δέ, εἰπεῖν τὸν Κῦρον, ἥ καὶ σὺ συγγενὴς  
 εἶ; μάλιστα, φάναι. ταῦτ' ἄρα, εἰπεῖν τὸν Κῦρον, καὶ  
 ἐνέωρας μοι· πολλάκις γὰρ δοκῶ σε γινώσκειν τοῦτο  
 ποιῶντα. Προσελθεῖν γάρ σοι, ἔφη, ἀεὶ βουλόμενος ναὶ  
 μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς ἡσυχνόμεν. Ἄλλ' οὐκ ἔδει, φάναι τὸν Κῦρον,  
 συγγενῇ γε ὄντα· ἅμα δὲ προσελθόντα φιλήσαι αὐτόν. καὶ  
 τὸν Μῆδον φιληθέντα ἐρέσθαι· Ἥ καὶ ἐν Πέρσαις νόμος  
 ἐστὶν οὗτος συγγενείς φιλεῖν; ἄλιστα, φάναι, ὅταν γε  
 ἴδωσιν ἀλλήλους διὰ χρόνου ἢ ἀπίωσί ποι ἀπ' ἀλλήλων.  
 Ὡρα ἂν εἴη, ἔφη ὁ Μῆδος, μάλα πάλιν σε φιλεῖν ἐμέ·  
 ἀπέρχομαι γάρ, ὡς ὀράς, ἤδη. οὕτω καὶ τὸν Κῦρον



συγγενεῖς φιλοῦντας τῷ |mouth |send away αὐτὸν  
 νόμῳ Περσικῷ· καὶ γὰρ νῦν ἔτι τοῦτο ποιοῦσι Πέρσαι·  
 ἄνδρα δέ τινα τῶν Μήδων μάλα καλὸν κάγαθόν ὄντα  
 |panic, be πολὺν τινα χρόνον ἐπὶ τῷ |beauty τοῦ  
 |knocked out  
 Κύρου, |when δὲ εἴωρα τοὺς συγγενεῖς φιλοῦντας αὐτόν,  
 |leave (food, person)· ἰ δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον, |come forward, sur-  
 |render, come in  
 Κύρῳ καὶ εἰπεῖν· Ἐμὲ μόνον οὐ γινώσκεις τῶν συγγενῶν,  
 ὦ Κύρῃ; Τί δέ, εἰπεῖν τὸν Κύρον, ἦ καὶ σὺ |inborn, kin to  
 εἶ; μάλιστα, φάναι. ταῦτ' ἄρα, εἰπεῖν τὸν Κύρον, καὶ  
 |look at, notice|often γὰρ δοκῶ σε γινώσκειν τοῦτο  
 |something in  
 ποιοῦντα. |come forward, sur- σοι, ἔφη, αἰὲ βουλόμενος |yea  
 |render, come in  
 μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς |spoil, Ἄλλ' οὐκ ἔδει, φάναι τὸν Κύρον,  
 |disgrace  
 συγγενῇ γε ὄντα· ἅμα δὲ |come forward, sur- ἦσαι αὐτόν. καὶ  
 |render, come in  
 τὸν Μῆδον φιληθέντα |ask, search through· Πέρσαις νόμος  
 ἐστὶν οὗτος συγγενεῖς φιλεῖν; ἄλιστα, φάναι, |whenever  
 ἴδωσιν ἀλλήλους διὰ χρόνου ἢ |be absent, go ἀπ' ἀλλήλων.  
 |away, return  
 |season, time· ἦ, ἔφη ὁ Μῆδος, μάλα πάλιν σε φιλεῖν ἐμέ·  
 |go away, depart·, ὥς ὁρᾷς, ἦδη. οὕτω καὶ τὸν Κύρον

again, let my friends keep the gifts I gave them.” And Astyages did as the boy asked.

And here, if a tale of boyish love is not out of place, we might tell how, when Cyrus was just about to depart and the last good-byes were being said, each of his kinsmen in the Persian fashion — and to this day the custom holds in Persia — kissed him on the lips as they bade him god-speed. Now there was a certain Mede, as beautiful and brave a man as ever lived, who had been enamoured of Cyrus for many a long day, and, when he saw the kiss, he stayed behind, and after the others had withdrawn he went up to Cyrus and said, “Me, and me alone, of all your kindred, Cyrus, you refuse to recognize?” And Cyrus answered, “What, are you my kinsman too?” “Yes, assuredly,” the other answered, and the lad rejoined, “Ah, then, that is why you looked at me so earnestly; and I have seen you look at me like that, I think, more than once before.” “Yes,” answered the Mede, “I have often longed to approach you, but as often, heaven knows, my heart failed me.” “But why should that be,” said Cyrus, “seeing you are my kinsman?” And with the word, he leant forward and kissed him on the lips. Then the Mede, emboldened by the kiss, took heart and said, “So in Persia it is really the custom for relatives to kiss?” “Truly yes,” answered Cyrus, “when we see each other after a long absence, or when we part for a journey.” “Then the time has come,” said the other, “to give me a second kiss, for I must leave you now.” With that Cyrus kissed him again and

*vocabulary***ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**δάκρυον** tear**δακρύω** weep**διανύω** accomplish, arrive**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen)

give up ~station

**ἐορτή** holiday, feast**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe**εὐωχία** partying**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**ἰδρόω** sweat ~exude**ναός (ᾱ)** temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νῆ** yea**οὐπω** no longer**Πέρσης** Persian**ποῖος** what kind**πότε** when?**σκώπτω** joke**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

φιλήσαντα πάλιν ἀποπέμπειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. καὶ ὁδὸν τε οὐπω πολλὴν διηγύσθαι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸν Μῆδον ἤκειν πάλιν ἰδρουντι τῷ ἵππῳ· καὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἰδόντα, Ἄλλ' ἦ, φάναι, ἐπελάθου τι ὦν ἐβούλου εἰπεῖν; μὰ Δία, φάναι, ἀλλ' ἤκω διὰ χρόνον. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον εἰπεῖν· Νῆ Δί', ὦ σύγγενες, δι' ὀλίγου γε. Ποίου ὀλίγου; εἰπεῖν τὸν Μῆδον. οὐκ οἶσθα, φάναι, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι καὶ ὅσον σκαρδαμύττω χρόνον, πάνυ πολὺς μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ὅτι οὐχ ὁρῶ σε τότε τοιοῦτον ὄντα; ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὸν Κῦρον γελάσαι τε ἐκ τῶν ἔμπροσθεν δακρύων καὶ εἰπεῖν αὐτῷ θαρρεῖν ἀπιόντι, ὅτι παρέσται αὐτοῖς ὀλίγου χρόνον, ὥστε ὁρᾶν ἐξέσται κἂν βούληται ἀσκαρδαμυκτί.

## 1.5

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Κῦρος οὕτως ἀπελθὼν ἐν Πέρσαις ἐνιαυτὸν λέγεται ἐν τοῖς παισὶν ἔτι γενέσθαι. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ παῖδες ἔσκωπτον αὐτὸν ὥς ἡδυνπαθεῖν ἐν Μήδοις μεμαθηκὼς ἦκοι· ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐσθίοντα αὐτὸν ἐώρων ὥσπερ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡδέως καὶ πίνοντα, καὶ εἴ ποτε ἐν ἐορτῇ εὐωχία

|love                      *πάλιν* |send away                      καὶ |be absent, go away, return  
|no longer. ἄλῃν |accomplish, arrive                      αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸν Μῆδον ἤκειν *πάλιν*  
|sweat                      τῷ ἴππῳ· καὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἰδόντα, Ἄλλ' ἦ, φάναι,  
ἐπελάθου τι ὦν ἐβούλου εἰπεῖν; μὰ Δία, φάναι, ἀλλ' ἤκω  
διὰ χρόνου. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον εἰπεῖν· Νῆ Δί', ὦ σύγγγεες,  
δι' ὀλίγου γε. |what kind ὄλου; εἰπεῖν τὸν Μῆδον. οὐκ  
οἶσθα, φάναι, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι καὶ ὅσον σκαρδαμύττω χρόνον,  
|altogether, very. οὐ δοκεῖ εἶναι, ὅτι οὐχ ὀρῶ σε τότε τοιοῦτον  
ὄντα; |there, here ἵ τὸν Κῦρον |laugh, smile                      τε ἐκ τῶν |before (time, space)  
δακρύων καὶ εἰπεῖν αὐτῷ θαρρεῖν |be absent, go away, return                      παρέσται  
αὐτοῖς ὀλίγου χρόνου, ὥστε ὀρᾶν ἐξέσται καὶ βούληται  
ἀσκαρδαμυκτί.

## 1.5

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Κῦρος οὕτως ἀπελθὼν ἐν Πέρσαις |cycle of a year  
λέγεται ἐν τοῖς παισὶν ἔτι γενέσθαι. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον  
οἱ παῖδες |joke αὐτὸν ὥς ἡδυπαθεῖν ἐν Μήδοις  
|learn ἦκοι· ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐσθίοντα αὐτὸν ἐώρων ὥσπερ  
καὶ αὐτοὶ |sweet καὶ |drink , καὶ εἴ ποτε ἐν |holiday|partying  
feast

so they parted. But the travellers were not far on their way when suddenly the Mede came galloping after them, his charger covered with foam. Cyrus caught sight of him:— "You have forgotten something? There is something else you wanted to say?" "No," said the Mede, "it is only such a long, long while since we met." "Such a little, little while you mean, my kinsman," answered Cyrus. "A little while!" repeated the other. "How can you say that? Cannot you understand that the time it takes to wink is a whole eternity if it severs me from the beauty of your face?"

Then Cyrus burst out laughing in spite of his own tears, and bade the unfortunate man take heart of grace and be gone. "I shall soon be back with you again, and then you can stare at me to your heart's content, and never wink at all."

#### 1.5

Thus Cyrus left his grandfather's court and came home to Persia, and there, so it is said, he spent one year more as a boy among boys. At first the lads were disposed to laugh at him, thinking he must have learnt luxurious ways in Media, but when they saw that he could take the simple Persian food as happily as themselves, and how, whenever they made good cheer at a festival, far from asking for any more himself he was ready to give his own share of the dainties

*vocabulary*

**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**διαπέμπω** send out/over  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπιδίδωμι** give, give with, give reciprocally ~donate  
**ἔφηβος** aged 18  
**ἥλιξ** -κος (m) of the same age  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καρτερέω** be patient

**καρτερός** strong, staunch  
**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μελέτη** care; practice  
**παιδεία** child-rearing, education  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**πέριξ** all around  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**ὕπῃχοον** -ῶ cumin  
**ὕπῃχοος** heeding, subject  
**ὕποπίπτω** cower under ~petal  
**φῶλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum

γένοιτο, ἐπιδιδόντα μᾶλλον αὐτὸν τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ μέρους  
 ἡσθάνοντο ἢ προσδεόμενον, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις δὲ τᾶλλα  
 κρατιστεύοντα αὐτὸν ἐώρων ἑαυτῶν, ἐνταῦθα δὲ πάλιν  
 ὑπέπτησσαν αὐτῷ οἱ ἡλικες. ἐπεὶ δὲ διελθὼν τὴν παιδείαν  
 ταύτην ἤδη εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τοὺς ἐφήβους, ἐν τούτοις αὖ  
 ἐδόκει κρατιστεῦν καὶ μελετῶν ἅ χρῆν καὶ καρτερῶν  
 καὶ αἰδούμενος τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους καὶ πειθόμενος τοῖς  
 ἄρχουσι.

Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ χρόνου ὁ μὲν Ἀστυάγης ἐν τοῖς Μήδοις  
 ἀποθνήσκει, ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης ὁ τοῦ Ἀστυάγου παῖς, τῆς δὲ  
 Κύρου μητρὸς ἀδελφός, τὴν βασιλείαν ἔσχε τὴν Μήδων.  
 ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλεὺς κατεστραμμένος μὲν πάντας  
 Σύρους, φύλον πάμπολυ, ὑπήκοον δὲ πεποιημένους τὸν  
 Ἀραβίων βασιλέα, ὑπηκόους δὲ ἔχων ἤδη καὶ Ὑρκανίους,  
 πολιορκῶν δὲ καὶ Βακτρίους, ἐνόμιζεν, εἰ τοὺς Μήδους  
 ἀσθενεῖς ποιήσειε, πάντων γε τῶν πέριξ ῥαδίως ἄρξειν·  
 ἰσχυρότατον γὰρ τῶν ἐγγὺς φύλων τοῦτο ἐδόκει εἶναι.  
 οὕτω δὲ διαπέμπει πρὸς τε τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν πάντας



γένοιτο, |give, give with, |λλον αὐτὸν τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ μέρους  
 |give reciprocally  
 |perceive ἢ προσδεόμενον, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις δὲ τὰλλα  
 κρατιστεύοντα αὐτὸν ἑώρων ἑαυτῶν, |there, here ἢ πάλιν  
 ὑπέπτησσον αὐτῷ οἱ |of the same age |pierce, τήν |child-rearing,  
 |traverse |education  
 ταύτην ἥδη εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τοὺς |aged 18 , ἐν τούτοις αὖ  
 ἐδόκει κρατιστεύειν καὶ μελετῶν ἅ χρῆν καὶ καρτερῶν  
 καὶ |respect, be ashamed |elder καὶ πειθόμενος τοῖς  
 ἄρχουσι.

|to have been |τοῦ χρόνου ὁ μὲν Ἀστυάγης ἐν τοῖς Μήδοις  
 |before, earlier  
 ἀποθνήσκει, ὁ δὲ Κναξάρης ὁ τοῦ Ἀστυάγου παῖς, τῆς δὲ  
 Κύρου μητρὸς ἀδελφός, τήν βασιλείαν ἔσχε τὴν Μήδων.  
 ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλεὺς |overturn, subdue μὲν πάντας  
 Σύρους, |race, |very great , ὑπήκοον δὲ πεποιημένος τὸν  
 |tribe,  
 Ἀραβίων |class  
 βασιλέα, |heeding, δὲ ἔχων ἥδη καὶ Ὑρκανίους,  
 |subject  
 |besiege δὲ καὶ Βακτρίους, |consider , cus- νὺς Μήδους  
 |tomary; believe  
 ἀσθενεῖς ποιήσκει, πάντων γε τῶν |all |easy ἄρξειν  
 |around  
 |strong, force- γὰρ τῶν |near |race, τοῦτο ἐδόκει εἶναι.  
 |ful, violent |tribe,  
 οὕτω δὲ |send out/over , ὅς τε τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν πάντας  
 |class

away, when they saw and felt in this and in other things his inborn nobleness and superiority to themselves, then the tide turned and once more they were at his feet.

And when this part of his training was over, and the time was come for him to join the younger men, it was the same tale once more. Once more he outdid all his fellows, alike in the fulfilment of his duty, in the endurance of hardship, in the reverence he showed to age, and the obedience he paid to authority.

Now in the fullness of time Astyages died in Media, and Cyaxares his son, the brother of Cyrus' mother, took the kingdom in his stead. By this time the king of Assyria had subdued all the tribes of Syria, subjugated the king of Arabia, brought the Hyrcanians under his rule, and was holding the Bactrians in siege. Therefore he came to think that, if he could but weaken the power of the Medes, it would be easy for him to extend his empire over all the nations round him, since the Medes were, without doubt, the strongest of them all. Accordingly he sent

*vocabulary***ἄδελφή** sister**ἀναπεύθω** (aor, plupf) seduce,  
persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,  
be confident in**βασιλεύω** be king**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
~ballistic**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer**ἐπιγαμία** intermarriage**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
~catastrophe**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

**κοινός** communal, ordinary**παρασκευή** preparation**Πέρσης** Persian**ποιόω** make of a certain quality**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**συμμαχία** alliance**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle  
~station**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

καὶ πρὸς Κροῖσον τὸν Λυδῶν βασιλέα καὶ πρὸς τὸν  
 Καππαδοκῶν καὶ πρὸς Φρύγας ἀμφοτέρους καὶ πρὸς  
 Παφλαγόνas καὶ Ἰνδοὺs καὶ πρὸς Κᾶρας καὶ Κίλικas,  
 τὰ μὲν καὶ διαβάλλων τοὺs Μήδους καὶ Πέρσas, λέγων  
 ὥs μεγάλα τ' εἴη ταῦτα ἔθνη καὶ ἰσχυρὰ καὶ συνεστηκότα  
 εἰs ταυτό, καὶ ἐπιγαμίας ἀλλήλοιs πεποιημένοι εἶεν, καὶ  
 κινδυνεύσοιεν, εἰ μή τις αὐτοὺs φθάσας ἀσθενώσοι, ἐπὶ  
 ἔν ἕκαστον τῶν ἐθνῶν ἰόντες καταστρέψασθαι. οἱ μὲν  
 δὴ καὶ τοῖs λόγοιs τούτοιs πειθόμενοι συμμαχίαν αὐτῷ  
 ἐποιοῦντο, οἱ δὲ καὶ δώροιs καὶ χρήμασιν ἀναπειθόμενοι·  
 πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ τοιαῦτα ἦν αὐτῷ. Κυαξάρης δὲ ὁ τοῦ  
 Ἀστυάγουσ παῖs ἐπεὶ ἠσθάνετο τήν τ' ἐπιβουλήν καὶ  
 τήν παρασκευήν τῶν συνισταμένων ἐφ' ἑαυτόν, αὐτός τε  
 εὐθέωs ὅσα ἐδύνατο ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο καὶ εἰs Πέρσas  
 ἔπεμπε πρὸs τε τὸ κοινὸν καὶ πρὸs Καμβύσην τὸν τήν  
 ἀδελφὴν ἔχοντα καὶ βασιλεύοντα ἐν Πέρσαιs. ἔπεμπε  
 δὲ καὶ πρὸs Κῦρον, δεόμενος αὐτοῦ πειρᾶσθαι ἄρχοντα  
 ἐλθεῖν τῶν ἀνδρῶν, εἴ τινας πέμποι στρατιώταs τὸ

καὶ πρὸς Κροῖσον τὸν Λυδῶν βασιλέα καὶ πρὸς τὸν  
 Καππαδοκῶν καὶ πρὸς Φρύγας |both καὶ πρὸς  
 Παφλαγόνas καὶ Ἰνδοὺs καὶ πρὸς Κᾱρας καὶ Κίλικas,  
 τὰ μὲν καὶ |throw across; -οὺs Μήδουs καὶ Πέρσas, λέγων  
 |slander  
 ὡs μεγάλα τ' εἶη ταῦτα |tribe καὶ |strong, force-|unite; confront  
 |ful, violent |in battle  
 εἰs ταυτό, καὶ |intermarriage...λλήλοισ πεποιημένοι εἶεν, καὶ  
 |encounter danger; <sup>2</sup>(+inf) is αὐτοὺs φθάσas ἀσθενώσοι, ἐπὶ  
 |there is a danger that  
 ἐν ἑκάστον τῶν |tribe ἰόντεs |overturn, subdue οἱ μὲν  
 δὴ καὶ τοῖs λόγοιs τούτοιs πειθόμενοι |alliance αὐτῶ  
 |make of a cer- <sup>1</sup> δὲ καὶ |gift καὶ |possession, (aor, plupf) seduce, persuade;  
 |tain quality money, (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,  
 |business be confident in  
 πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ τοιαῦτα ἦν αὐτῶ. Κυαζαρήs δὲ ὁ τοῦ  
 Ἀστυάγουs παῖs ἐπεὶ |perceive τὴν τ' |a plot, scheme...ὶ  
 τὴν |preparation τῶν |unite; confront ἐφ' ἑαυτόν, αὐτόs τε  
 |in battle  
 εὐθέωs ὅsa ἐδύνατο ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο καὶ εἰs Πέρσas  
 ἔπεμπε πρὸs τε τὸ |communal, <sup>2</sup> πρὸs Καμβύσην τὸν τὴν  
 |ordinary  
 |sister ἔχοντα καὶ |be king ἐν Πέρσαιs. ἔπεμπε  
 δὲ καὶ πρὸs Κῦρον, δεόμενοs αὐτοῦ |try, test ἄρχοντα  
 ἐλθεῖν τῶν ἀνδρῶν, εἴ τιναs πέμποι |soldier, τὸ  
 |mercenary

his messengers to every part of his dominions: to Croesus, king of Lydia, to the king of Cappadocia, to both the Phrygias, to the Paphlagonians and the Indians, to the Carians and the Cilicians. And he bade them spread slanders abroad against the Persians and the Medes, and say moreover that these were great and mighty kingdoms which had come together and made alliance by marriage with one another, and unless a man should be beforehand with them and bring down their power it could not be but that they would fall on each of their neighbours in turn and subdue them one by one. So the nations listened to the messengers and made alliance with the king of Assyria: some were persuaded by what he said and others were won over by gifts and gold, for the riches of the Assyrian were great. Now Cyaxares, the son of Astyages, was aware of these plots and preparations, and he made ready on his side, so far as in him lay, sending word to the Persian state and to Cambyses the king, who had his sister to wife. And he sent to Cyrus also, begging him to come with all speed at the head of any force that might be furnished, if so

*vocabulary*

γεραιός old ~geriatric

δείκνυμι (ὑ) show, point out

διακόσιοι (ᾱ) two hundred

διατελέω accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

ἔφηβος aged 18

καλλιερέω have good signs

κοινός communal, ordinary

μυρίος (ὑ) 10,000 ~myriad

ὁμότιμος (ι) equally honored

πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

Πέρσης Persian

στρατιά army ~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

σφενδονήτης -ου (m, 1) slinger

τέλειος finished ~apostle

τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid

τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

χίλιοι (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

χωρίς separately; except, other than

~heir

Περσῶν κοινόν. ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ὁ Κῦρος διατετελεκὼς τὰ ἐν τοῖς ἐφήβοις δέκα ἔτη ἐν τοῖς τελείοις ἀνδράσιν ἦν. οὕτω δὴ δεξαμένου τοῦ Κύρου οἱ βουλευόντες γεραίτεροι αἰροῦνται αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς εἰς Μήδους στρατιᾶς. ἔδωσαν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ προσελέσθαι διακοσίους τῶν ὁμοτίμων, τῶν δ' αὖ διακοσίων ἐκάστῳ τέτταρας ἔδωκαν προσελέσθαι καὶ τούτους ἐκ τῶν ὁμοτίμων· γίνονται μὲν δὴ οὗτοι χίλιοι· τῶν δ' αὖ χιλίων τούτων ἐκάστῳ ἔταξαν ἐκ τοῦ δήμου τῶν Περσῶν δέκα μὲν πελταστὰς προσελέσθαι, δέκα δὲ σφενδονήτας, δέκα δὲ τοξότας· καὶ οὕτως ἐγένοντο μύριοι μὲν τοξόται, μύριοι δὲ πελτασταί, μύριοι δὲ σφενδονῆται· χωρὶς δὲ τούτων οἱ χίλιοι ὑπῆρχον. τοσαύτη μὲν δὴ στρατιὰ τῷ Κύρῳ ἐδόθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡρέθη τάχιστα, ἤρχετο πρῶτον ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν· καλλιερησάμενος δὲ τότε προσηρεῖτο τοὺς διακοσίους· ἐπεὶ δὲ προσείλοντο καὶ οὗτοι δὴ τοὺς τέτταρας ἕκαστοι, συνέλεξεν αὐτοὺς καὶ εἶπε τότε πρῶτον ἐν αὐτοῖς τάδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἐγὼ προσειλόμην μὲν ὑμᾶς, οὐ νῦν πρῶτον



Περσῶν |communal, ordinary ἥδη γὰρ καὶ ὁ Κύρος |accomplish; keep doing  
 τὰ ἐν τοῖς |aged 18 |ten ἔτη ἐν τοῖς |finished ἀνδράσιν  
 ἦν. οὕτω δὲ δεξαμένον τοῦ Κύρου οἱ |(mp) to deliberate  
 |old αἰρούνται αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς εἰς Μήδους  
 |army ἔδοσαν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ προσελέσθαι |two hundred  
 τῶν |equally honored , τῶν δ' αὖ |two hundred ἑκάστῳ |four  
 ἔδωκαν προσελέσθαι καὶ τούτους ἐκ τῶν |equally honored  
 γίνονται μὲν δὲ οὗτοι χίλιοι· τῶν δ' αὖ χιλίων τούτων  
 ἑκάστῳ |arrange ἐκ τοῦ δήμου τῶν Περσῶν |ten μὲν  
 |light troops προσελέσθαι, |ten δὲ |slinger , |ten δὲ  
 |archer καὶ οὕτως ἐγένοντο μύριοι μὲν |archer , μύριοι  
 δὲ |light troops , μύριοι δὲ |slinger |separately; . ex- ον οἱ  
 |cept, other than  
 χίλιοι |there is . |so much μὲν δὲ στρατιὰ τῷ Κύρῳ ἐδόθη.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡρέθη τάχιστα, ἤρχετο πρῶτον ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν·  
 |have good signs δὲ τότε προσηρέϊτο τοὺς |two hundred  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ προσείλοντο καὶ οὗτοι δὲ τοὺς |four ἑκαστοί,  
 |collect, assemble αὐτοὺς καὶ εἶπε τότε πρῶτον ἐν αὐτοῖς τάδε.  
 Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἐγὼ προσειλόμην μὲν ὑμᾶς, οὐ νῦν πρῶτον

be the Council of Persia would give him men-at- arms. For by this time Cyrus had accomplished his ten years among the youths and was now enrolled with the grown men. He was right willing to go, and the Council of Elders appointed him to command the force for Media. They bade him choose two hundred men among the Peers, each of them to choose four others from their fellows. Thus was formed a body of a thousand Peers: and each of the thousand had orders to raise thirty men from the commons—ten targeteers, ten slingers, and ten archers—and thus three regiments were levied, 10,000 archers, 10,000 slingers, and 10,000 targeteers, over and above the thousand Peers. The whole force was to be put under the command of Cyrus. As soon as he was appointed, his first act had been to offer sacrifice, and when the omens were favourable he had chosen his two hundred Peers, and each of them had chosen their four comrades. Then he called the whole body together, and for the first time spoke to them as follows:—"My friends, I have chosen you for this work, but this is not the first time that I have formed

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἀσκέω** work on  
**γούν** at least then  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing ~apostle  
**δοκιμάζω** test, approve  
**ἐλπίζω** (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act) cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary  
**εὐφροαίνω** gladden ~frenzy  
**ἡδονή** pleasure

**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although  
**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κοινώω** make common; cooperate  
**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μηδέποτε** never  
**παντελής** complete, absolute  
**παραυτίκα** immediately  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more  
**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus  
**προθυμέομαι** (ὑ) be eager  
**πρόθυμος** (ὑ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προσκτάομαι** get, win as well  
**χείρων** worse, more base, inferior, weaker

δοκιμάσας, ἀλλ' ἐκ παίδων ὁρῶν ὑμᾶς ἃ μὲν καλὰ ἡ πόλις νομίζει, προθύμως ταῦτα ἐκπονοῦντας, ἃ δὲ αἰσχρὰ ἡγεῖται, παντελῶς τούτων ἀπεχομένους. ὦν δ' ἕνεκα αὐτός τε οὐκ ἄκων εἰς τόδε τὸ τέλος κατέστην καὶ ὑμᾶς παρεκάλεσα δηλῶσαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι. ἐγὼ γὰρ κατενόησα ὅτι οἱ πρόγονοι χεῖρονες μὲν ἡμῶν οὐδὲν ἐγένοντο· ἀσκοῦντες γοῦν κακεῖνοι διετέλεσαν ἅπερ ἔργα ἀρετῆς νομίζεται· ὃ τι μέντοι προσεκτήσαντο τοιοῦτοι ὄντες ἢ τῷ τῶν Περσῶν κοινῷ ἀγαθὸν ἢ αὐτοῖς, τοῦτ' οὐκέτι δύναμαι ἰδεῖν. καίτοι ἐγὼ οἶμαι οὐδεμίαν ἀρετὴν ἀσκεῖσθαι ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων ὥς μηδὲν πλέον ἔχωσιν οἱ ἐσθλοὶ γενόμενοι τῶν πονηρῶν, ἀλλ' οἳ τε τῶν παραντίκα ἡδονῶν ἀπεχόμενοι οὐχ ἵνα μηδέποτε εὐφρανθῶσι, τοῦτο πράττουσιν, ἀλλ' ὥς διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐγκράτειαν πολλαπλάσια εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον εὐφρανόμενοι οὕτω παρασκευάζονται· οἳ τε λέγειν προθυμούμενοι δεινοὶ γενέσθαι οὐχ ἵνα εὖ λέγοντες μηδέποτε παύσωνται, τοῦτο μελετῶσιν, ἀλλ' ἐλπίζοντες τῷ λέγειν εὖ πείθοντες

|test, approve, ἀλλ' ἐκ παίδων ὁρῶν ὑμᾶς ἃ μὲν καλὰ ἡ  
 πόλις νομίζει, |willing, eager ταῦτα ἐκπονοῦντας, ἃ δὲ |shameful  
 ἡγείται, |complete, absolute τούτων |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance ἔνεκα  
 αὐτός τε οὐκ ἄκων εἰς τόδε τὸ τέλος κατέστην καὶ  
 ὑμᾶς παρεκάλεσα |show, disclose ὑμῖν βούλομαι. ἐγὼ γὰρ  
 |notice, realize, learn ὅτι οἱ |elder, ancestor |worse, more base ἡμῶν οὐδὲν  
 ἐγένοντο· |work on |at least then οἱ |accomplish; keep doing ἅπερ ἔργα  
 |excellence ῥμίζεται· ὅ τι μέντοι |get, win as well τοιοῦτοι  
 ὄντες ἢ τῷ τῶν Περσῶν κοινῷ ἀγαθὸν ἢ αὐτοῖς, τοῦτ'  
 οὐκέτι δύναμαι ἰδεῖν. |and yet; and in fact; although |μειν οὐδεμίαν |excellence  
 |work on ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων ὥς μηδὲν πλέον ἔχωσιν οἱ  
 ἐσθλοὶ γινόμενοι τῶν |oppressed; ish; useless οἱ τε τῶν |immediately  
 |pleasure |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance |gladden  
 τοῦτο πράττουσιν, ἀλλ' ὥς διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐγκράτειαν  
 |many times more ἢ τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον |gladden οὕτω  
 |prepare, render οἱ τε λέγειν |be eager δεινοὶ  
 γενέσθαι οὐχ ἵνα εὖ λέγοντες |never παύσωνται, τοῦτο  
 |pursue, attend exercise τὸ (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act) cause to do so (rare) ὑπείθοντες

my opinion of your worth: from my boyhood I have watched your zeal for all that our country holds to be honourable and your abhorrence for all that she counts base. And I wish to tell you plainly why I accepted this office myself and why I ask your help. I have long felt sure that our forefathers were in their time as good men as we. For their lives were one long effort towards the self-same deeds of valour as are held in honour now; and still, for all their worth, I fail to see what good they gained either for the state or for themselves. Yet I cannot bring myself to believe that there is a single virtue practised among mankind merely in order that the brave and good should fare no better than the base ones of the earth. Men do not forego the pleasures of the moment to say good-bye to all joy for evermore—no, this self-control is a training, so that we may reap the fruits of a larger joy in the time to come. A man will toil day and night to make himself an orator, yet oratory is not the one aim of his existence: his hope is to influence men by his

*vocabulary***ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἀναίτιος** blameless ~etiology**ἀξιόνικος** (τι) worthy of winning**ἀσκέω** work on**ἀσκητός** artfully made**ἀφροσύνη** folly ~frenzy**γεωργός** farming**γῆρας** -ος (n, 3) old age**γηράσκω** grow old ~geriatric**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
~apostle**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**ἴσχω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor**καρπώω** bear fruit; harvest it**καταρρέω** flow down ~rheostat**μηδέποτε** never**ὄλβος** happiness, wealth**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**περιοράω** look around; watch; permit**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**προθυμέομαι** (ῥ) be eager**σαφής** clear, understandable**σπεῖρον** clothing, shroud, sail**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think  
proper**φυτεύω** plant, grow, cause, prepare  
~physics

ἀνθρώπους πολλὰ καὶ μεγάλα ἀγαθὰ διαπράξεσθαι· οἱ τε  
 αὖ τὰ πολεμικὰ ἀσκούντες οὐχ ὥς μαχόμενοι μηδέποτε  
 παύσωνται, τοῦτ' ἐκπονοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ νομίζοντες καὶ οὗτοι  
 τὰ πολεμικὰ ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι πολὺν μὲν ὄλβον, πολλήν  
 δὲ εὐδαιμονίαν, μεγάλας δὲ τιμὰς καὶ ἑαυτοῖς καὶ πόλει  
 περιάψειν. εἰ δέ τινες ταῦτα ἐκπονήσαντες πρὶν τινα  
 καρπὸν ἀπ' αὐτῶν κομίσασθαι περιεῖδον αὐτοὺς γήρᾳ  
 ἀδυνάτους γενομένους, ὅμοιον ἔμοιγε δοκοῦσι πεπονθέναι  
 οἶον εἴ τις γεωργὸς ἀγαθὸς προθυμηθεὶς γενέσθαι καὶ  
 εὖ σπείρων καὶ εὖ φυτεύων, ὅποτε καρποῦσθαι ταῦτα  
 δέοι, ἐώη τὸν καρπὸν ἀσυγκόμιστον εἰς τὴν γῆν πάλιν  
 καταρρεῖν. καὶ εἴ τις γε ἀσκητὴς πολλὰ πονήσας  
 καὶ ἀξιόνικος γενόμενος ἀναγώνιστος διατελέσειεν, οὐδ'  
 ἂν οὗτός μοι δοκεῖ δικαίως ἀναίτιος εἶναι ἀφροσύνης.  
 ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες, μὴ πάθωμεν ταῦτα, ἀλλ' ἐπείπερ  
 σύνισμεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ παιδῶν ἀρξάμενοι ἀσκηταὶ  
 ὄντες τῶν καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔργων, ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 πολεμίους, οὓς ἐγὼ σαφῶς ἐπίσταμαι ιδιώτας ὄντας ὥς



ἀνθρώπους πολλὰ καὶ μεγάλα ἀγαθὰ |travel over, ac- οἷ τε  
|complete

αὖ τὰ |warlike, |work on οὐχ ὡς μαχόμενοι |never  
|hostile

|stop , τοῦτ' ἐκπονοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ νομίζοντες καὶ οὗτοι

τὰ |warlike, ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι πολὺν μὲν |happiness, λλήν  
|hostile |wealth

δὲ |prosperity , μεγάλας δὲ |honor, καὶ ἑαυτοῖς καὶ πόλει  
|value

περιάψειν. εἰ δέ τινες ταῦτα ἐκπονήσαντες πρὶν τινα

|wrist; ἀπ' αὐτῶν |tend; bring|look around; τοὺς γήρα  
|fruit, |back/away; |watch; permit  
|grain (mp) travel  
|unable; γενομένους, |like ἔμοιγε δοκοῦσι πεπονθέναι  
|impossible

οἶον εἴ τις |farming ἀγαθὸς |be eager γενέσθαι καὶ

εὖ σπείρων καὶ εὖ |plant, grow;|when |bear fruit; ταῦτα  
|cause, pre- |harvest it

δέοι, ἐάη τὸν |wrist; ἀσυγκόμιστον εἰς τὴν γῆν πάλιν  
|fruit,  
|grain

|flow down καὶ εἴ τις γε ἀσκητὴς πολλὰ |work

καὶ |worthy of winning |ος ἀναγώνιστος |accomplish; , οὐδ'  
|keep doing

ἂν οὗτός μοι δοκεῖ δικαίως |blameless εἶναι |folly .

ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες, μὴ πάθωμεν ταῦτα, ἀλλ' ἐπέιπερ

|know about; some- ὑτοῖς ἀπὸ παίδων ἀρξάμενοι ἀσκηταὶ  
|one; think proper

ὄντες τῶν καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔργων, |imitate, like τούς  
|to, guess

πολεμίους, οὓς ἐγὼ |clear, under- ταμαι |private; a layman --s  
|standable

eloquence and thus achieve some noble end. So too with us, and those like us, who are drilled in the arts of war: we do not give our labours in order to fight for ever, endlessly and hopelessly, we hope that we too one day, when we have proved our mettle, may win and wear for ourselves and for our city the threefold ornament of wealth, of happiness, of honour. And if there should be some who have worked hard all their lives and suddenly old-age, they find, has stolen on them unawares, and taken away their powers before they have gathered in the fruit of all their toil, such men seem to me like those who desire to be thrifty husbandmen, and who sow well and plant wisely, but when the time of harvest comes let the fruit drop back ungarnered into the soil whence it sprang. Or as if an athlete should train himself and reach the heights where victory may be won and at the last forbear to enter the lists—such an one, I take it, would but meet his deserts if all men cried out upon him for a fool. Let not such be our fate, my friends. Our own hearts bear us witness that we, too, from our boyhood up, have been trained in the school of beauty and nobleness and honour, and now let us go forward to meet our foes. They, I know right well, when matched with us, will prove

*vocabulary*

ἀγρυπνέω lie awake  
 αγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself  
 αγωνιστής -οῦ (m, 1) competitor  
 ἀκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
 ἀπαίδευτος uneducated, loutish  
 ~pediatrician  
 ἄπειρος untested; infinite  
 ἀπείρων boundless  
 ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?  
 ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
 ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise  
 ἔπαινος (noun) praise  
 ἐπιστήμων skillful, clever ~station  
 ἐραστής -οῦ (m, 1) lover, fan  
 ἐσσόμαι (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony

ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
 ἡττάομαι (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
 ιδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
 ἱππεύω ride  
 κτήμα -τος (n, 3) possession  
 λάω grip, pin?  
 λέων lion  
 λιμός (i, f) famine  
 ὄψον piece of cooked meat, relish  
 πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic  
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia  
 πόνος toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
 ῥαίω smite  
 συγχομίζω gather  
 τοξεύω shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
 ὕπνος a sleep  
 ὑποδύομαι (mp) get under; play a  
 character

πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀγωνίζεσθαι. οὐ γάρ πω οὗτοι ἱκανοί εἰσιν  
 ἀγωνισταί, οἳ ἂν τοξεύωσι καὶ ἀκοντίζωσι καὶ ἱππεύωσιν  
 ἐπιστημόνως, ἣν δέ που πονῆσαι δέη, τούτῳ λείπωνται,  
 ἀλλ' οὗτοι ἰδιωταί εἰσι κατὰ τοὺς πόρους· οὐδέ γε οἵτινες  
 ἀγρυπνήσαι δέον ἡττώνται τούτου, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτοι ἰδιῶται  
 κατὰ τὸν ὕπνον· οὐδέ γε οἱ ταῦτα μὲν ἱκανοί, ἀπαίδευτοι  
 δὲ ὡς χρῆ καὶ συμμάχοις καὶ πολεμίοις χρῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ οὗτοι δῆλον ὡς τῶν μεγίστων παιδευμάτων ἀπείρως  
 ἔχουσιν. ὑμεῖς δὲ νυκτὶ μὲν δήπου ὅσαπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ἡμέρᾳ  
 δύναισθ' ἂν χρῆσθαι, πόρους δὲ τοῦ ζῆν ἡδέως ἡγεμόνας  
 νομίζετε, λιμῶ δὲ ὅσαπερ ὄψῳ διαχρήσθε, ὑδροποσίαν  
 δὲ ῥᾶον τῶν λεόντων φέρετε, κάλλιστον δὲ πάντων  
 καὶ πολεμικώτατον κτήμα εἰς τὰς ψυχὰς συγκεκόμισθε·  
 ἐπαινούμενοι γὰρ μᾶλλον ἢ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασι χαίρετε.  
 τοὺς δ' ἐπαίνου ἐραστὰς ἀνάγκη διὰ τοῦτο πάντα μὲν  
 πόρον, πάντα δὲ κίνδυνον ἡδέως ὑποδύεσθαι. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα  
 ἐγὼ λέγω περὶ ὑμῶν ἄλλη γιγνώσκων, ἐμαυτὸν ἐξαπατῶ.  
 ὅ τι γὰρ μὴ τοιοῦτον ἀποβήσεται παρ' ὑμῶν, εἰς ἐμέ

πρὸς ἡμᾶς |contend, exert oneself  
|competitor , οὐ γάρ πω οὗτοι ἱκανοί εἰσιν

|shoot an arrow|throw, (+gen) at... |ride  
|skillful, clever , ἦν δέ που |work

δέη, τούτῳ λείπωνται,

ἀλλ' οὗτοι |private; a layman ἢ τοὺς |toil, suffering ἔγε οἵτινες

|lie awake δέον ἡττῶνται τούτου, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτοι |private; a layman

κατὰ τὸν |sleep οὐδέ γε οἱ ταῦτα μὲν ἱκανοί, |uneducated,  
|loutish

δὲ ὡς χρὴ καὶ συμμάχοις καὶ πολεμίοις χρῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ

καὶ οὗτοι |visible, ... ὧν μεγίστων παιδευμάτων ἀπείρως  
|conspicuous

ἔχουσιν. ὑμεῖς δὲ νυκτὶ μὲν |perhaps; is περ οἱ ἄλλοι ἡμέρᾳ  
|it not so?

δύναισθ' ἂν χρῆσθαι, |toil, suffering. οὐ ζῆν |sweet |leader

νομίζετε, |famine δὲ ὅσα περ |piece of cooked meat, relish  
|meat, relish

δὲ ῥᾶον τῶν λεόντων φέρετε, κάλλιστον δὲ πάντων

καὶ |warlike, hostile |possession τὰς ψυχὰς |συγχομίζω?: gather; or  
|concur γὰρ μάλλον ἢ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν χαίρετε.

τοὺς δ' |(noun) praise πρὸς ἀνάγκη διὰ τοῦτο πάντα μὲν

|toil, suffering α δὲ κίνδυνον |sweet |(mp) get under; δὲ ταῦτα  
|play a character

ἐγὼ λέγω περὶ ὑμῶν ἄλλη γινώσκων, ἐμαυτὸν |trick,  
|cheat

ὅτι γὰρ μὴ τοιοῦτον |leave, get off; παρ' ὑμῶν, εἰς ἐμὲ  
|turn out

but novices in war. He is no true warrior, though he be skilled with the javelin and the bow and ride on horseback with the best, who, when the call for endurance comes, is found to fail: toil finds him but a novice. Nor are they warriors who, when they should wake and watch, give way to slumber: sleep finds them novices. Even endurance will not avail, if a man has not learnt to deal as a man should by friends and foes: such an one is unschooled in the highest part of his calling. But with you it is not so: to you the night will be as the day; toil, your school has taught you, is the guide to happiness; hunger has been your daily condiment, and water you take to quench your thirst as the lion laps the stream. And you have that within your hearts which is the rarest of all treasures and the most akin to war: of all sweet sounds the sweetest sound for you is the voice of fame. You are fair Honour's suitors, and you must needs win your title to her favour. Therefore you undergo toil and danger gladly.

"Now if I said all this of you, and my heart were not in my words, I should but cheat myself. For in so far as you should fail to fulfil my hopes of you,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself  
**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἄλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἄλλότριος** someone else's; alien ~alien  
**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἄνοια** folly  
**ἀρήγω** succor; prevent ~right  
**ἐκποδών** out of the way  
**ἐξοδος** (f) leaving, way out  
**ἐπανέρχομαι** return; ascend  
**ἐπίκουρος** ally ~cereal  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**εὖνοια** good will, gift  
**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,

spring upon ~jet  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**παράμελέω** not pay attention to  
**πεῖρα** an attempt  
**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πρόεimi** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

τὸ ἐλλείπον ἥξει. ἀλλὰ πιστεύω τοι τῇ πείρᾳ καὶ τῇ  
 ὑμῶν εἰς ἐμὲ εὐνοίᾳ καὶ τῇ τῶν πολεμίων ἀνοίᾳ μὴ  
 ψεύσειν με ταύτας τὰς ἀγαθὰς ἐλπίδας. ἀλλὰ θαρροῦντες  
 ὁρμώμεθα, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐκποδὼν ἡμῖν γεγένηται τὸ δόξαι  
 τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀδίκως ἐφίεσθαι. νῦν γὰρ ἔρχονται  
 μὲν οἱ πολέμοι ἄρχοντες ἀδίκων χειρῶν, καλοῦσι δὲ  
 ἡμᾶς ἐπικούρους οἱ φίλοι· τί οὖν ἐστὶν ἢ τοῦ ἀλέξασθαι  
 δικαιότερον ἢ τοῦ τοῖς φίλοις ἀρήγειν κάλλιον; ἀλλὰ  
 μὴν καῖκεῖνο οἶμαι ὑμᾶς θαρρεῖν, τὸ μὴ παρημεληκότα  
 με τῶν θεῶν τὴν ἔξοδον ποιεῖσθαι· πολλὰ γάρ μοι  
 συνόντες ἐπίστασθε οὐ μόνον τὰ μεγάλα ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ  
 μικρὰ πειρώμενον αἰεὶ ἀπὸ θεῶν ὁρμᾶσθαι. τέλος εἶπε·  
 Τί δεῖ ἔτι λέγειν; ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς μὲν τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι  
 καὶ ἀναλαβόντες καὶ τᾶλλα παρασκευασάμενοι ἴτε ἐς  
 Μήδους· ἐγὼ δ' ἐπανελθὼν πρὸς τὸν πατέρα πρόειμι  
 δῆ, ὅπως τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ὡς τάχιστα μαθὼν οἶά ἐστι  
 παρασκευάζωμαι ὅ τι ἂν δέωμαι, ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα σὺν  
 θεῷ ἀγωνιζώμεθα. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἔπραττον.



τὸ ἐλλείπον |be present, have arrived πιστεύω τοι τῇ πείρᾳ καὶ τῇ

ὑμῶν εἰς ἐμὲ |good will, gift .τῇ τῶν πολεμίων |folly μὴ

|be false, deceive; (mid) to lie γὰς τὰς ἀγαθὰς |hope ἀλλὰ θαρροῦντες

ὁρμώμεθα, ἐπειδὴ καὶ |out of the way γεγένηται τὸ δόξαι

τῶν |someone |unfair; |send flying at οὖν γὰρ ἔρχονται  
|else's; alien |obstinate,

μὲν οἱ πολέμοι |bad |unfair; οὐκ- |ob- |stinate, bad  
|stinate, bad

ἡμᾶς |ally οἱ φίλοι· τί οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ τοῦ |ward off; aid

δικαιότερον ἢ τοῦ τοῖς φίλοις |succor; κάλλιον; ἀλλὰ  
|prevent

μὴν ἀκείνο οἶμαι ὑμᾶς θαρρεῖν, τὸ μὴ |not pay attention to

με τῶν θεῶν τὴν |leaving, way οὐτ' αἰ· πολλὰ γάρ μοι

|be with; have sex ἴσθε οὐ μόνον τὰ μεγάλα ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ

|small πειρώμενον αἰεὶ ἀπὸ θεῶν |spur, rush at |end εἶπε·

Τί δεῖ ἔτι λέγειν; ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς μὲν τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι

καὶ |take up, re- καὶ τὰλλα |prepare, render ἵτε ἐς  
|cover, resume

Μήδους· ἐγὼ δ' |return; πρὸς τὸν πατέρα |to have been before,  
|ascend |earlier

δὴ, ὅπως τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ὡς τάχιστα |learn οἶά ἐστι

|prepare, render ὅ τι ἂν δέωμαι, ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα σὺν

θεῷ |contend, exert οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἔπραττον.  
|oneself

it is on me that the shame would fall. But I have faith in you, bred of experience: I trust in your goodwill towards me, and in our enemy's lack of wit; you will not belie my hopes. Let us go forth with a light heart; we have no ill-fame to fear: none can say we covet another man's goods unlawfully. Our enemy strikes the first blow in an unrighteous cause, and our friends call us to protect them. What is more lawful than self-defence? What is nobler than to succour those we love? And you have another ground of confidence—in opening this campaign I have not been forgetful of the gods: you have gone in and out with me, and you know how in all things, great and small, I strive to win their blessing. And now," he added, "what need of further words? I will leave you now to choose your own men, and when all is ready you will march into Media at their head. Meanwhile I will return to my father and start before you, so that I may learn what I can about the enemy as soon as may be, and thus make all needful preparations, so that by God's help we may win glory on the field."

*vocabulary***αἶσιος** auspicious ~etiology**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀστραπή** lightning**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐπιτηδές** enough; purposely**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter**ἑστία** hearth ~Hestia**εὐμενής** kind**θεῖον** θεείου brimstone ~fume**ἔλεως** propitious, gracious**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**οὐράνιος** heavenly**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral ~paternal**πατρῶος** of the father(s), ancestral**πότε** when?**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier ~ion**προσεύχομαι** pray, vow**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore**σημεῖον** sign**στρατεία** expedition, campaign**συμβουλία** advice; consultation**συνίημι** send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet**τοιόσδε** such

## 1.6

Κῦρος δὲ ἐλθὼν οἴκαδε καὶ προσευξάμενος Ἑστία πατρώα καὶ Διὶ πατρώω καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ὠρμᾶτο ἐπὶ τὴν στρατείαν, συμπρούπεμπε δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ ὁ πατήρ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔξω τῆς οἰκίας ἐγένοντο, λέγονται ἀστραπαὶ καὶ βρονταὶ αὐτῷ αἴσιοι γενέσθαι. τούτων δὲ φανέντων οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἔτι οἰωνιζόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, ὥς οὐδένα ἂν λύσαντα τὰ τοῦ μεγίστου θεοῦ σημεία.

Προϊόντι δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ ὁ πατήρ ἤρχετο λόγου τοιοῦδε. ὦ παῖ, ὅτι μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἔλεώ τε καὶ εὐμενεῖς πέμπουσί σε καὶ ἐν ἱεροῖς δῆλον καὶ ἐν οὐρανίοις σημείοις· γινώσκεις δὲ καὶ αὐτός. ἐγὼ γάρ σε ταῦτα ἐπίτηδες ἐδιδασκάμην, ὅπως μὴ δι' ἄλλων ἐρμηνέων τὰς τῶν θεῶν συμβουλίας συνιείης, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς καὶ ὁρῶν τὰ ὁρατὰ καὶ ἀκούων τὰ ἀκουστὰ γινώσκεις καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ μάντεσιν εἴης, εἰ βούλουντό σε ἐξαπατᾶν ἕτερα λέγοντες ἢ τὰ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν σημαινόμενα, μηδ' αὖ, εἴ ποτε ἄρα ἄνευ μάντεως γένοιο, ἀποροῖο θείους σημείους ὅ τι χρῶ,

## 1.6

|authority; ἔλθων |homeward ` |pray, vow |hearth πατρώα  
|validity

καὶ Διὶ πατρώῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς |spur, rush at ` τὴν

|expedition, , συμπρόνυμπε δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ ὁ πατήρ. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
|campaign

ἔξω τῆς |building, ἔνοντο, λέγονται |lightning καὶ |thunder  
|house

αὐτῷ |auspicious ἐσθαι. τούτων δὲ φανέντων οὐδὲν ἄλλο

ἔτι οἰωνιζόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, ὥς οὐδένα ἂν |release τὰ

τοῦ μεγίστου θεοῦ |sign

|to have been τῷ Κύρῳ ὁ πατήρ ἤρχετο λόγου |such  
|before, earlier

ὦ παῖ, ὅτι μὲν οἱ θεοὶ |propitious, ἢ |kind πέμπουσί σε  
|gracious

καὶ ἐν ἱεροῖς |visible, ἢ ἔν |heavenly |sign γιγνώσκεις  
|conspicuous

δὲ καὶ αὐτός. ἐγὼ γάρ σε ταῦτα ἐπίτηδες ἐδίδαξάμην,

ὅπως μὴ δι' ἄλλων |interpreter τὰς τῶν θεῶν |advice; consultation

|send together; hear ᾧ τὸς καὶ ὁρῶν τὰ ὁρατὰ καὶ ἀκούων

τὰ ἀκουστὰ γιγνώσκεις καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ |seer εἵης, εἰ

βούλονται σε |trick, cheat ἕτερα λέγοντες ἢ τὰ παρὰ τῶν

θεῶν |give orders to; and not; not even ἄρα |away |seer  
|show; mark

γέναιο, |be confused, ᾧ dis-|sign ὅ τι χρῶο, |not  
|tressed |not  
|need-  
ing

## 1.6

Such were his orders and they set about them at once. But Cyrus himself went home and prayed to the gods of his father's house, to Hestia and Zeus, and to all who had watched over his race. And when he had done so, he set out for the war, and his father went with him on the road. They were no sooner clear of the city, so says the story, than they met with favourable omens of thunder and lightning, and after that they went forward without further divination, for they felt that no man could mistake the signs from the Ruler of the gods. And as they went on their way Cyrus' father said to him, "My son, the gods are gracious to us, and look with favour on your journey—they have shown it in the sacrifices, and by their signs from heaven. You do not need another man to tell you so, for I was careful to have you taught this art, so that you might understand the counsels of the gods yourself and have no need of an interpreter, seeing with your own eyes and hearing with your own ears and taking the heavenly meaning for yourself. Thus you need not be at the mercy of any soothsayers who might have a mind to deceive you, speaking contrary to the omens vouchsafed from heaven, nor yet, should you chance to be without a seer, drift in perplexity and know not how to profit

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀνεπιστήμων** ignorant, unskilled  
**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult  
**διάκειμαι** be in a condition  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**ἐλπίζω** (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)  
 cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary  
**εοικότως** like; fairly  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**ἔλεως** propitious, gracious  
**κολακεύω** flatter  
**μαντικός** prophetic  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so  
**πότε** when?  
**πρακτικός** practical, effective  
**σαυτοῦ** yourself  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
**σύννοιδα** know about someone; think  
 proper  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἀλλὰ γιγνώσκων διὰ τῆς μαντικῆς τὰ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν  
 συμβουλευόμενα, τούτοις πείθοιο. Καὶ μὲν δῆ, ὦ πάτερ,  
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὡς ἂν ἵλεω οἱ θεοὶ ὄντες ἡμῖν συμβουλεύειν  
 θέλωσιν, ὅσον δύναμαι κατὰ τὸν σὸν λόγον διατελῶ  
 ἐπιμελούμενος. μέμνημαι γάρ, ἔφη, ἀκούσας ποτέ σου  
 ὅτι εἰκότως ἂν καὶ παρὰ θεῶν πρακτικώτερος εἴη ὥσπερ  
 καὶ παρ' ἀνθρώπων ὅστις μὴ ὁπότε ἐν ἀπόροις εἴη, τότε  
 κολακεύοι, ἀλλ' ὅτε τὰ ἄριστα πράττοι, τότε μάλιστα  
 τῶν θεῶν μεμνήτο· καὶ τῶν φίλων δ' ἔφησθα χρῆναι  
 ὡσαύτως οὔτως ἐπιμελῆσθαι. Οὐκοῦν νῦν, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
 διὰ γ' ἐκείνας τὰς ἐπιμελείας ἥδιον μὲν ἔρχη πρὸς τοὺς  
 θεοὺς δεησόμενος, ἐλπίζεις δὲ μᾶλλον τεύξεσθαι ὧν ἂν δέη,  
 ὅτι συνειδέναι σαντῶ δοκεῖς οὐπώποτ' ἀμελήσας αὐτῶν;  
 πάννυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ὡς πρὸς φίλους μοι ὄντας  
 τοὺς θεοὺς οὕτω διάκειμαι. Τί γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, μέμνησαι  
 ἐκεῖνα ἃ ποτε ἐδόκει ἡμῖν, ὡς ἅπερ δεδώκασιν οἱ θεοὶ  
 μαθόντας ἀνθρώπους βέλτιον πράττειν ἢ ἀνεπιστήμονας  
 αὐτῶν ὄντας καὶ ἐργαζομένους μᾶλλον



ἀλλὰ γιγνώσκων διὰ τῆς |prophetic τὰ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν

|give advice; (mid) τούτοις πείθοιο. Καὶ μὲν δὴ, ὦ πάτερ,  
|consult

ἔφη ὁ Κύριος, ὡς ἂν |propitiōs, ἢ ὄντες ἡμῖν |give advice;  
|gracious (mid) consult

θέλωσιν, ὅσον δύναμαι κατὰ τὸν σὸν λόγον |accomplish;  
|keep doing

|take care of, |remind; (mid) ῥέμμεν, κούσας ποτέ σου  
|oversee |turn one's thoughts to

ὅτι |like; ἂν καὶ παρὰ θεῶν |practical, effective εἴη ὥσπερ  
|fairly

καὶ παρ' ἀνθρώπων ὅστις μὴ |when ἐν |impassable, ῥ, τότε  
|difficult

|flatter , ἀλλ' ὅτε τὰ ἄριστα πράττοι, τότε μάλιστα

τῶν θεῶν |remind; (mid) ῥέμμεν, ὦν δ' ἔφησθα χρῆναι  
|turn one's thoughts to

|in the same way... |take care of, |not so?; and so ῥη, ὦ παῖ,  
|oversee

διὰ γ' ἐκείνας τὰς |attention; as-|sweet μὲν ἔρχη πρὸς τοὺς  
|signed task

θεοὺς δεησόμενος, (mid, pf) ῥέμμεν, ῥέμμεν, ῥέμμεν, ὦν ἂν δέη,  
(act) cause to do so (rare)

ὅτι |know about|yourself δοκεῖς οὐπόποτ' |disregard αὐτῶν;  
|someone;

|think proper  
|altogether, very , ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ὡς πρὸς φίλους μοι ὄντας

τοὺς θεοὺς οὕτω |be in a condition, ῥ, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, |remind; (mid) re-  
|member, turn one's  
|thoughts to

|learn ἀνθρώπους βέλτιον πράττειν ἢ |ignorant,  
|unskilled

αὐτῶν ὄντας καὶ |work μᾶλλον

by the heavenly signs: you yourself through your own learning can understand the warnings of the gods and follow them.”

“Yes, father,” answered Cyrus, “so far as in me lies, I bear your words in mind, and pray to the gods continually that they may show us favour and vouchsafe to counsel us. I remember,” he went on, “how once I heard you say that, as with men, so with the gods, it was but natural if the prayer of him should prevail who did not turn to flatter them only in time of need, but was mindful of them above all in the heyday of his happiness. It was thus indeed, you said, that we ought to deal with our earthly friends.” “True, my son,” said his father, “and because of all my teaching, you can now approach the gods in prayer with a lighter heart and a more confident hope that they will grant you what you ask, because your conscience bears you witness that you have never forgotten them.” “Even so,” said Cyrus, “and in truth I feel towards them as though they were my friends.” “And do you remember,” asked his father, “certain other conclusions on which we were agreed? How we felt there were certain things that the gods had permitted us to attain through learning and study and training? The accomplishment of these is

*vocabulary*

**ἄθέμιτος** lawless, unworthy of law  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀργέω** not work; (pass) be fruitless,  
 left undone  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἄτυχέω** be unlucky  
**ἀφυλακτέω** be off guard  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**θέμις** -τος (f) custom, law  
**θεσμός** place, site ~thesis  
**ἵππεύω** ride  
**κυβερνάω** steer ~govern  
**ναί** yea  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic  
**παράνομος** lawless, unlawful  
**πότε** when?  
**σῖτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

ἀνύτειν ἢ ἀργοῦντας καὶ ἐπιμελουμένους ἀσφαλέστερον  
 ἂν διάγειν ἢ ἀφυλακτοῦντας τούτων,— παρέχοντας οὖν  
 τοιούτους ἑαυτοὺς οἷους δεῖ, οὕτως ἡμῖν ἐδόκει δεῖν  
 καὶ αἰτεῖσθαι τὰγαθὰ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν; Ναὶ μὰ Δί,  
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, μέμνημαι μέντοι τοιαῦτα ἀκούσας σου·  
 καὶ γὰρ ἀνάγκη με πείθεσθαι τῷ λόγῳ· καὶ γὰρ οἶδά  
 σε λέγοντα ἀεὶ ὥς οὐδὲ θέμις εἶη αἰτεῖσθαι παρὰ τῶν  
 θεῶν οὔτε ἱππεύειν μὴ μαθόντας ἵππομαχοῦντας νικᾶν,  
 οὔτε μὴ ἐπισταμένους τοξεύειν τοξεύοντας κρατεῖν τῶν  
 ἐπισταμένων, οὔτε μὴ ἐπισταμένους κυβερνᾶν σώζειν  
 εὐχεσθαι ναῦς κυβερνῶντας, οὐδὲ μὴ σπείροντάς γε σῖτον  
 εὐχεσθαι καλὸν αὐτοῖς φύεσθαι, οὐδὲ μὴ φυλαττομένους  
 γε ἐν πολέμῳ σωτηρίαν αἰτεῖσθαι· παρὰ γὰρ τοὺς τῶν  
 θεῶν θεσμοὺς πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι· τοὺς δὲ ἀθέμιτα  
 εὐχομένους ὁμοίως ἔφησθα εἰκὸς εἶναι παρὰ θεῶν ἀτυχεῖν  
 ὥσπερ καὶ παρὰ ἀνθρώπων ἀπρακτεῖν τοὺς παράνομα  
 δεομένους.

Ἐκείνων δέ, ὦ παῖ, ἐπελάθου ἅ ποτε ἐγὼ καὶ σὺ

ἀνύτειν ἦ |not work; (pass)|take care of, over- |safe, easy, steady,  
 |be fruitless, left un-see |careful  
 ἂν |lead |done |be off guard τούτων,— παρέχοντας οὖν  
 |through;  
 |pass a time  
 τοιούτους ἑαυτοὺς οἴους δεῖ, οὕτως ἡμῖν ἐδόκει δεῖν  
 καὶ |ask for τὰγαθὰ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν; |yea μὰ Δί,  
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, μέμνημαι |however τοιαῦτα ἀκούσας σου·  
 καὶ γὰρ |necessity με πείθεσθαι τῷ λόγῳ· καὶ γὰρ οἶδά  
 σε λέγοντα ἀεὶ ὥς οὐδὲ |custom, law|ask for παρὰ τῶν  
 θεῶν οὔτε |ride μὴ |learn ἵππομαχοῦντας νικᾶν,  
 οὔτε μὴ ἐπισταμένους |shoot an|shoot an arrow at εἶν τῶν  
 |arrow at  
 ἐπισταμένων, οὔτε μὴ ἐπισταμένους |steer σώζειν  
 |declare; pray. ὅς |steer , οὐδὲ μὴ |sow γε |grain,  
 |declare; pray λὸν αὐτοῖς |produce, , οὐδὲ μὴ |guard; watch |bread,  
 |beget; clasp |food  
 γε ἐν πολέμῳ |saving, |ask for παρὰ γὰρ τοὺς τῶν  
 |preservation  
 θεῶν |place, site πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι· τοὺς δὲ ἀθέμιτα  
 |declare; pray ἰμοίως ἔφησθα |likely εἶναι παρὰ θεῶν |be unlucky  
 ὥσπερ καὶ παρὰ ἀνθρώπων ἀπρακτεῖν τοὺς |lawless,  
 |unlawful  
 δεομένους.

Ἐκείνων δέ, ὦ παῖ, ἐπελάθου ἅ ποτε ἐγὼ καὶ σὺ

the reward of effort, not of idleness; in these it is only when we have done all that it is our duty to do that we are justified in asking for blessings from the gods." "I remember very well," said Cyrus, "that you used to talk to me in that way: and indeed I could not but agree with the arguments you gave. You used to say that a man had no right to pray he might win a cavalry charge if he had never learnt how to ride, or triumph over master-bowmen if he could not draw a bow, or bring a ship safe home to harbour if he did not know how to steer, or be rewarded with a plenteous harvest if he had not so much as sown grain into the ground, or come home safe from battle if he took no precautions whatsoever. All such prayers as these, you said, were contrary to the very ordinances of heaven, and those who asked for things forbidden could not be surprised if they failed to win them from the gods. Even as a petition in the face of law on earth would have no success with men."

"And do you remember," said his father, "how we thought that it would be a noble work enough if a man could train himself really and truly to be beautiful and brave and earn all he needed for his household and himself?"

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀνταγωνίζομαι** vie with**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**διαγίγνομαι** go through; subsist

~genus

**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἐκπλεως** full of, abundant**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**ἰκάνω** ( $\bar{\alpha}$ ) reach, arrive at**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**ναί** yea**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house

slave

**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,

target ~telescope

**συνδοκέω** seem good also**ὑπερμεγέθης** very difficult**ὑποπίπτω** cower under ~petal

ἐλογιζόμεθα ὡς ἱκανὸν εἶη καὶ καλὸν ἀνδρὶ ἔργον, εἴ τις δύναίτο ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὅπως ἂν αὐτός τε καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθὸς δοκίμως γένοιτο καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ οἰκέται ἱκανῶς ἔχοιεν; τὸ δέ, τούτου μεγάλου ἔργου ὄντος, οὕτως ἐπίστασθαι ἀνθρώπων ἄλλων προστατεύειν ὅπως ἔξουσι πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔκπλεω καὶ ὅπως ἔσονται πάντες οἴους δεῖ, τοῦτο θαυμαστὸν δήπου ἡμῖν τότε ἐφαίνετο εἶναι. Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, μέμνημαι καὶ τοῦτό σου λέγοντος· συνεδόκει οὖν καὶ ἐμοὶ ὑπερμέγεθες εἶναι ἔργον τὸ καλῶς ἄρχειν· καὶ νῦν γ', ἔφη, ταῦτά μοι δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ὅταν πρὸς αὐτὸ τὸ ἄρχειν σκοπῶν λογίζωμαι. ὅταν μέντοι γε πρὸς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους ἰδὼν κατανοήσω οἷοι ὄντες διαγίγνονται ἄρχοντες καὶ οἷοι ὄντες ἀνταγωνιστὰὶ ἡμῖν ἔσονται, πάννυ μοι δοκεῖ αἰσχροὺς εἶναι τὸ τοιούτους ὑποπτῆξαι καὶ μὴ θέλειν ἵεναι αὐτοῖς ἀνταγωνιζομένους· οὕς, ἔφη, ἐγὼ αἰσθάνομαι ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῶν ἡμετέρων φίλων τούτων ἡγουμένους δεῖν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχομένων διαφέρειν τῷ καὶ



reckon, consider	ὥς   sufficient; fit,   empowered	αὐτὸν καλὸν ἀνδρὶ ἔργον, εἴ τις
---------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------

δύναιτο | take care of, ὅπως ἂν αὐτός τε καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθὸς  
oversee

trustworthy;	οἱτο καὶ τὰ	fit, suitable	αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ	household;
excellent				house slave

ἰκανῶς ἔχοιεν; τὸ δέ, τούτου μεγάλου ἔργου ὄντος,

οὕτως ἐπίστασθαι ἀνθρώπων ἄλλων προστατεύειν ὅπως

ἔξουσιν πάντα τὰ [fit, suitable] [full of, abundant] ὥς ἔσονται

πάντες οἷους δεῖ, τοῦτο | wonderful; | perhaps; is ὃ τότε  
| admirable | it not so?

ἐφαίνετο εἶναι. | yea    μὰ Δῆ', ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, | remind; (mid) remember,  
turn one's thoughts to

τοῦτό σου λέγοντος· |seem good also καὶ ἐμοὶ |very difficult

εἶναι ἔργον τὸ καλῶς ἄρχειν· καὶ νῦν γ', ἔφη, ταῦτά

μοι δοκεῖ ταῦτα, | whenever ὅς αὐτὸ τὸ ἄρχειν σκοπῶν

reckon, consider	when- however, <i>ε</i> πρὸς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους ἰδὼν ever
---------------------	--

notice, real- οἱοι ὄντες | go through; subsist, οντες καὶ οἱοι  
ize, learn

ὄντες ἀνταγωνιστὰὶ ἡμῖν ἔσονται, |altogether, very -- |shameful

εἶναι τὸ τοιούτους ὑποπτῆξαι καὶ μὴ θέλιν ἰέναι αὐτοῖς

vie with	οὕς, ἔφη, ἐγὼ	perceive	ἀρξάμενος
----------	---------------	----------	-----------

ἀπὸ τῶν |our, my φίλων τούτων ἡγουμένους δεῖν τὸν

ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχομένων | carry on; ὦ καὶ  
differ; excel

That, we said, was a work of which a man might well be proud; but if he went further still, if he had the skill and the science to be the guide and governor of other men, supplying all their wants and making them all they ought to be, that, it seemed to us, would be indeed a marvel." "Yes, my father," answered Cyrus, "I remember it very well. I agreed with you that to rule well and nobly was the greatest of all works, and I am of the same mind still," he went on, "whenever I think of government in itself. But when I look on the world at large, when I see of what poor stuff those men are made who contrive to uphold their rule and what sort of antagonists we are likely to find in them, then I can only feel how disgraceful it would be to cringe before them and not to face them myself and try conclusions with them on the field. All of them, I perceive," he added, "beginning with our own friends here, hold to it that the ruler should only differ from his subjects by the splendour of his banquets, the wealth of gold in his coffers, the length and depth of his slumbers, and his freedom from trouble and pain. But my views are different: I hold that the ruler should be marked out from other men, not by taking life easily, but by his forethought and his wisdom and his eagerness for work." "True, my son," the father answered, "but you know the struggle must in part be waged not against flesh and blood but against circumstances, and these may not be overcome so

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἄδηλος** invisible, unknown**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste**δαπάνη** cost, funds, extravagance**δειπνέω** eat, dine**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**έκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ένδον** in the house of; within**ένιοι** some**έντεϋθεν** thence**έπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse**έπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εϋπορος** easily passed; rich**καθεύδω** lie down**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose**όμως** anyway, nevertheless**όπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**ούκοϋν** not so?; and so**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain

~genus

**πολυτελής** very expensive; (person) extravagant**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**στρατιά** army ~strategy**χρυσίον** (ϑ) gold coin**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

πολυτελέστερον δειπνεῖν καὶ πλέον ἔχειν ἔνδον χρυσίον  
 καὶ πλείονα χρόνον καθεύδειν καὶ πάντα ἀπονώτερον τῶν  
 ἀρχομένων διάγειν. ἐγὼ δὲ οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν ἄρχοντα οὐ  
 τῷ ῥαδιουργεῖν χρῆναι διαφέρειν τῶν ἀρχομένων, ἀλλὰ  
 τῷ προνοεῖν καὶ φιλοπονεῖν. Ἀλλά τοι, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
 ἔνιά ἐστιν ἃ οὐ πρὸς ἀνθρώπους ἀγωνιστέον, ἀλλὰ πρὸς  
 αὐτὰ τὰ πράγματα, ὧν οὐ ῥάδιον εὐπόρως περιγενέσθαι.  
 αὐτίκα δήπου οἶσθα ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἔξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ στρατιά,  
 καταλελύσεταιί σου ἡ ἀρχή. Οὐκοῦν ταῦτα μέν, ἔφη, ὦ  
 πάτερ, Κυαζάρης φησὶ παρέξειν τοῖς ἐντεῦθεν ἰοῦσι πᾶσιν  
 ὅποσοι ἂν ᾧσι. Τούτοις δὴ σύ, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, πιστεύων ἔρχη,  
 τοῖς παρὰ Κυαζάρου χρήμασιν; ἔγωγ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. ἰδέ,  
 ἔφη, οἶσθα ὅποσα αὐτῷ ἔστι; ἃ τὸν Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,  
 οὐ μὲν δή. Ὅμως δὲ τούτοις πιστεύεις τοῖς ἀδήλοις;  
 ὅτι δὲ πολλῶν μὲν σοὶ δεήσει, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα νῦν  
 ἀνάγκη δαπανᾶν ἐκείνῳ, οὐ γινώσκεις; Γινώσκω, ἔφη  
 ὁ Κῦρος. Ἦν οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπιλίπη αὐτὸν ἢ δαπάνη ἢ καὶ  
 ἐκὼν ψεύσεται, πῶς σοι ἔξει τὰ τῆς

|expensive; extra-  
gant |eat, dine καὶ πλεόν ἔχειν |in the|gold coin  
house  
καὶ πλείονα χρόνον |lie down καὶ πάντα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐνὶ οὐτέρον τῶν  
within  
ἀρχομένων |lead through; |δὲ οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν ἄρχοντα οὐ  
pass a time  
τῷ ραδιουργεῖν χρήναι |carry on; τῶν ἀρχομένων, ἀλλὰ  
|differ; excel  
τῷ |foresee, καὶ φιλοπονεῖν. Ἀλλά τοι, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
|think of  
|some ἔστιν ἃ οὐ πρὸς ἀνθρώπους |contend, exert, ἀλλὰ πρὸς  
oneself  
αὐτὰ τὰ πράγματα, ὧν οὐ ράδιον |easily |surpass; sur-  
passed; |vive; attain  
rich  
|at once |perhaps; ἵστα ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἔξει τὰ |fit, suitable ἡ στρατιά,  
|it not so?  
|unyoke; destroy σου ἡ ἀρχή. |not so?; and so ... μέν, ἔφη, ὦ  
πάτερ, Κναξάρης φησὶ |furnish τοῖς |thence ἰοῦσι πᾶσιν  
|as/how many|great τὴν τοῖς δὴ σύ, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, πιστεύων ἔρχη,  
τοῖς παρὰ Κναξάρου |possession, , , , ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. ἰδέ,  
money, busi-  
ness  
ἔφη, οἶσθα |as/how many|great . . . ; ἃ τὸν Διῖ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,  
οὐ μὲν δὴ. |anyway, nevertheless πιστεύεις τοῖς |invisible, ,  
|unknown  
ὅτι δὲ πολλῶν μὲν σοὶ δεήσει, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα νῦν  
|necessity |spend, con- :εἰνον, οὐ γιγνώσκεις; Γιγνώσκω, ἔφη  
|sume, waste  
ὁ Κῦρος. Ἦν οὖν, ἔφη, |fail, not work ἔν ἡ |cost, funds, αἰ  
extravagance  
|will- |be false, deceive; σοι ἔξει τὰ τῆς  
|ingly | (mid) to lie

easily. You know, I take it, that if supplies were not forthcoming, farewell to this government of yours." "Yes," Cyrus answered, "and that is why Cyaxares is undertaking to provide for all of us who join him, whatever our numbers are." "So," said the father, "and you really mean, my son, that you are relying only on these supplies of Cyaxares for this campaign of yours?" "Yes," answered Cyrus. "And do you know what they amount to?" "No," he said, "I cannot say that I do." "And yet," his father went on, "you are prepared to rely on what you do not know? Do you forget that the needs of the morrow must be high, not to speak of the outlay for the day?" "Oh, no," said Cyrus, "I am well aware of that." "Well," said the father, "suppose the cost is more than Cyaxares can bear, or suppose he actually meant to

*vocabulary*

ἄημι blow

ἀναγκάζω force, compel

ἀναίτιος blameless ~etiology

ἀναμένω wait for ~remain

ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce

ἄπορος impassable, difficult

δείκνυμι (ῶ) show, point out

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

ἔθος ἔθεος (n, 3) custom, habit

~ethology

εἰκός likely

ἐνθένδε hence

ἐνοράω look at, notice something in

ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

ἐρωτάω ask about something

εὐπορέω prosper, abound in, supply

ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

ἵππικός of horses ~hippo

κοινός communal, ordinary

κράτιστος best

μηδέποτε never

μήποτε absolutely never

μηχανάομαι build, contrive

~mechanism

πéριξ all around

ποῖος what kind

πορίζω bring about, provide

πόρος way, bridge ~fare

πόρω aor. give, pf. be fated

ποῦ where?

προσγίγνομαι become ally to

πρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a

rent

σαυτοῦ yourself

σκοπέω behold, consider

στρατιά army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

ὕπηρετέω serve

φίλιος friendly

χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

χρεία need, use

στρατιᾶς; Δῆλον ὅτι οὐ καλῶς. ἀτάρ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, σὺ εἰ ἐνορᾶς τινα πόρον καὶ ἀπ' ἐμοῦ ἂν προσγενόμενον, ἕως ἔτι ἐν φιλίᾳ ἐσμέν, λέγε. Ἐρωτᾶς, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, ποῦ ἂν ἀπὸ σοῦ πόρος προσγένοιτο; ἀπὸ τίνος δὲ μᾶλλον εἰκὸς ἐστὶ πόρον γενέσθαι ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ δύναμιν ἔχοντος; σὺ δὲ πεζὴν μὲν δύναμιν ἐνθένδε ἔχων ἔρχῃ ἀνθ' ἧς οἶδ' ὅτι πολλαπλασίαν ἄλλην οὐκ ἂν δέξαιο, ἵππικὸν δέ σοι, ὅπερ κράτιστον, τὸ Μήδων σύμμαχον ἔσται. ποῖον οὖν ἔθνος τῶν πέριξ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι καὶ χαρίζεσθαι βουλόμενον ὑμῖν ὑπηρετήσῃ καὶ φοβούμενον μή τι πάθῃ; ἃ χρή σε κοινῇ σὺν Κναξάρῃ σκοπεῖσθαι μήποτε ἐπιλίπη τι ὑμᾶς ὧν δεῖ ὑπάρχειν, καὶ ἔθους δὲ ἔνεκα μηχανᾶσθαι προσόδου πόρον. τόδε δὲ πάντων μάλιστά μοι μέμνησο μηδέποτε ἀναμένειν τὸ πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔστ' ἂν ἡ χρεία σε ἀναγκάσῃ· ἀλλ' ὅταν μάλιστα εὐπορήῃς, τότε πρὸ τῆς ἀπορίας μηχανῶ. καὶ γὰρ τεύξῃ μᾶλλον παρ' ὧν ἂν δέῃ μὴ ἄπορος δοκῶν εἶναι, καὶ ἔτι ἀναίτιος ἔσῃ παρὰ τοῖς σαυτοῦ στρατιώταις· ἐκ τούτου δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων



στρατιᾶς; Δῆλον ὅτι οὐ καλῶς. ἀτάρ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ,  
 σὺ εἰ |look at, notice πόρον καὶ ἀπ' ἐμοῦ ἂν |become ally to  
 |something in  
 ἕως ἔτι ἐν |friendly γμέν, λέγε. Ἐρωτᾶς, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, |where?  
 ἂν ἀπὸ σοῦ |way, |become ally to, ἀπὸ τίνος δὲ μᾶλλον  
 |bridge  
 |likely ἐστι πόρον γενέσθαι ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ δύναμιν ἔχοντος;  
 σὺ δὲ πεζὴν μὲν δύναμιν |hence ἔχων ἔρχη ἀνθ' ἧς οἶδ'  
 ὅτι πολλαπλασίαν ἄλλην οὐκ ἂν δέξαιο, |of horses δέ σοι,  
 ὅπερ |best , τὸ Μήδων σύμμαχον ἔσται. ποῖον οὖν  
 ἔθνος τῶν |all around ὁκεῖ σοι καὶ χαρίζεσθαι βουλόμενον  
 ὑμῖν |serve καὶ φοβούμενον μή τι πάθῃ; ἃ χρή σε  
 κοινῇ σὺν Κυαξάρῃ |behold, |absolutely|fail, not work ἐμᾶς  
 |consider |never  
 ὧν δεῖ ὑπάρχειν, καὶ |custom, ἔνεκα |build, contrive |approach, procession; a  
 |habit |rent  
 πόρον. τόδε δὲ πάντων μάλιστά μοι μέμνησο |never  
 |wait for τὸ |bring about, τὰ |fit, suitable ἔστ' ἂν ἡ χρεία  
 |provide  
 σε ἀναγκάσῃ· ἀλλ' ὅταν μάλιστα |prosper, abound πρὸ τῆς  
 |in, supply  
 |difficulty, |build, καὶ γὰρ τεύξῃ μᾶλλον παρ' ὧν ἂν δέῃ  
 |bottleneck |contrive  
 μὴ |impassable, κῶν εἶναι, καὶ ἔτι |blameless ἔσῃ παρὰ τοῖς  
 |difficult  
 σαντοῦ στρατιώταις· ἐκ τούτου δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων

deceive you, how would your soldiers fare?" "Ill enough, no doubt," answered he. "And now tell me, father, while we are still in friendly country, if you know of any resources that I could make my own?" "You want to know where you could find resources of your own?" repeated his father. "And who is to find that out, if not he who holds the keys of power? We have given you a force of infantry that you would not exchange, I feel sure, for one that was more than twice its size; and you will have the cavalry of Media to support you, the finest in the world. I conceive there are none of the nations round about who will not be ready to serve you, whether to win your favour or because they fear disaster. These are matters you must look into carefully, in concert with Cyaxares, so that nothing should ever fail you of what you need, and, if only for habit's sake, you should devise some means for supplying your revenue. Bear this maxim in mind before all others—never put off the collecting of supplies until the day of need, make the season of your abundance provide against the time of dearth. You will gain better terms from those on whom you must depend if you are not thought to be in straits, and, what is more, you will be free from blame in the eyes of your soldiers. That in itself will make you more respected;

*vocabulary***ἀγρός** field, wild ~agriculture**αἰδώς** awe, shame, respect; genitals**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course**ἀργέω** not work; (pass) be fruitless,  
left undone**εἰκός** likely**ἐνδείκνυμι** (ῑ) address, consider**ἐπάγω** drive game; induce belief  
~demagogue**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐργάτης** -ου (ᾱ, m, 1) worker**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**μηδέποτε** never**πορίζω** bring about, provide**σάφα** with full understanding**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**τιμήεις** (ι) honored, precious**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**ὕπηρετέω** serve**φίλιος** friendly

αἰδοῦς τεύξῃ, καὶ ἦν τινος βούλῃ ἢ εὖ ποιῆσαι τῇ δυνάμει  
 ἢ κακῶς, μᾶλλον ἕως ἂν ἔχωσι τὰ δέοντα οἱ στρατιῶται  
 ὑπηρετήσουσί σοι, καὶ πειστικωτέρους, σάφ' ἴσθι, λόγους  
 δυνήσῃ τότε λέγειν ὅταν περ καὶ ἐνδείκνυσθαι μάλιστα  
 δύνῃ καὶ εὖ ποιεῖν ἱκανὸς ὢν καὶ κακῶς. Ἄλλ', ἔφη, ὦ  
 πάτερ, ἄλλως τέ μοι καλῶς δοκεῖς ταῦτα λέγειν πάντα,  
 καὶ ὅτι ὦν μὲν νῦν λέγονται λήψεσθαι οἱ στρατιῶται,  
 οὐδεὶς αὐτῶν ἐμοὶ τούτων χάριν εἴσεται· ἴσασι γὰρ ἐφ' οἷς  
 αὐτοὺς Κναξάρης ἐπάγεται συμμάχους· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς  
 τοῖς εἰρημένοις λαμβάνῃ τις, ταῦτα καὶ τιμὴν νομιοῦσι  
 καὶ χάριν τούτων εἰκὸς εἰδέναι τῷ διδόντι. τὸ δ' ἔχοντα  
 δύναμιν ἢ ἔστι μὲν φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα ἀντωφελεῖσθαι,  
 ἔστι δὲ ἐχθροὺς ἔχοντα πειρᾶσθαι τείσασθαι, ἔπειτ'  
 ἀμελεῖν τοῦ πορίζεσθαι, οἷε τι, ἔφη, ἡττόν τι τοῦτο εἶναι  
 αἰσχρὸν ἢ εἴ τις ἔχων μὲν ἀγρούς, ἔχων δὲ ἐργάτας οἷς  
 ἂν ἐργάζοιτο, ἔπειτ' ἐώῃ τὴν ἀργοῦσαν ἀνωφέλητον εἶναι;  
 Ὡς γ' ἐμοῦ, ἔφη, μηδέποτε ἀμελήσοντος τοῦ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 τοῖς στρατιώταις συμμηχανᾶσθαι μήτ' ἐν φιλίᾳ μήτ' ἐν

|awe, shame, re- spect; genitals καὶ ἦν τινὰς βούλη ἡ εὖ ποιῆσαι τῇ δυνάμει

ἡ κακῶς, μᾶλλον ἕως ἂν ἔχωσι τὰ δέοντα οἱ |soldier, mercenary

|serve σοι, καὶ πειστικωτέρους, |clearly ᾗ, λόγους

δυνήσῃ τότε λέγειν ὅταν περ καὶ |address, consider |very

δύνη καὶ εὖ ποιεῖν |sufficient; fit, καὶ κακῶς. Ἄλλ', ἔφη, ᾧ empowered

πάτερ, ἄλλως τέ μοι καλῶς δοκεῖς ταῦτα λέγειν πάντα,

καὶ ὅτι ὦν μὲν νῦν λέγονται λήψεσθαι οἱ |soldier, mercenary

οὐδεὶς αὐτῶν ἐμοὶ τούτων |grace εἴσεται· ἴσασι γὰρ ἐφ' οἷς

αὐτοὺς Κναξάρης |drive game; ἡμμάχους· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς induce belief

τοῖς εἰρημένοις λαμβάνῃ τις, ταῦτα καὶ τιμὴν |consider customary; believe

καὶ |grace τούτων |likely εἰδέναι τῷ διδόντι. τὸ δ' ἔχοντα

δύναμιν ἣ ἔστι μὲν φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα ἀντωφελεῖσθαι,

ἔστι δὲ |hated, distasteful ... |try, test |pay; (mp) punish ... τ'

|disregard οὐ |bring about, οἶε τι, ἔφη, ἥττον τι τοῦτο εἶναι provide

|shameful ἡ εἴ τις ἔχων μὲν |field, wild ἔχων δὲ |worker οἷς

ἂν |work , ἔπειτ' ἐώη τὴν |not work; (pass), be γτον εἶναι; fruitless, left undone

Ὡς γ' ἐμοῦ, ἔφη, |never |disregard τοῦ τὰ |fit, suitable

τοῖς |soldier, συμμαχανᾶσθαι |neither |friendly |neither mercenary

wherever you desire to help or to hurt, your troops will follow you with greater readiness, so long as they have all they need, and your words, you may be sure, will carry the greater weight the fuller your display of power for weal or woe.”

”Yes, father,” Cyrus said, ”I feel all you say is true, and the more because as things now stand none of my soldiers will thank me for the pay that is promised them. They are well aware of the terms Cyaxares has offered for their help: but whatever they get over and above the covenanted amount they will look upon as a free gift, and for that they will, in all likelihood, feel most gratitude to the giver.” ”True,” said the father, ”and really for a man to have a force with which he could serve his friends and take vengeance on his foes, and yet neglect the supplies for it, would be as disgraceful, would it not? as for a farmer to hold lands and labourers and yet allow fields to lie barren for lack of tillage.”

”No such neglect,” answered the son, ”shall ever be laid at my door. Through friendly lands or hostile, trust me, in this business of supplying my troops

*vocabulary***ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἀνακρίνω** interrogate, examine**ἀποδέω** bind; lack**ἀπόφημι** speak out ~fame**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπερωτάω** consult, ask**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιμιμνήσκομαι** remember, speak about ~mnemonic**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**κράτιστος** best**μισθός** reward, wages**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave**παιδεύω** raise; train**παραμελέω** not pay attention to**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**προθυμία** (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume**ρῶμη** strength, might**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance ~technology**ὕγεια** health**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame

πολεμία οὕτως ἔχε τὴν γνώμην.

Τί γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, τῶν ἄλλων, ὧν ἐδόκει ποθ' ἡμῖν ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι μὴ παραμελεῖν, ἡ μέμνησαι; Οὐ γάρ, ἔφη, μέμνημαι ὅτε ἐγὼ μὲν πρὸς σέ ἦλθον ἐπ' ἀργύριον, ὅπως ἀποδοίην τῷ φάσκοντι στρατηγεῖν με πεπαιδευκέαι, σὺ δὲ ἅμα διδούς μοι ἐπηρώτας ὠδέ πως· Ἄρά γε, εἶπας, ὦ παῖ, ἐν τοῖς στρατηγικοῖς καὶ οἰκονομίας τί σοι ἐπεμνήσθη ὁ ἀνὴρ ὃν τὸν μισθὸν φέρεις; οὐδὲν μέντοι ἦττον οἱ στρατιῶται τῶν ἐπιτηδείων δέονται ἢ οἱ ἐν οἴκῳ οἰκέται. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγὼ σοι λέγων τὰληθῆ εἶπον ὅτι οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν περὶ τούτου ἐπεμνήσθη, ἐπήρου με πάλιν εἴ τί μοι ὑγείας πέρι ἢ ῥώμης ἔλεξεν, ὥς δεῆσον τούτων ὥσπερ καὶ τῆς στρατηγίας τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι. ὥς δὲ καὶ ταῦτ' ἀπέφησα, ἐπήρου με αὖ πάλιν εἴ τινες τέχνας ἐδίδαξεν, αἷ τῶν πολεμικῶν ἔργων κράτισται ἂν σύμμαχοι γένοιτο. ἀποφύσαντος δέ μου καὶ τοῦτο ἀνέκρινας αὖ σὺ καὶ τόδε εἴ τί μ' ἐπαίδευσεν ὥς ἂν δυναίμην στρατιᾷ προθυμίαν ἐμβαλεῖν, λέγων ὅτι τὸ πᾶν διαφέρει ἐν παντὶ ἔργῳ



πολεμία οὕτως ἔχε τὴν γνώμην.

Τί γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, τῶν ἄλλων, ὧν ἐδόκει ποθ' ἡμῖν

ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι μὴ |not pay attention to, νησαι; Οὐ γάρ, ἔφη,

μέμνημαι ὅτε ἐγὼ μὲν πρὸς σέ ἦλθον ἐπ' |small coin, ὅπως

ἀποδοίην τῷ |declare, |be a general με |raise; train, σὺ  
|promise,

δὲ ἅμα διδούς |think |consult, ask ὁδέ |some- |interrogative pcl, ὦ  
|how

παῖ, ἐν τοῖς στρατηγικοῖς καὶ οἰκονομίᾳ τί σοι |remember,  
|speak about

ὁ ἀνὴρ ὦ τὸν |reward, φέρεις; οὐδὲν μέντοι ἦττον οἱ  
|wages

|soldier, τῶν |fit, suitable δέονται ἢ οἱ ἐν οἴκῳ |household;  
|mercenary |house slave

ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγὼ σοι λέγων τάληθῇ εἶπον ὅτι οὐδ' ὅτι οὖν περὶ

τούτου |remember, |ask as well; πάλιν εἴ τί μοι |health  
|speak about |ask then

πέρι ἣ |strength, ἔλεξεν, ὥς δεῖσον τούτων ὥσπερ καὶ τῆς  
|might

στρατηγίας τὸν στρατηγὸν |take care of, ὥς δὲ καὶ ταῦτ'  
|oversee

|speak out, |ask as well; αὖ πάλιν εἴ τινας |craft ἐδίδαξεν, αἱ  
|ask then

τῶν |warlike, ἔργων |best ἂν σύμμαχοι γένοιτο.  
|hostile

|speak out δέ μου καὶ τοῦτο |interrogate, αὖ σὺ καὶ τόδε  
|examine

εἴ τί μ' |raise; train ὥς ἂν δυνάμην |army |zeal, alacrity

|throw in; inspire... ὅτι τὸ πᾶν |carry on; παντὶ ἔργῳ  
|differ; excel

with all they need I will always play my part.”

“Well, my son,” the father resumed, “and do you remember certain other points which we agreed must never be overlooked?” “Could I forget them?” answered Cyrus. “I remember how I came to you for money to pay the teacher who professed to have taught me generalship, and you gave it me, but you asked me many questions. ‘Now, my boy,’ you said, ‘did this teacher you want to pay ever mention economy among the things a general ought to understand? Soldiers, no less than servants in a house, are dependent on supplies.’ And I was forced to tell the truth and admit that not a syllable had been mentioned on that score. Then you asked me if anything had been taught about health and strength, since a true general is bound to think of these matters no less than of tactics and strategy. And when I was forced to say no, you asked me if he had taught me any of the arts which give the best aid in war. Once again I had to say no and then you asked whether he had ever taught me how to kindle enthusiasm in my men. For in every undertaking, you said, there was all the difference in the world between energy and lack of spirit. I shook my head and your examination went on:—Had this teacher laid no stress on the need for obedience in an army, or on the best means of securing discipline? And finally, when it was plain that even this had been

*vocabulary***ἀθυμία** (ῥ) despondency**ἀνανεύω** raise the chin to say no**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἄρρητος** unspoken, unspeakable  
~rhetoric**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse**ἐλέγχω** shame; try, examine**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station**καταφανής** clearly seen**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
~mechanism**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk  
~thesis**πῇ** where? how?**προθυμία** (ῥ) zeal, alacrity ~fume**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy  
~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
~technology**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy**ὕγεια** health**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

προθυμία ἀθυμίας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ἀνένευον, ἤλεγχεσ αὐ  
 σὺ εἴ τινα λόγον ποιήσαιτο διδάσκων περὶ τοῦ πείθεσθαι  
 τὴν στρατιάν, ὥς ἂν τις μάλιστα μηχανῶτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ  
 τοῦτο παντάπασιν ἄρρητον ἐφαίνετο, τέλος δὴ μ' ἐπήρου  
 ὅ τι ποτὲ διδάσκων στρατηγίαν φαίη με διδάσκειν. καὶ γὰρ  
 δὴ ἐνταῦθα ἀποκρίνομαι ὅτι τὰ τακτικά. καὶ σὺ γελάσας  
 διηλθές μοι παρατιθεῖς ἕκαστον τί εἴη ὄφελος στρατιᾷ  
 τακτικῶν ἄνευ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, τί δ' ἄνευ τοῦ ὑγιαίνειν,  
 τί δ' ἄνευ τοῦ ἐπίστασθαι τὰς ἡύρημένους εἰς πόλεμον  
 τέχνας,[...] τί δ' ἄνευ τοῦ πείθεσθαι. ὥς δέ μοι καταφανὲς  
 ἐποίησας ὅτι μικρόν τι μέρος εἴη στρατηγίας τὰ τακτικά,  
 ἐπερομένου μου εἴ τι τούτων σύ με διδάξαι ἱκανὸς εἴης,  
 ἀπιόντα με ἐκέλευσας τοῖς στρατηγικοῖς νομιζομένοις  
 ἀνδράσι διαλέγεσθαι καὶ πυθέσθαι πῇ ἕκαστα τούτων  
 γίγνεται. ἐκ τούτου δ' ἐγὼ συνῆν τούτοις, οὓς μάλιστα  
 φρονίμους περὶ τούτων ἤκουον εἶναι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τροφῆς  
 ἐπείσθην ἱκανὸν εἶναι ὑπάρχον ὅ τι Κνωξάρης ἐμελλε  
 παρέξειν ἡμῖν, περὶ δὲ ὑγείας, ἀκούων καὶ ὁρῶν ὅτι καὶ

προθυμία ἀθυμίας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τοῦτο |raise the|shame; try, examine  
 |chin to say  
 οὐκ εἴ τινα λόγον ποιήσαιο διδάσκων |no  
 περὶ τοῦ πείθεσθαι  
 τὴν |army , ὥς ἂν τις μάλιστα |build, ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ  
 |contrive  
 τοῦτο |altogether; yes, |unspeakable, ἢ ἀίνετο, τέλος δὲ μὲν |ask as well;  
 |certainly |unspeakable |ask then  
 ὅτι ποτὲ διδάσκων |office of com- |αἶψά με διδάσκειν. καὶ γὰρ  
 |mand, strategy  
 δὴ |there, here |ποκρίνομαι ὅτι τὰ τακτικά. καὶ σὺ |laugh,  
 |smile  
 |pierce, μοι |put near, put ἕκαστον τί εἴη |a use, a |army  
 |traverse |at risk |help  
 τακτικῶν |away from; |fit, suitable , τί δ' |away |be healthy,  
 |not having;  
 |not needing  
 τί δ' |away from; not hav- |θαι τὰς ἡρώων |having; not  
 |ing; not needing |needing  
 |craft , [...] τί δ' |away from; not hav- |... ὥς δέ μοι |clearly seen  
 |ing; not needing  
 ἐποίησας ὅτι μικρόν τι μέρος εἴη στρατηγίας τὰ τακτικά,  
 |ask as well; μου εἴ τι τούτων σὺ με διδάξαι |sufficient; |fit,  
 |ask then |empowered  
 |be absent, go ἐκέλευσας τοῖς στρατηγικοῖς νομιζομένοις  
 |away, return  
 ἀνδράσι |go through, debate |πυθέσθαι πῇ ἕκαστα τούτων  
 γίνεται. ἐκ τούτου δ' ἐγὼ |be with; have sex οὕτως μάλιστα  
 |sensible, περὶ τούτων ἤκουον εἶναι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τροφῆς  
 |prudent  
 ἐπέισθην |sufficient; |fit, |ὑπάρχον ὅτι Κναξάρης ἔμελλε  
 |empowered  
 παρέξειν ἡμῖν, περὶ δὲ |health , ἀκούων καὶ ὁρῶν ὅτι καὶ

utterly ignored, you exclaimed, ‘What in the world, then, does your professor claim to have taught you under the name of generalship?’ To that I could at last give a positive answer: ‘He taught me tactics.’ And then you gave a little laugh and ran through your list point by point:—’ And pray what will be the use of tactics to an army without supplies, without health, without discipline, without knowledge of those arts and inventions that are of use in war?’ And so you made it clear to me that tactics and manoeuvres and drill were only a small part of all that is implied in generalship, and when I asked you if you could teach me the rest of it you bade me betake myself to those who stood high in repute as great generals, and talk with them and learn from their lips how each thing should be done. So I consorted with all I thought to be of authority in these matters. As regards our present supplies I was persuaded that what Cyaxares intended to provide was sufficient, and, as for the health of the troops, I was aware that the cities where health was valued appointed medical officers, and the generals who cared for their soldiers took out a medical staff; and so when

*vocabulary*

**ἀκεστός** healable  
**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**ἐκάτερος** each of two  
**ἐνεκεν** because, that  
**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἰάομαι** (ι) cure ~pediatrician  
**ἱατρικός** medicine, medical skill  
**ἱατρός** (ᾱ) physician  
**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth  
**κάμνω** toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick  
**μάρτυς** witness

**μεγαλοπρεπής** befitting greatness  
**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's responsibility  
**νοσέω** be sick, be mad, suffer  
**ρήγνυμι** (ῥ) to break  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance ~technology  
**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy  
**ὕγεια** health  
**χρήζω** need ~chresard  
**χρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) color  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πόλεις αἱ χρήζουσαι ὑγιαίνειν ἰατροὺς αἰροῦνται καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔνεκεν ἰατροὺς ἐξάγουσιν, οὕτω καὶ ἐγὼ ἐπεὶ ἐν τῷ τέλει τούτῳ ἐγενόμην, εὐθὺς τούτου ἐπεμελήθην, καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, πάννυ ἱκανοὺς τὴν ἰατρικὴν τέχνην ἔξειν μετ' ἐμαυτοῦ ἄνδρας. πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ ὁ πατὴρ εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ παῖ, ἔφη, οὗτοι μὲν οὖς λέγεις, ὥσπερ ἱματίων ῥαγέντων εἰσὶ τινες ἀκεσταί, οὕτω καὶ οἱ ἰατροί, ὅταν τινὲς νοσήσωσι, τότε ἰῶνται τούτους· σοὶ δὲ τούτου μεγαλοπρεπεστέρα ἔσται ἡ τῆς ὑγείας ἐπιμέλεια· τὸ γὰρ ἀρχὴν μὴ κάμνειν τὸ στράτευμα, τούτου σοι δεῖ μέλειν. Καὶ τίνα δὴ ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ὁδὸν ἰὼν τοῦτο πράττειν ἱκανὸς ἔσομαι; Ἦν μὲν δήπου χρόνον τινὰ μέλλης ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένειν, ὑγιεινοῦ πρῶτον δεῖ στρατοπέδου μὴ ἀμελήσαι· τούτου δὲ οὐκ ἂν ἀμάρτοις, ἄνπερ μελήσῃ σοι. καὶ γὰρ λέγοντες οὐδὲν παύονται ἄνθρωποι περὶ τε τῶν νοσηρῶν χωρίων καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑγιεινῶν· μάρτυρες δὲ σαφεῖς ἑκατέροις αὐτῶν παρίστανται τὰ τε σώματα καὶ τὰ χρώματα. ἔπειτα δὲ



πόλεις αἱ |need |be healthy |physician *ἰρουνται καὶ οἱ*  
*στρατηγοὶ τῶν* |soldier, *ἔνεκεν* |physician |lead out ,  
 |mercenary  
*οὕτω καὶ ἐγὼ ἐπεὶ ἐν τῷ τέλει τούτῳ ἐγενόμην, εὐθὺς*  
*τούτου* |take care of, *καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, πάννυ ἱκανοὺς*  
 |oversee  
*τὴν* |medicine, |craft *ἔξιν μετ' ἐμαντοῦ ἀνδρας. πρὸς*  
 |medical  
*ταῦτα δὲ ὁ πατήρ* εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ παῖ, ἔφη, οὗτοι μὲν  
 |skill  
*οὕς λέγεις, ὥσπερ* |toga, |to break *εἰσὶ τινες ἀκεσταί,*  
 |cloth  
*οὕτω καὶ οἱ* |physician ἦσαν *τινὲς* |be sick, be, *τότε* |cure  
 |mad, suffer  
*τούτους· σοὶ δὲ τούτου* |befitting greatness *ἔσται ἡ τῆς*  
*|health |attention; as- ὃ γὰρ ἀρχὴν μὴ* |toil, acquire, |army ,  
 |signed task |be tired  
*τούτου σοὶ δεῖ* |be in/on the mind *ἵνα δὲ ἐγὼ, ἔφη, ὦ*  
*πάτερ, ὁδὸν ἰὼν τοῦτο πράττειν ἱκανὸς ἔσομαι; Ἦν μὲν*  
*|perhaps; is ὄνον τινὰ μέλλης ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένειν, ὑγιεινοῦ*  
 |it not so?  
*πρῶτον δεῖ στρατοπέδου μὴ* |disregard *τούτου δὲ οὐκ ἂν*  
*ἀμάρτοις, ἄνπερ μελήσει σοι. καὶ γὰρ λέγοντες οὐδὲν*  
*παύονται ἄνθρωποι περὶ τε τῶν νοσηρῶν* |area; downwards  
*περὶ τῶν ὑγιεινῶν·* |witness *δὲ* |clear, |each of two *ἐπὶ τῶν*  
 |stand, be present *τε σώματα καὶ τὰ* |under-  
 |able |color *ἔπειτα δὲ*

I found myself in this office I gave my mind to the matter at once: and I flatter myself, father," he added, "that I shall have with me an excellent staff of surgeons and physicians." To which the father made reply, "Well, my son, but these excellent men are, after all, much the same as the tailors who patch torn garments. When folk are ill, your doctors can patch them up, but your own care for their health ought to go far deeper than that: your prime object should be to save your men from falling ill at all." "And pray, father," asked Cyrus, "how can I succeed in that?" "Well," answered Cambyses, "I presume if you are to stay long in one place you will do your best to discover a healthy spot for your camp, and if you give your mind to the matter you can hardly fail to find it. Men, we know, are forever discussing what places are healthy and what are not, and their own complexions and the state of their own bodies is the clearest evidence. But

*vocabulary*

**ἀεργός** lazy ~ergonomics  
**ἀργέω** not work; (pass) be fruitless,  
 left undone  
**ἀργός** glistening, swift  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**γεωργέω** farm, till land  
**γεωργός** farming  
**δαψιλής** abundant; generous  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to  
 mind ~ion  
**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops  
**μηδέποτε** never  
**νάος** (ἄ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia

**νή** yea  
**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help  
**παραμένω** stay with ~remain  
**πορσύνω** (ῥ) prepare (the marital bed)  
**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to  
**σαντοῦ** yourself  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy  
**ὕγίεια** health  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

οὐ τὰ χωρία μόνον ἀρκέσει σκέψασθαι, ἀλλὰ μνήσθητι  
 σὺ πῶς πειρᾷ σαυτοῦ ἐπιμελείσθαι ὅπως ὑγιαίνης. καὶ  
 ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Πρῶτον μὲν νῆ Δία πειρώμαι μηδέποτε  
 ὑπερπίμπλασθαι· δύσφορον γάρ· ἔπειτα δὲ ἐκπονῶ τὰ  
 εἰσιόντα· ὕτω γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ἢ τε ὑγεία μᾶλλον  
 παραμένειν καὶ ἰσχύς προσγενέσθαι. ὕτω τοίνυν, ἔφη,  
 ὦ παῖ, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων δεῖ ἐπιμελείσθαι. Ἡ καὶ σχολή,  
 ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ἔσται, σωμασκεῖν τοῖς στρατιώταις; Οὐ  
 μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ πατήρ, οὐ μόνον γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀνάγκη.  
 δεῖ γὰρ δήπου στρατιάν, εἰ μέλλει πράξειν τὰ δέοντα,  
 μηδέποτε παύεσθαι ἢ τοῖς πολεμίοις κακὰ πορσύνουσιν  
 ἢ ἑαυτῇ ἀγαθὰ· ὥς χαλεπὸν μὲν καὶ ἕνα ἄνθρωπον  
 ἀργὸν τρέφεσθαι, πολὺ δ' ἔτι χαλεπώτερον, ὦ παῖ, οἶκον  
 ὅλον, πάντων δὲ χαλεπώτατον στρατιάν ἀργὸν τρέφειν.  
 πλείστα τε γὰρ τὰ ἐσθίοντα ἐν στρατιᾷ καὶ ἀπ' ἐλαχίστων  
 ὀρμώμενα καὶ οἷς ἂν λάβῃ δαιψιλέστατα χρώμενα, ὥστε  
 οὔποτε ἀργεῖν δεήσει στρατιάν. Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ,  
 ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ γεωργοῦ ἀργοῦ οὐδὲν ὄφελος,

οὐ τὰ |area; downwards', κέσει |look, look at, watch' μνήσθητι  
 σὺ πῶς πειρᾷ |yourself |take care of, ὅπως |be healthy καὶ  
 |oversee  
 ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Πρῶτον μὲν νῆ Δία πειρῶμαι |never  
 ὑπερπίμπλασθαι· δύσφορον γάρ· ἔπειτα δὲ ἐκπονῶ τὰ  
 |go in ὕτω γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ἢ τε |health μᾶλλον  
 |stay with καὶ |strength become ally to . ὕτω |well, then ῥη,  
 |body of  
 ὦ παῖ, καὶ τῶν ἀλλῶν δεῖ |take care of, Ἡ καὶ |rest,  
 |oversee |leisure  
 ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ἔσται, σωμασκεῖν τοῖς |soldier,  
 |mercenary, Οὐ  
 μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ πατήρ, οὐ μόνον γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ |necessity  
 δεῖ γὰρ |per- |army , εἰ μέλλει πράξειν τὰ δέοντα,  
 |haps; is  
 |never |it not  
 |so? αὐεῖσθαι ἢ τοῖς πολεμίοις κακὰ |prepare  
 ἢ ἐαυτῇ ἀγαθὰ· ὥς χαλεπὸν μὲν καὶ ἓνα ἄνθρωπον  
 ἀργὸν |nurture , πολὺ δ' ἔτι χαλεπώτερον, ὦ παῖ, οἶκον  
 ὅλον, πάντων δὲ χαλεπώτατον |army ἀργὸν |nurture .  
 πλείστα τε γὰρ τὰ ἐσθίοντα ἐν |army καὶ ἀπ' |smallest, short-  
 |est, fewest  
 ὀρμώμενα καὶ οἷς ἂν λάβῃ |abundant; χρώμενα, ὥστε  
 |generous  
 οὐποτε |not work; (pass)army . Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ,  
 |be fruitless, left  
 |undone  
 ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ γεωργοῦ ἀργοῦ οὐδὲν |a use, a help

you will not content yourself with choosing a site, you will remember the care you take yourself for your own health." "Well," said Cyrus, "my first rule is to avoid over-feeding as most oppressive to the system, and my next to work off all that enters the body: that seems the best way to keep health and gain strength." "My son," Cambyses answered, "these are the principles you must apply to others." "What!" said Cyrus; "do you think it will be possible for the soldiers to diet and train themselves?" "Not only possible," said the father, "but essential. For surely an army, if it is to fulfil its function at all, must always be engaged in hurting the foe or helping itself. A single man is hard enough to support in idleness, a household is harder still, an army hardest of all. There are more mouths to be filled, less wealth to start with, and greater waste; and therefore an army should never be unemployed." "If I take your meaning," answered Cyrus, "you think an idle general as useless as an idle farmer. And here

*vocabulary***ἀγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete**ἀναδέχομαι** catch, receive ~doctrine**ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ū) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀργέω** not work; (pass) be fruitless,  
left undone**ἀσκέω** work on**βλάπτω** break, make fail**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
state ~ballistic**ἐμποιέω** make inside of ~poet**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐργάτης** -ου (ā, m, 1) worker**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
before**προθυμία** (ū) zeal, alacrity ~fume**πρόθυμος** (ū) willing, eager ~fume**προσέχω** belong to, it seems**προτίθημι** set before ~thesis**σάφα** with full understanding**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**χορός** dance; chorus ~terpsichorean**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
~pseudo-

οὕτως οὐδὲ στρατηγοῦ ἀργοῦντος οὐδὲν ὄφελος εἶναι. Τὸν δέ γε ἐργάτην στρατηγὸν ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἀναδέχομαι, ἣν μὴ τις θεὸς βλάβῃ, ἅμα καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια μάλιστα ἔχοντας τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀποδείξειν καὶ τὰ σώματα ἄριστα ἔχοντας παρασκευάσειν. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη, τό γε μελετᾶσθαι ἕκαστα τῶν πολεμικῶν ἔργων, ἀγῶνας ἂν τίς μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, προειπὼν ἐκάστοις καὶ ἅθλα προτιθεῖς μάλιστ' ἂν ποιεῖν εὖ ἀσκεῖσθαι ἕκαστα, ὥστε ὅποτε δέοιτο ἔχειν ἂν παρεσκευασμένοις χρῆσθαι. Κάλλιστα λέγεις, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ· τοῦτο γὰρ ποιήσας, σάφ' ἴσθι, ὥσπερ χοροὺς τὰς τάξεις αἰεὶ τὰ προσήκοντα μελετώσας θεάσῃ.

Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη, εἷς γε τὸ προθυμίαν ἐμβαλεῖν στρατιώταις οὐδὲν μοι δοκεῖ ἰκανώτερον εἶναι ἢ τὸ δύνασθαι ἐλπίδας ἐμποιεῖν ἀνθρώποις. Ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, τοῦτό γε τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν οἰόνπερ εἴ τις κύνας ἐν θήρᾳ ἀνακαλοῖτο αἰεὶ τῇ κλήσει ἥπερ ὅταν τὸ θηρίον ὁρᾷ. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πρῶτον προθύμως εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἔχει ὑπακουούσας· ἣν δὲ πολλάκις ψεύδεται αὐτάς, τελευτῶσαι οὐδ' ὅποταν



οὕτως οὐδὲ στρατηγού |not work; (pass) be|a use, a help... Τὸν  
|fruitless, left undone

δέ γε |worker στρατηγὸν ἐγώ, ἔφη, |receive , ἣν μή τις

θεὸς |break, make, fail... αὐτὰ |fit, suitable μάλιστα ἔχοντας τοὺς

|soldier, |show, point out; ap- σώματα ἄριστα ἔχοντας  
|mercenary |point; (mid) declare

παρασκευάσειν. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη, τό γε |pursue, attend  
|to, exercise

ἕκαστα τῶν |warlike, ἔργων, |gathering ἵν τις μοι δοκεῖ,  
|hostile |place

ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, |foretell, proclaim, τοῖς καὶ |prize |set before  
|order before

μάλιστα ἂν ποιεῖν εὖ |work on ἕκαστα, ὥστε ὁπότε δέοιτο

ἔχειν ἂν παρεσκευασμένοις χρῆσθαι. Κάλλιστα λέγεις,

ἔφη, ὦ παῖ· τοῦτο γὰρ ποιήσας, |clearly, ἵθι, ὥσπερ |dance;  
|chorus

τὰς τάξεις αὐτὰ |belong to, it be- |pursue, attend ἵαση.  
|seems |to, exercise

Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη, εἷς γε τὸ |zeal, alacrity |throw in; inspire

|soldier, οὐδέν μοι δοκεῖ ἱκανώτερον εἶναι ἢ τὸ  
|mercenary

δύνασθαι ἐλπίδας |make inside of, ὥποις. Ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,

τοῦτό γε τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν οἷόνπερ εἴ τις κύνας ἐν |hunt

|call, summon, αὐτὴν κλήσει ἥπερ ὅταν τὸ θηρίον ὁρᾷ. τὸ  
|recall

μὲν γὰρ πρῶτον |willing, εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἔχει |listen, reply  
|eager

ἣν δὲ |often |be false, deceive; |bring about, οὐδ' ὁπότε  
|(mid) to lie |finish

and now I answer for the working general, and promise on his behalf that with God's help he will show you that his troops have all they need and their bodies are all they ought to be. And I think," he added, "I know a way by which an officer might do much towards training his men in the various branches of war. Let him propose competitions of every kind and offer prizes; the standard of skill will rise, and he will soon have a body of troops ready to his hand for any service he requires." "Nothing could be better," answered the father. "Do this, and you may be sure you will watch your regiments at their manoeuvres with as much delight as if they were a chorus in the dance."

"And then," continued Cyrus, "to rouse enthusiasm in the men, there can be nothing, I take it, like the power of kindling hope?" "True," answered his father, "but that alone would be as though a huntsman were for ever rousing his pack with the view-halloo. At first, of course, the hounds will answer eagerly enough, but after they have been cheated once or twice they will end by refusing the call even when the quarry is really in

*vocabulary***ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite**ἀπείρων** boundless**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**διασώζω** preserve through**διδάσκαλος** teacher**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐνετός** inserted; suborned**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics**ἔφηβος** aged 18**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**ναί** yea**παιδεύω** raise; train**παιδίον** young child; slave**παρακέλευσις** -εως (f) cheering on**προτρέπω** prompt, urge, compel; (mp)

go, flee to ~trophy

**σαυτοῦ** yourself**σαφής** clear, understandable**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**τοίνυν** well, then**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

ἀληθῶς ὁρῶν καλῇ πείθονται αὐτῷ. οὕτω καὶ τὸ περὶ τῶν ἐλπίδων ἔχει· ἦν πολλάκις προσδοκίας ἀγαθῶν ἐμβαλὼν ψεύδεται τις, οὐδ' ὅποταν ἀληθεὺς ἐλπίδας λέγῃ ὁ τοιοῦτος πείθειν δύναται. ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν αὐτὸν λέγειν ἂ μὴ σαφῶς εἰδείῃ εἶργεσθαι δεῖ, ὦ παῖ, ἄλλοι δ' ἐνετοὶ λέγοντες ταῦτ' ἂν διαπράττοιεν· τὴν δ' αὐτοῦ παρακέλευσιν εἰς τοὺς μεγίστους κινδύνους δεῖ ὡς μάλιστα ἐν πίστει διασῶζειν. Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ τὸν Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ πάτερ, καλῶς μοι δοκεῖς λέγειν, καὶ ἐμοὶ οὕτως ἥδιον. τό γε μὴν πειθομένους παρέχεσθαι τοὺς στρατιώτας, οὐκ ἀπείρως μοι δοκῶ αὐτοῦ ἔχειν, ὦ πάτερ· σύ τε γάρ με εὐθὺς τοῦτο ἐκ παιδίου ἐπαίδευες, σαντῷ πείθεσθαι ἀναγκάζων· ἔπειτα τοῖς διδασκάλοις παρέδωκας, καὶ ἐκεῖνοι αὖ τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔπραττον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν τοῖς ἐφήβοις ἦμεν, ὁ ἄρχων τοῦ αὐτοῦ τούτου ἰσχυρῶς ἐπεμελεῖτο· καὶ οἱ νόμοι δέ μοι δοκοῦσιν οἱ πολλοὶ ταῦτα δύο μάλιστα διδάσκειν, ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. καὶ τοῖνυν κατανοῶν περὶ τούτων ἐν πᾶσιν ὁρᾶν μοι δοκῶ τὸ προτρεπόν πείθεσθαι

|true;  
|careful ὁρῶν καλῇ πείθονται αὐτῷ. οὕτω καὶ τὸ περὶ τῶν  
 |hope ἔχει· ἦν |often προσδοκίας ἀγαθῶν |throw in; inspire  
 |be false, deceive; (mid) to lie ἵδ' ὅποταν |true; |hope λέγει ὁ τοιοῦτος  
 |careful πείθειν δύναται. ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν αὐτὸν λέγειν ἂ μὴ |clear, under-  
 |standable εἰδείη |bound, fend off; do αἱ, ἄλλοι δ' |inserted; |suborned  
 |travel over, ac- τὴν δ' αὐτοῦ |cheering on εἰς τοὺς  
 |complish μεγίστους |danger δεῖ ὡς μάλιστα ἐν |faith; |preserve  
 |treaty, |through Ἀλλὰ |yea μὰ τὸν Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, |proof, |credit  
 |sweet μοι δοκεῖς λέγειν, καὶ ἐμοὶ οὕτως |sweet τό γε μὴν  
 |furnish πειθομένους |furnish τοὺς |soldier, |mercenary  
 |mercenary μοι δοκῶ αὐτοῦ ἔχειν, ὦ πάτερ· σύ τε γάρ με εὐθὺς τοῦτο  
 ἐκ παιδίου |raise; train |yourself τείθεσθαι |force, compel ἔπειτα  
 τοῖς |teacher |hand over , καὶ ἐκεῖνοι αὐτὸ τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο  
 ἔπραττον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν τοῖς |aged 18 ἦμεν, ὁ ἄρχων τοῦ αὐτοῦ  
 τούτου |strong, |take care of, |oversee οἱ νόμοι δέ μοι δοκοῦσιν  
 |violent οἱ πολλοὶ τὰυτα δύο μάλιστα διδάσκειν, ἄρχειν τε καὶ  
 ἄρχεσθαι. καὶ |well, |notice, real- περὶ τούτων ἐν πᾶσιν  
 |then |ize, learn ὁρᾶν μοι δοκῶ τὸ |prompt, urge, com-  
 |pel; (mp) go, flee to

sight. And so it is with hope. Let a man rouse false expectations often enough, and in the end, even when hope is at the door, he may cry the good news in vain. Rather ought he to refrain from speaking positively himself when he cannot know precisely; his agents may step in and do it in his place; but he should reserve his own appeal for the supreme crises of supreme danger, and not dissipate his credit."

"By heaven, a most admirable suggestion!" cried Cyrus, "and one much more to my mind! As for enforcing obedience, I hope I have had some training in that already; you began my education yourself when I was a child by teaching me to obey you, and then you handed me over to masters who did as you had done, and afterwards, when we were lads, my fellows and myself, there was nothing on which the governors laid more stress. Our laws themselves, I think, enforce this double lesson: — 'Rule thou and be thou ruled.' And when I come to study the secret of it all, I seem to see that the real incentive to

*vocabulary***ἀνύσιμος** effective; feasible**ἀπειθέω** disobey**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**ἀτιμάζω** (ι) insult, dishonor**εἶκω** yield; seem likely, (pf+dat) seem like, (pf) be fit/worthy of/to ~victor**έκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπαίρω** lift, raise ~heresy**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**έπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ζημία** loss, penalty ~zeal**ίσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**κάμνω** toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick**κολάζω** punish**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**κυβερνήτης** -ου (m, 1) steersman, governor ~govern**πρόθυμος** (ῥ) willing, eager ~fume**συμπλέω** sail with ~float**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear**σύντομος** truncated, concise**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

μάλιστα ὃν τὸ τὸν πειθόμενον ἐπαινεῖν τε καὶ τιμᾶν,  
 τὸν δὲ ἀπειθοῦντα ἀτιμάζειν τε καὶ κολάζειν. Καὶ ἐπὶ  
 μέν γε τὸ ἀνάγκη ἔπεσθαι αὕτη, ὦ παῖ, ἡ ὁδὸς ἐστίν·  
 ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κρεῖττον τούτου πολὺ, τὸ ἐκόντας πείθεσθαι,  
 ἄλλη ἐστὶ συντομωτέρα. ὃν γὰρ ἂν ἡγήσωνται περὶ  
 τοῦ συμφέροντος ἑαυτοῖς φρονιμώτερον ἑαυτῶν εἶναι,  
 τούτῳ οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὑπερηδέως πείθονται. γνοίης δ' ἂν  
 ὅτι τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει ἐν ἄλλοις τε πολλοῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 ἐν τοῖς κάμνουσιν, ὥς προθύμως τοὺς ἐπιτάζοντας ὅ τι  
 χρὴ ποιεῖν καλοῦσι· καὶ ἐν θαλάττῃ δὲ ὥς προθύμως  
 τοῖς κυβερνήταις οἱ συμπλέοντες πείθονται· καὶ οὓς γ' ἂν  
 νομίσωσί τινες βέλτιον αὐτῶν ὁδοὺς εἰδέναι, ὥς ἰσχυρῶς  
 τούτων οὐδ' ἀπολείπεσθαι θέλουσιν. ὅταν δὲ οἴωνται  
 πειθόμενοι κακόν τι λήψεσθαι, οὔτε ζημίαις πάνν τι  
 θέλουσιν εἴκειν οὔτε δώροις ἐπαίρεσθαι. οὐδὲ γὰρ δῶρα  
 ἐπὶ τῷ αὐτοῦ κακῷ ἐκὼν οὐδεὶς λαμβάνει. Λέγεις σύ, ὦ  
 πάτερ, εἰς τὸ πειθομένους ἔχειν οὐδὲν εἶναι ἀνυσιμώτερον  
 τοῦ φρονιμώτερον δοκεῖν εἶναι τῶν ἀρχομένων. Λέγω



μάλιστα ὃν τὸ τὸν πειθόμενον |concur τε καὶ |honor  
 τὸν δὲ |disobey |dishonor τε καὶ |punish . Καὶ ἐπὶ  
 μέν γε τὸ |necessity ἔπεςθαι αὕτη, ᾧ παι, ἡ ὁδὸς ἐστίν·  
 ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κρείττον τούτου πολὺ, τὸ |willingly πείθεσθαι,  
 ἄλλη ἐστὶ |truncated, ὃν γὰρ ἂν ἡγήσωνται περὶ  
 τοῦ |bring together; be expēdi-|sensible, prudent ἐαυτῶν εἶναι,  
 |ent; agree; (mp) happen  
 τούτῳ οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὑπερηδέως πείθονται. γνοίης δ' ἂν  
 ὅτι τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει ἐν ἄλλοις τε πολλοῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 ἐν τοῖς |toil, acquire, be|willing, τοὺς |enjoin; place ὅ τι  
 |tired |eager |near  
 |must, ... μῆν καλοῦσι· καὶ ἐν θαλάττῃ δὲ ὥς |willing,  
 |should |eager  
 τοῖς |steersman, οἱ |sail with πείθονται· καὶ οὗς γ' ἂν  
 |governor  
 |consider cus-; βέλτιον αὐτῶν ὁδοὺς εἰδέναι, ὥς |strong, force-  
 |tomary; believe |ful, violent  
 τούτων οὐδ' ἀπολείπεσθαι θέλουσιν. |whenever οἷωνται  
 πειθόμενοι κακόν τι λήψεσθαι, οὔτε |loss, |altogether, very  
 |penalty  
 θέλουσιν |yield; seem|gift |lift, raise οὐδὲ γὰρ |gift  
 |likely,  
 ἐπὶ τῷ αἰσίου καὶ |like, (pf) be |willingly· δεῖς λαμβάνει. Λέγεις σύ, ᾧ  
 |fit/worthy  
 πάτερ, εἰς τὸν πειθομένους ἔχειν οὐδὲν εἶναι |effective; feasible  
 τοῦ |sensible, prudent δοκεῖν εἶναι τῶν ἀρχομένων. Λέγω

obedience lies in the praise and honour that it wins against the discredit and the chastisement which fall on the disobedient.” “That, my son,” said the father, “is the road to the obedience of compulsion. But there is a shorter way to a nobler goal, the obedience of the will. When the interests of mankind are at stake, they will obey with joy the man whom they believe to be wiser than themselves. You may prove this on all sides: you may see how the sick man will beg the doctor to tell him what he ought to do, how a whole ship’s company will listen to the pilot, how travellers will cling to the one who knows the way better, as they believe, than they do themselves. But if men think that obedience will lead them to disaster, then nothing, neither penalties, nor persuasion, nor gifts, will avail to rouse them. For no man accepts a bribe to his own destruction.” “You would have me understand,” said Cyrus, “that the best way to

*vocabulary*

**ἀλαζών** -όνος (m, 3) charlatan, boaster  
**άνθρωπινος** human  
**ἄρτι** at the same time  
**αὐλητής** -οῦ (m, 1) flute player  
**γεωργός** farming  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
**ἐξελέγχω** convict, refute, test  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**ἱατρός** (ἄ) physician  
**κατασκευή** fixed assets; condition  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**μαντικός** prophetic  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**ὅπου** where

**πείρα** an attempt

**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce

**πόσος** how many, much, far?

**πρόνοια** foresight, providence

**προσέτι** in addition

**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe

**σκοπέω** behold, consider

**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,

target ~telescope

**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**σύντομος** truncated, concise

**ὕστερον** later

**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη. Καὶ πῶς δὴ τις ἄν, ὦ πάτερ, τοιαύτην δόξαν τάχιστα περὶ αὐτοῦ παρασχέσθαι δύναιτο; Οὐκ ἔστιν ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, συντομωτέρα ὁδὸς ἐπὶ τό, περὶ ὧν βούλει, δοκεῖν φρόνιμος εἶναι ἢ τὸ γενέσθαι περὶ τούτων φρόνιμον. καθ' ἓν δ' ἕκαστον σκοπῶν γνώσῃ ὅτι ἐγὼ ἀληθῆ λέγω. ἦν γὰρ βούλη μὴ ὧν ἀγαθὸς γεωργὸς δοκεῖν εἶναι ἀγαθός, ἢ ἵππεὺς ἢ ἰατρὸς ἢ αὐλητῆς ἢ ἄλλ' ὅτιοῦν, ἐννόει πόσα σε δέοι ἂν μηχανᾶσθαι τοῦ δοκεῖν ἔνεκα. καὶ εἰ δὴ πείσαις ἐπαινεῖν τέ σε πολλούς, ὅπως δόξαν λάβοις, καὶ κατασκευὰς καλὰς ἐφ' ἑκάστῳ αὐτῶν κτήσαιο, ἄρτι τε ἐξηπατηκῶς εἴης ἂν καὶ ὀλίγῳ ὕστερον, ὅπου πείραν δοίης, ἐξεληλεγμένος ἂν προσέτι καὶ ἀλαζῶν φαίνοιο. Φρόνιμος δὲ περὶ τοῦ συνοίσειν μέλλοντος πῶς ἂν τις τῷ ὄντι γένοιτο; Δῆλον, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, ὅτι ὅσα μὲν ἔστι μαθόντα εἰδέναι, μαθὼν ἄν, ὥσπερ τὰ τακτικὰ ἔμαθες· ὅσα δὲ ἀνθρώποις οὔτε μαθητὰ οὔτε προορατὰ ἀνθρωπίνῃ προνοίᾳ, διὰ μαντικῆς ἂν παρὰ θεῶν πυνθανόμενος φρονιμώτερος ἄλλων εἴης· ὅ τι δὲ

γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη. Καὶ πῶς δὴ τις ἄν, ὦ πάτερ, τοιαύτην  
 δόξαν τάχιστα περὶ αὐτοῦ παρασχέσθαι δύναιτο; Οὐκ  
 ἔστιν ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, |truncated, οὐδὲς ἐπὶ τό, περὶ ὧν  
 |concise  
 βούλει, δοκεῖν |sensible, εἶναι ἢ τὸ γενέσθαι περὶ τούτων  
 |prudent  
 |sensible, καθ' ἓν δ' ἕκαστον σκοπῶν γνώσῃ ὅτι ἐγὼ  
 |prudent  
 |true; λέγω. ἦν γὰρ βούλη μὴ ὧν ἀγαθὸς |farming  
 |careful  
 δοκεῖν εἶναι ἀγαθός, ἢ |rider ἢ |physician, |flute ἢ  
 |player  
 ἄλλ' ὅτιοῦν, |consider|how many, mûch, fâr? |build, contrive τοῦ  
 δοκεῖν ἔνεκα. καὶ εἰ δὴ πείσαις |concur τέ σε πολλούς,  
 ὅπως δόξαν λάβοις, καὶ |fixed assets; καλὰς ἐφ' ἐκάστῳ  
 |condition  
 αὐτῶν κτήσαιο, |at the|trick, cheat εἴης ἂν καὶ ὀλίγῳ  
 |same time  
 ὕστερον, |where πείραν δοίης, |convict, refute, ἂν |in addition  
 |test  
 καὶ |charlatan, φαίνοιο. |sensible, δὲ περὶ τοῦ |bring together; be ex-  
 |boaster |prudent |pedient; agree; (mp)  
 μέλλοντος πῶς ἂν τις τῷ ὄντι γένοιτο; |visible, |happen ὦ  
 |conspicuous  
 παῖ, ὅτι ὅσα μὲν ἔστι |learn εἰδέναι, |learn ἂν, ὥσπερ  
 τὰ τακτικά |learn ὅσα δὲ ἀνθρώποις οὔτε μαθητὰ οὔτε  
 προορατὰ |human |foresight, , prôvî-|prophetic ἂν παρὰ  
 |dence  
 θεῶν |learn, inquire.|sensible, prudent ἄλλων εἴης· ὅ τι δὲ  
 |(+gen) hear of

secure obedience is to be thought wiser than those we rule?" "Yes," said Cambyses, "that is my belief."

"And what is the quickest way," asked Cyrus, "to win that reputation?"

"None quicker, my lad, than this: wherever you wish to seem wise, be wise. Examine as many cases as you like, and you will find that what I say is true. If you wished to be thought a good farmer, a good horseman, a good physician, a good flute-player, or anything else whatever, without really being so, just imagine what a world of devices you would need to invent, merely to keep up the outward show! And suppose you did get a following to praise you and cry you up, suppose you did burden yourself with all kinds of paraphernalia for your profession, what would come of it all? You succeed at first in a very pretty piece of deception, and then by and by the test comes, and the impostor stands revealed."

"But," said Cyrus, "how can a man really and truly attain to the wisdom that will serve his turn?"

"Well, my son, it is plain that where learning is the road to wisdom, learn you must, as you learnt your battalion-drill, but when it comes to matters which are not to be learnt by mortal men, nor foreseen by mortal minds, there you can only become wiser than others by communicating with the gods through the art of divination. But, always, wherever you know that a thing ought to be done, see

*vocabulary*

**ἄλιόω** thwart, use ineffectively  
**ἄμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἥλιος** sun  
**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos  
**θέρω** warm up ~thermos  
**μόχθος** toil  
**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia

**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business  
 ~practice  
**προθυμέομαι** (ὄ) be eager  
**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia  
**στέργω** love; be content  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**συνήδομαι** rejoice, sympathize with  
**σφάλλω** overthrow, balk, stagger  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**ψυχός** -εος (n, 3) coolness  
 ~psychology

γνοίης βέλτιον ὃν πραχθῆναι, ἐπιμελόμενος ἂν τούτου  
 ὥς ἂν πραχθείη. καὶ γὰρ τὸ ἐπιμελείσθαι οὐδ' ἂν δέη  
 φρονιμωτέρου ἀνδρὸς ἢ τὸ ἀμελεῖν. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι ἐπὶ  
 τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων, ὅπερ ἔμοιγε ἐν τοῖς  
 μεγίστοις δοκεῖ εἶναι, δῆλον ὅτι ἡ αὐτὴ ὁδὸς ἥπερ εἴ  
 τις ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων στέργεσθαι ἐπιθυμοίη· εὖ γὰρ οἶμαι  
 δεῖν ποιῶντα φανερόν εἶναι. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μέν, ἔφη,  
 ὦ παῖ, χαλεπὸν τὸ ἀεὶ δύνασθαι εὖ ποιεῖν οὕς ἂν τις  
 ἐθέλῃ· τὸ δὲ συνηδόμενόν τε φαίνεσθαι, ἣν τι ἀγαθὸν  
 αὐτοῖς συμβαίνει, καὶ συναχθόμενον, ἣν τι κακόν, καὶ  
 συνεπικουρεῖν προθυμούμενον ταῖς ἀπορίαις αὐτῶν, καὶ  
 φοβούμενον μή τι σφαλῶσι, καὶ προνοεῖν πειρώμενον ὥς  
 μὴ σφάλωνται, ταῦτά πως δεῖ μᾶλλον συμπαρομαρτεῖν.  
 καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν πράξεων δέ, ἣν μὲν ἐν θέρει ὦσι, τὸν ἄρχοντα  
 δεῖ τοῦ ἡλίου πλεονεκτοῦντα φανερόν εἶναι· ἣν δὲ ἐν  
 χειμῶνι, τοῦ ψύχους· ἣν δὲ διὰ μόχθων, τῶν πόνων·  
 πάντα γὰρ ταῦτα εἰς τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων  
 συλλαμβάνει. Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ὥς



γνοίης βέλτιον ὃν πραχθῆναι, ἐπιμελόμενος ἂν τούτου  
 ὥς ἂν πραχθείη. καὶ γὰρ τὸ |take care of, οὐ ἂν δέη  
 |oversee  
 |sensible, prudent ἀνδρὸς ἢ τὸ |disregard Ἀλλὰ |however ἔπι  
 τὸ |love ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων, ὅπερ ἔμοιγε ἐν τοῖς  
 μεγίστοις δοκεῖ εἶναι, |visible, ἢ αὐτὴ ὁδὸς ἥπερ εἶ  
 |conspicuous  
 τις ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων |love; be con-|wish, covet εὖ γὰρ οἶμαι  
 |tent  
 δεῖν ποιῶντα |visible, εἶναι. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μέν, ἔφη,  
 |conspicuous  
 ὦ παῖ, |hard to bear ἂν εὖ δύνασθαι εὖ ποιεῖν οὕς ἂν τις  
 ἐθέλῃ· τὸ δὲ |rejoice, sympa- τε φαίνεσθαι, ἥν τι ἀγαθὸν  
 |thize with  
 αὐτοῖς |agree; , καὶ συναχθόμενον, ἥν τι κακόν, καὶ  
 |occur  
 συνεπικουρεῖν |be eager ταῖς |difficulty, αὐτῶν, καὶ  
 |bottleneck  
 |scare, scare μή τι |overthrow, balk |foresee, πειρώμενον ὥς  
 |away |think of  
 μὴ |overthrow, balk αὐτά |somehow ἱάλλον συμπαρομαρτεῖν.  
 καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν |result, δέ, ἥν μὲν ἐν θέρει ὦσι, τὸν ἄρχοντα  
 |business  
 δεῖ τοῦ ἡλίου |be greedy, take ad-|visible, εἶναι· ἥν δὲ ἐν  
 |vantage |conspicuous  
 |winter, τοῦ |coolness ἥν δὲ διὰ |toil , τῶν |toil, suffering  
 |storm  
 πάντα γὰρ ταῦτα εἰς τὸ |love ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων  
 |seize, capture; Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, ὥς  
 |understand

that it is done, and done with care; for care, not carelessness, is the mark of the wise man."

"And now," said Cyrus, "to win the affection of those we rule—and there is nothing, I take it, of greater importance—surely the path to follow lies open to all who desire the love of their friends. We must, I mean, show that we do them good." "Yes, my child, but to do good really at all seasons to those we wish to help is not always possible: only one way is ever open, and that is the way of sympathy; to rejoice with the happy in the day of good things, to share their sorrow when ill befalls them, to lend a hand in all their difficulties, to fear disaster for them, and guard against it by foresight—these, rather than actual benefits, are the true signs of comradeship. And so in war; if the campaign is in summer the general must show himself greedy for his share of the sun and the heat, and in winter for the cold and the frost, and in all labours for toil and fatigue. This will help to make him beloved of his followers." "You mean, father," said Cyrus, "that a commander should always be

*vocabulary*

**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic  
**ἀσκέω** work on  
**διαγωνίζομαι** contend against  
**ἐπικουφίζω** lighten a load  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman

**καρτερός** strong, staunch  
**ναί** yea  
**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance ~technology  
**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case  
**τόσος** so much, so great  
**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy

καὶ καρτερώτερον δεῖ πρὸς πάντα τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχομένων εἶναι. Λέγω γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη. θάρρει μέντοι τοῦτο, ὦ παῖ· εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι τῶν ὁμοίων σωμάτων οἱ αὐτοὶ πόνοι οὐχ ὁμοίως ἄπτονται ἄρχοντός τε ἀνδρὸς καὶ ἰδιώτου, ἀλλ' ἐπικουφίζει τι ἢ τιμὴ τοὺς πόνους τῷ ἄρχοντι καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ εἰδέναι ὅτι οὐ λανθάνει ὅ τι ἂν ποιῇ.

Ὅποτε δέ, ὦ πάτερ, σοι ἤδη ἔχοιεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οἱ στρατιῶται, ὑγιαίνοιεν δέ, πονεῖν δὲ δύναιντο, τὰς δὲ πολεμικὰς τέχνας ἡσκηκότες εἶεν, φιλοτίμως δ' ἔχοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἀγαθοὶ φαίνεσθαι, τὸ δὲ πείθεσθαι αὐτοῖς ἥδιον εἶη τοῦ ἀπειθεῖν, οὐκ ἂν τηνικαῦτα σωφρονεῖν ἂν τίς σοι δοκοίη διαγωνίζεσθαι βουλόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ὡς τάχιστα; Ναὶ μὰ Δῖ, ἔφη, εἰ μέλλοι γε πλεόν ἔξειν· εἰ δὲ μή, ἔγωγ' ἂν ὅσῳ οἰοίμην καὶ αὐτὸς βελτίων εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἐπομένους βελτίονας ἔχειν, τόσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον φυλαττοίμην, ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ ἂν οἰώμεθα πλείστου ἡμῖν ἄξια εἶναι, ταῦτα πειρώμεθα ὡς ἐν ἐχυρωτάτῳ ποιεῖσθαι. Πλέον δ' ἔχειν, ὦ πάτερ, πολεμίων πῶς

καὶ |strong, staunch δειὶ πρὸς πάντα τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν  
 ἀρχομένων εἶναι. Λέγω γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη. θάρρει |however  
 τοῦτο, ὦ παῖ· εἶ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι τῶν |like |body, οἱ  
 αὐτοὶ |toil, suffering μοίως ἅπτονται ἄρχοντος |person, thing  
 καὶ |private; a layman |lighten a load .ι ἡ |honor, οὐς |toil, suffering  
 ἄρχοντι καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ εἰδέναι ὅτι οὐ |value  
 |escape notice; ἔν ποιῇ.  
 |when δέ, ὦ πάτερ, σοι ἤδη ἔχοιεν μὲν τὰ |fit, suitable  
 οἱ |soldier, |be healthy δέ, |work δὲ δύναιτο, τὰς δὲ  
 |mercenary  
 |warlike, |craft |work on εἶεν, φιλοτίμως δ' ἔχοιεν  
 |hostile  
 πρὸς τὸ ἀγαθοὶ φαίνεσθαι, τὸ δὲ πείθεσθαι αὐτοῖς |sweet  
 εἴη τοῦ |disobey , οὐκ ἂν |at that time, |be sane, moderate 'ς σοι  
 |in that case  
 δοκοίη |contend against βουλόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ὡς  
 τάχιστα; |yea μὰ Δι', ἔφη, εἰ μέλλοι γε πλέον ἔξειν· εἰ δὲ  
 μή, ἔγωγ' ἂν ὅσῳ οἰοίμην καὶ αὐτὸς βελτίων εἶναι καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐπομένους βελτίονας ἔχειν, |so much, so great |guard; watch ,  
 ὥσπερ καὶ τὰλλα ἃ ἂν οἰώμεθα πλείστου ἡμῖν |worthy· ναι,  
 ταῦτα πειρώμεθα ὡς ἐν |secure; ποιεῖσθαι. Πλέον δ'  
 |persuasive  
 ἔχειν, ὦ πάτερ, πολεμίων |how? why?

stouter-hearted in everything than those whom he commands." "Yes, my son, that is my meaning," said he; "only be well assured of this: the princely leader and the private soldier may be alike in body, but their sufferings are not the same: the pains of the leader are always lightened by the glory that is his and by the very consciousness that all his acts are done in the public eye."

"But now, father, suppose the time has come, and you are satisfied that your troops are well supplied, sound in wind and limb, well able to endure fatigue, skilled in the arts of war, covetous of honour, eager to show their mettle, anxious to follow, would you not think it well to try the chance of battle without delay?" "By all means," said the father, "if you are likely to gain by the move: but if not, for my own part, the more I felt persuaded of my own superiority and the power of my troops, the more I should be inclined to stand on my guard, just as we put our greatest treasures in the safest place we have." "But how can a man make

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἄκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἁπλόος** single; simple ~haploid  
**ἁπλόω** spread, unfold  
**ἄρκτος** (f) bear  
**ἄρπεδόνη** yarn, cord  
**δῆτα** emphatic δῆ  
**δολερός** deceitful  
**δολόεις** tricky; well made  
**δολώω** trick, trap, disguise  
**ἔλαφος** (f) deer  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἔφηβος** aged 18  
**κακουργία** evil deeds ~ergonomics  
**κλέπτης** -ου (m, 1) thief  
**λάω** grip, pin?  
**λέων** lion  
**ναί** yea  
**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural  
**ὄρυγμα** -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel  
**πάρδαλις** -ος (f) leopard  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**ὕς** pig ~sow  
**φασῦλος** trifling

ἂν τις δύναιτο μάλιστα; Οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, οὐκέτι τοῦτο  
 φαῦλον, ὦ παῖ, οὐδ' ἀπλοῦν ἔργον ἐρωτᾷς· ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσθι  
 ὅτι δεῖ τὸν μέλλοντα τοῦτο ποιήσῃν καὶ ἐπίβουλον εἶναι  
 καὶ κρυψίνουν καὶ δολερὸν καὶ ἀπατεῶνα καὶ κλέπτην καὶ  
 ἄρπαγα καὶ ἐν παντὶ πλεονέκτην τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ ὁ  
 Κῦρος ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν· ὦ Ἡράκλεις, οἷον σὺ λέγεις, ὦ  
 πάτερ, δεῖν ἄνδρα με γενέσθαι. Οἷος ἂν ὢν, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
 δικαιοτάτος τε καὶ νομιμώτατος ἀνὴρ εἴης. Πῶς μὴν,  
 ἔφη, παῖδας ὄντας ἡμᾶς καὶ ἐφήβους τάναντία τούτων  
 ἐδιδάσκετε; ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, καὶ νῦν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους τε  
 καὶ πολίτας· ὅπως δέ γε τοὺς πολεμίους δύναισθε κακῶς  
 ποιεῖν οὐκ οἶσθα μανθάνοντας ὑμᾶς πολλὰς κακουργίας;  
 Οὐ δῆτα, ἔφη, ἔγωγε, ὦ πάτερ. Τίνος μὴν ἔνεκα, ἔφη,  
 ἐμανθάνετε τοξεύειν; τίνος δ' ἔνεκα ἀκοντίζειν; τίνος δ'  
 ἔνεκα δολοῦν ὧς ἀγρίους καὶ πλέγμασι καὶ ὀρύγμασι; τί  
 δ' ἐλάφους ποδάγραῖς καὶ ἄρπεδόναῖς; τί δὲ λέουσι καὶ  
 ἄρκτοις καὶ παρδάλεσιν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴσον καθιστάμενοι  
 ἐμάχεσθε, ἀλλὰ μετὰ πλεονεξίας



ἄν τις δύναίτο μάλιστα; Οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, |no more οὗτο  
 |trifling , ὦ παῖ, οὐδ' ἀπλοῦν ἔργον |ask ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσθι  
 ὅτι δεῖ τὸν μέλλοντα τοῦτο ποιήσῃν καὶ ἐπίβουλον εἶναι  
 καὶ κρυψίνου καὶ |deceitful καὶ ἀπατεῶνα καὶ |thief καὶ  
 ἄρπαγα καὶ ἐν παντὶ πλεονέκτην τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ ὁ  
 Κῦρος ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν· ὦ Ἡράκλεις, οἷον σὺ λέγεις, ὦ  
 πάτερ, δεῖν ἄνδρα με γενέσθαι. Οἷος ἂν ᾖν, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
 δικαιοτάτος τε καὶ |customary, le- ἀνὴρ εἴης. |how? why?,  
 |gal, natural  
 ἔφη, παῖδας ὄντας ἡμᾶς καὶ |aged 18 |opposite τούτων  
 |teach , |yea μὰ Δί', ἔφη, καὶ νῦν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους τε  
 καὶ |townsman, "free- δέ γε τοὺς πολεμίους δύνασθε κακῶς  
 |man, compatriot  
 ποιεῖν οὐκ οἶσθα |learn ὑμᾶς πολλὰς |evil deeds ,  
 Οὐ |emphatic, δὲ ἔγωγε, ὦ πάτερ. Τίνος μὴν |because, ἥτα,  
 |learn |shoot an arrow at ὃ |be- |throw, (+gen) at ὅς δ'  
 |because, ἥτα ἢ ὅς |wild, καὶ |that  
 |savage |trench, , τί  
 |deer ποδάγρας καὶ |yarn, cord , τί δὲ λένουσι καὶ  
 |bear καὶ |leopard οὐκ εἰς τὸ |equal |set down, land;  
 |become, be  
 ἐμάχεσθε, ἀλλὰ μετὰ πλεονεξίας

sure that he will gain?" "Ah, there you come," said the father, "to a most weighty matter. This is no easy task, I can tell you. If your general is to succeed he must prove himself an arch-plotter, a king of craft, full of deceits and stratagems, a cheat, a thief, and a robber, defrauding and overreaching his opponent at every turn."

"Heavens!" said Cyrus, and burst out laughing, "is this the kind of man you want your son to be!" "I want him to be," said the father, "as just and upright and law-abiding as any man who ever lived." "But how comes it," said his son, "that the lessons you taught us in boyhood and youth were exactly opposed to what you teach me now?" "Ah," said the father, "those lessons were for friends and fellow-citizens, and for them they still hold good, but for your enemies—do you not remember that you were also taught to do much harm?"

"No, father," he answered, "I should say certainly not."

"Then why were you taught to shoot? Or to hurl the javelin? Or to trap wild-boars? Or to snare stags with cords and caltrops? And why did you never meet the lion or the bear or the leopard in fair fight on equal terms, but were always trying

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀπάτη** trick, fraud, deceit

~apatosaurus

**βλάπτω** break, make fail**διδάσκαλος** teacher**δικαιοσύνη** justice**δολόω** trick, trap, disguise**εἴπερ** if indeed**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station**κακουργέω** do evil**ναί** yea**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**παιδεύω** raise; train**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**πληγή** a hit ~plectrum**πότε** when?**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
target ~telescope**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic**χρήσιμος** useful

τινὸς αἰεὶ ἐπειρᾶσθε ἀγωνίζεσθαι πρὸς αὐτά; ἢ οὐ πάντα γινώσκεις ταῦτα ὅτι κακουργίαι τέ εἰσι καὶ ἀπάται καὶ δολώσεις καὶ πλεονεξίαι; Ναὶ μὰ Δί, ἔφη, θηρίων γε· ἀνθρώπων δὲ εἰ καὶ δόξαιμι βούλεσθαι ἐξαπατῆσαί τινα, πολλὰς πληγὰς οἶδα λαμβάνων. Οὐδὲ γὰρ τοξεύειν, οἶμαι, οὐδ' ἀκοντίζειν ἄνθρωπον ἐπετρέπομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ σκοπὸν βάλλειν ἐδιδάσκομεν, ἵνα γε νῦν μὲν μὴ κακουργοίητε τοὺς φίλους, εἰ δέ ποτε πόλεμος γένοιτο, δύναισθε καὶ ἀνθρώπων στοχάζεσθαι· καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν δὲ καὶ πλεονεκτεῖν οὐκ ἐν ἀνθρώποις ἐπαιδεύομεν ὑμᾶς, ἀλλ' ἐν θηρίοις, ἵνα μὴδ' ἐν τούτοις τοὺς φίλους βλάπτετε, εἰ δέ ποτε πόλεμος γένοιτο, μὴδὲ τούτων ἀγύμναστοι εἴητε. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, ὦ πάτερ, εἴπερ χρήσιμά ἐστιν ἀμφοτέρα ἐπίστασθαι, εὖ τε ποιεῖν καὶ κακῶς ἀνθρώπους, καὶ διδάσκειν ἀμφοτέρα ταῦτα ἔδει ἐν ἀνθρώποις. Ἀλλὰ λέγεται, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, ἐπὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων προγόνων γενέσθαι ποτὲ ἀνὴρ διδάσκαλος τῶν παιδῶν, ὃς ἐδίδασκεν ἄρα τοὺς παῖδας τὴν δικαιοσύνην, ὥσπερ σὺ κελεύεις, μὴ

τινὸς αἰεὶ |try, test |contend, exert πρὸς αὐτά; ἢ οὐ πάντα  
 |oneself  
 γινώσκεις ταῦτα ὅτι κακουργίαι τέ εἰσι καὶ |trick, καὶ  
 |fraud  
 δολώσεις καὶ πλεονεξίαι; |yea μὰ Δί', ἔφη, |wild animal  
 ἀνθρώπων δὲ εἰ καὶ δόξαιμι βούλεσθαι |trick, cheat τινα,  
 πολλὰς πληγὰς οἶδα λαμβάνων. Οὐδὲ γὰρ |shoot an arrow at  
 οἶμαι, οὐδ' |throw, (+gen) ἄνθρωπον |entrust, decide, ὑμῖν, ἀλλ'  
 |allow  
 ἐπὶ |lookout βάλλειν |teach , ἵνα γε νῦν μὲν μὴ  
 |do evil τοὺς φίλους, εἰ δέ ποτε πόλεμος γένοιτο,  
 δύνασθε καὶ ἀνθρώπων στοχάζεσθαι· καὶ |trick, cheat δὲ  
 καὶ |be greedy, take ὑκ ἐν ἀνθρώποις |raise; train ὑμᾶς, ἀλλ'  
 |advantage  
 ἐν |wild animal ἢ |and not; not even. τοὺς φίλους |break, make fail  
 εἰ δέ ποτε πόλεμος γένοιτο, |and not; not even. ῥήμναστοι  
 εἴητε. |not so?; and so, ὦ πάτερ, |if |useful ἐστίν  
 |indeed  
 |both ἐπίστασθαι, εὖ τε ποιεῖν καὶ κακῶς ἀνθρώπους,  
 καὶ |teach |both ταῦτα ἔδει ἐν ἀνθρώποις. Ἀλλὰ  
 λέγεται, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, ἐπὶ τῶν |our, my |elder,  
 |ancestor  
 γενέσθαι ποτὲ ἀνὴρ |teacher τῶν παιδῶν, ὃς |teach  
 ἄρα τοὺς παῖδας τὴν |justice , ὥσπερ σὺ κελεύεις, μὴ

to steal some advantage over them? Can you deny that all that was craft and deceit and fraud and greed?"

"Why, of course," answered the young man, "in dealing with animals, but with human beings it was different; if I was ever suspected of a wish to cheat another, I was punished, I know, with many stripes."

"True," said the father, "and for the matter of that we did not permit you to draw bow or hurl javelin against human beings; we taught you merely to aim at a mark. But why did we teach you that? Not so that you might injure your friends, either then or now, but that in war you might have the skill to make the bodies of living men your targets. So also we taught you the arts of deceit and craft and greed and covetousness, not among men it is true, but among beasts; we did not mean you ever to turn these accomplishments against your friends, but in war we wished you to be something better than raw recruits."

"But, father," Cyrus answered, "if to do men good and to do men harm were both of them things we ought to learn, surely it would have been better to teach them in actual practice?"

Then the father said, "My son, we are told that in the days of our forefathers there was such a teacher once. This man did actually teach his boys righteousness in the way you suggest, to lie and not

*vocabulary***ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀπλός** single; simple ~haploid**γυμνάζω** exercise, do training**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
~ballistic**διορίζω** delimit; determine**ἔθος** ἔθεος (n, 3) custom, habit  
~ethology**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**εὐφυής** well-developed ~physics**θέω** run, run for**κλέπτω** steal**κολάζω** punish**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house  
slave**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**ρήτρα** agreement, bargain ~rhetoric**φιλοκερδέω** be greedy**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
~pseudo-

ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ψεύδεσθαι, καὶ μὴ ἐξαπατᾶν καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν,  
 καὶ μὴ διαβάλλειν καὶ διαβάλλειν, καὶ μὴ πλεονεκτεῖν καὶ  
 πλεονεκτεῖν. διώριζε δὲ τούτων ἅ τε πρὸς τοὺς φίλους  
 ποιητέον καὶ ἅ πρὸς ἐχθρούς. καὶ ἔτι γε ταῦτα ἐδίδασκεν  
 ὥς καὶ τοὺς φίλους δίκαιον εἶη ἐξαπατᾶν ἐπὶ γε ἀγαθῷ, καὶ  
 κλέπτειν τὰ τῶν φίλων ἐπὶ ἀγαθῷ. ταῦτα δὲ διδάσκοντα  
 ἀνάγκη καὶ γυμνάζειν ἦν πρὸς ἀλλήλους τοὺς παῖδας  
 ταῦτα ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν πάλῃ φασὶ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας  
 διδάσκειν ἐξαπατᾶν, καὶ γυμνάζειν δὲ τοὺς παῖδας πρὸς  
 ἀλλήλους τοῦτο δύνασθαι ποιεῖν. γενόμενοι οὖν τινες  
 οὕτως εὐφυνεῖς καὶ πρὸς τὸ εὖ ἐξαπατᾶν καὶ πρὸς τὸ  
 εὖ πλεονεκτεῖν, ἴσως δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὸ φιλοκερδεῖν οὐκ  
 ἀφυνεῖς ὄντες, οὐκ ἀπείχοντο οὐδ' ἀπὸ τῶν φίλων τὸ μὴ  
 οὐ πλεονεκτεῖν αὐτῶν πειρᾶσθαι. ἐγένετο οὖν ἐκ τούτων  
 ῥήτρα, ἥ καὶ νῦν χρώμεθα ἔτι, ἀπλῶς διδάσκειν τοὺς  
 παῖδας ὥσπερ τοὺς οἰκέτας πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς διδάσκομεν  
 ἀληθεύειν καὶ μὴ ἐξαπατᾶν καὶ μὴ πλεονεκτεῖν· εἰ δὲ παρὰ  
 ταῦτα ποιοῖεν, κολάζειν, ὅπως σὺν τοιούτῳ ἔθει



|be false, deceive; |be false, , deceive; |trick, cheat καὶ |trick, cheat ,  
 |(mid) to lie |(mid) to lie

καὶ μὴ |throw across; αἰ |throw across; καὶ μὴ |be greedy, take αἰ  
 |slander |slander |advantage

|be greedy, take διώριζε δὲ τούτων ἅ τε πρὸς τοὺς φίλους  
 |advantage

ποιητέον καὶ ἅ πρὸς |hated, distasteful . γε ταῦτα ἐδίδασκεν

ὥς καὶ τοὺς φίλους δίκαιον εἶη |trick, cheat ἐπὶ γε ἀγαθῷ, καὶ

|steal τὰ τῶν φίλων ἐπὶ ἀγαθῷ. ταῦτα δὲ διδάσκοντα

|necessity καὶ |exercise, do ἦν πρὸς ἀλλήλους τοὺς παῖδας  
 |training

ταῦτα ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν πάλῃ φασὶ τοὺς |Greek

διδάσκειν |trick, cheat , καὶ |exercise, do δὲ τοὺς παῖδας πρὸς  
 |training

ἀλλήλους τοῦτο δύνασθαι ποιεῖν. γερόμενοι οὖν τινες

οὕτως |well-developed . πρὸς τὸ εὖ |trick, cheat καὶ πρὸς τὸ

εὖ |be greedy, take ἴσως δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὸ |be greedy οὐκ  
 |advantage

ἀφνεῖς ὄντες, οὐκ |ward off, drive off, refrain, ὅν φίλων τὸ μὴ  
 |be at some distance

οὐ |be greedy, take ὑπὸν |try, test . ἐγένετο οὖν ἐκ τούτων  
 |advantage

ρήτρα, ἥ καὶ νῦν χρώμεθα ἔτι, |single; διδάσκειν τοὺς  
 |simple

παῖδας ὥσπερ τοὺς |household; , ὃς ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς διδάσκομεν  
 |house slave

|speak καὶ μὴ |trick, cheat καὶ μὴ |be greedy, take ἔῃ δὲ παρὰ  
 |truth; be |advantage  
 |true

ταῦτα ποιοῖεν, |punish , ὅπως σὺν τοιούτῳ ἔθει

to lie, to cheat and not to cheat, to calumniate and not to calumniate, to be grasping and not grasping. He drew the distinction between our duty to friends and our duty to enemies; and he went further still; he taught men that it was just and right to deceive even a friend for his own good, or steal his property. And with this he must needs teach his pupils to practise on one another what he taught them, just as the people of Hellas, we are told, teach lads in the wrestling-school to fence and to feint, and train them by their practice with one another. Now some of his scholars showed such excellent aptitudes for deception and overreaching, and perhaps no lack of taste for common money-making, that they did not even spare their friends, but used their arts on them. And so an unwritten law was framed by which we still abide, bidding us teach our children as we teach our servants, simply and solely not to lie, and not to cheat, and not to covert, and if they did otherwise to punish them, hoping to make

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαν** very much  
**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἄμετρος** immeasurable, immoderate  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἄτακτος** disorderly  
**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure  
**ἀφροδίσιος** sexual  
**γρηγορέω** be fully awake  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**δυσχωρία** rough ground; lack of room  
**ἐθίζω** accustom  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**ἐπιθυμία** (ῥ) desire, thing desired  
**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

**καθεύδω** lie down  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro  
**νῆ** yea  
**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to  
**σαυτοῦ** yourself  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ὑποδείκνυμι** (υῶ) show, trace out  
**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer  
 ~doctrine  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid

ἐθισθέντες πραότεροι πολῖται γένοιντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔχοιεν τὴν  
 ἡλικίαν ἣν σὺ νῦν ἔχεις, ἤδη καὶ τὰ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 νόμιμα ἐδόκει ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διδάσκειν. οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἔτι  
 ἐξενεχθῆναι δοκεῖτε πρὸς τὸ ἄγριοι πολῖται γενέσθαι ἐν  
 τῷ αἰδεῖσθαι ἀλλήλους συντεθραμμένοι· ὥσπερ γε καὶ  
 περὶ ἀφροδισίων οὐ διελεγόμεθα πρὸς τοὺς ἄγαν νέους,  
 ἵνα μὴ πρὸς τὴν ἰσχυρὰν ἐπιθυμίαν αὐτοῖς ῥαδιουργίας  
 προσγενομένης ἀμέτρως αὐτῇ χρῶντο οἱ νέοι. Νῆ  
 Δ', ἔφη· ὥς τοίνυν ὀψιμαθῇ ὄντα ἐμὲ τούτων τῶν  
 πλεονεξιῶν, ὦ πάτερ, μὴ φείδου εἴ τι ἔχεις διδάσκειν  
 ὅπως πλεονεκτήσω ἐγὼ τῶν πολεμιῶν. Μηχανῷ τοίνυν,  
 ἔφη, ὅπως ἐς τὴν δύναμιν τεταγμένοις τε τοῖς σαντοῦ  
 ἀτάκτους λαμβάνῃς τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ὣπλισμένους  
 ἀόπλους καὶ ἐγρηγορόσι καθεύδοντας, καὶ φανερούς σοι  
 ὄντας ἀφανῆς αὐτὸς ὢν ἐκείνοις καὶ ἐν δυσχωρίᾳ αὐτοὺς  
 γιγνομένους ἐν ἐρμυνῷ αὐτὸς ὢν ὑποδέξῃ. Καὶ πῶς ἂν,  
 ἔφη, τις τοιαῦτα, ὦ πάτερ, ἀμαρτάνοντας δύναιτ' ἂν τοὺς  
 πολεμίους λαμβάνειν; Ὅτι, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, πολλὰ μὲν τούτων



them humane and law-abiding citizens. But when they came to manhood, as you have come, then, it seemed, the risk was over, and it would be time to teach them what is lawful against our enemies. For at your age we do not believe you will break out into savagery against your fellows with whom you have been knit together since childhood in ties of friendship and respect. In the same way we do not talk to the young about the mysteries of love, for if lightness were added to desire, their passion might sweep them beyond all bounds."

"Then in heaven's name, father," said Cyrus, "remember that your son is but a backward scholar and a late learner in this lore of selfishness, and teach me all you can that may help me to overreach the foe."

"Well," said the father, "you must plot and you must plan, whatever the size of his force and your own, to catch his men in disorder when yours are all arrayed, unarmed when yours are armed, asleep when yours are awake, or you must wait till he is visible to you and you invisible to him, or till he is labouring over heavy ground and you are in your fortress and can give him welcome there."

"But how," asked Cyrus, "can I catch him in all these blunders?"

"Simply because both you and he are bound to be often in some such case;

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**ἄτακτος** disorderly  
**ἀφύλακτος** unguarded ~phylactery  
**δυσχωρία** rough ground; lack of room  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
**ἔωθεν** at first light  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,

have sex  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**ποιόω** make of a certain quality  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue  
**φιλομαθής** knowledge-loving  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ καὶ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους παρασχεῖν·  
 σιτοποιεῖσθαι τε γὰρ ἀνάγκη ἀμφοτέρους, κοιμᾶσθαι τε  
 ἀνάγκη ἀμφοτέρους καὶ ἔωθεν ἐπὶ τὰ ἀναγκαῖα σχεδὸν  
 ἅμα πάντας ἴεσθαι, καὶ ταῖς ὁδοῖς ὅποιαι ἂν ὦσι τοιαύταις  
 ἀνάγκη χρῆσθαι. ἂ χρή σε πάντα κατανοοῦντα, ἐν ᾧ  
 μὲν ἂν ὑμᾶς γινώσκῃς ἀσθενεστάτους γιγνομένους, ἐν  
 τούτῳ μάλιστα φυλάττεσθαι· ἐν ᾧ δ' ἂν τοὺς πολεμίους  
 αἰσθάνῃ εὐχειρωτοτάτους γιγνομένους, ἐν τούτῳ μάλιστα  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι. Πότερον δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐν τούτοις μόνον  
 ἔστι πλεονεκτεῖν ἢ καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις τισί; Καὶ πολὺ γε  
 μᾶλλον, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ· ἐν τούτοις μὲν γὰρ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ  
 πολὺ πάντες ἰσχυρὰς φυλακὰς ποιοῦνται εἰδότες ὅτι  
 δέονται. οἱ δ' ἐξαπατῶντες τοὺς πολεμίους δύνανται καὶ  
 θαρρῆσαι ποιήσαντες ἀφυλάκτους λαμβάνειν καὶ διώξαι  
 παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς ἀτάκτους ποιῆσαι καὶ εἰς δυσχωρίαν  
 φυγῇ ὑπαγαγόντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπιτίθεσθαι. δεῖ δὴ, ἔφη,  
 φιλομαθῇ σε τούτων ἀπάντων ὄντα οὐχ οἷς ἂν μάθῃς  
 τούτοις μόνοις χρῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸν



|necessity ἐστὶ καὶ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους παρασχέιν·  
 σιτοποιεῖσθαι τε γὰρ |necessity ἀμφοτέρους, κοιμᾶσθαι τε  
 |necessity ἀμφοτέρους καὶ |at first light τὰ ἀναγκαῖα |about  
 ἅμα πάντας |release, utter; |wishes, desires |whatever kind τοιαύταις  
 |desire, aim at  
 |necessity χρῆσθαι. ἂν χρή σε πάντα |notice, realize, ἐν ᾧ  
 |learn  
 μὲν ἂν ὑμᾶς γινώσκης |weak γιγνομένους, ἐν  
 τούτῳ μάλιστα |guard; watch ἐν ᾧ δ' ἂν τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |perceive εὐχειρωτοτάτους γιγνομένους, ἐν τούτῳ μάλιστα  
 |put on, apply; |which, δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐν τούτοις μόνον  
 (mid) under-|whichever  
 take, attack  
 ἐστὶ |be greedy, take ἢ καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις τισί; Καὶ πολὺ γε  
 |advantage  
 μᾶλλον, ἔφη, ᾧ παῖ· ἐν τούτοις μὲν γὰρ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ  
 πολὺ πάντες |strong, |guard, |make of a cer-  
 |forceful, |prison, |tain quality  
 δέονται. οἱ δ' |violent |watch  
 |trick, cheat τοὺς πολεμίους δύνανται καὶ  
 θαρρῆσαι ποιήσαντες |unguarded λαμβάνειν καὶ |chase  
 παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς |disorderly ποιῆσαι καὶ εἰς |rough ground;  
 |lack of room  
 |flight, |lead |there, here |put on, apply; (mid) δὴ, ἔφη,  
 |means |undertake, attack  
 |of  
 |knowledge-loving τούτων ἀπάντων ὄντα οὐχ οἷς ἂν |learn  
 |escape  
 τούτοις μόνοις χρῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸν

both of you must take your meals sometime; both of you must sleep; your men must scatter in the morning to satisfy the needs of nature, and, for better for worse, whatever the roads are like, you will be forced to make use of them. All these necessities you must lay to heart, and wherever you are weaker, there you must be most on your guard, and wherever your foe is most assailable, there you must press the attack."

Then Cyrus asked, "And are these the only cases where one can apply the great principle of greed, or are there others?"

"Oh, yes, there are many more; indeed in these simple cases any general will be sure to keep good watch, knowing how necessary it is. But your true cheat and prince of swindlers is he who can lure the enemy on and throw him off his guard, suffer himself to be pursued and get the pursuers into disorder, lead the foe into difficult ground and then attack him there. Indeed, as an ardent student, you must not confine yourself to the lessons you

*vocabulary***ἀκίνητος** motionless, immovable**ἀσκέω** work on**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**εὐδοκιμέω** be esteemed**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**καινός** new, fresh, strange**κινέω** (ι) set in motion, move, remove

~kinetic

**μεταφέρω** transfer; change**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**μηχάνημα** -τος (n, 3) machine;

mechanism, way

**μουσικός** musical, aesthetic**ὄρνις** -θος (ι, f) bird ~ornithology**πάγη** trap, snare, noose**παιδεύω** raise; train**ποιητής** -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author**ποιητός** made, well-made ~poet**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**σφόδρα** very much**ὑπεναντίος** opposed, contrary**ὑπηρετέω** serve**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm**χωρίον** area; downwards

ποιητὴν εἶναι τῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους μηχανημάτων,  
 ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ μουσικοὶ οὐχ οἷς ἂν μάθωσι τούτοις μόνον  
 χρῶνται, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλα νέα πειρῶνται ποιεῖν. καὶ  
 σφόδρα μὲν καὶ ἐν τοῖς μουσικοῖς τὰ νέα καὶ ἀνθηρὰ  
 εὐδοκμεῖ, πολὺ δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς μᾶλλον τὰ καινὰ  
 μηχανήματα εὐδοκμεῖ· ταῦτα γὰρ μᾶλλον καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν  
 δύναται τοὺς ὑπεναντίους. εἰ δὲ σύ γε, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
 μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μετενέγκοις ἐπ' ἀνθρώπους τὰς μηχανὰς  
 ἃς καὶ πάνυ ἐπὶ τοῖς μικροῖς θηρίοις ἐμχανῶ, οὐκ οἶε  
 ἂν, ἔφη, πρόσω πάνυ ἐλάσαι τῆς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 πλεονεξίας; σὺ γὰρ ἐπὶ μὲν τὰς ὄρνιθας ἐν τῷ ἰσχυροτάτῳ  
 χειμῶνι ἀνιστάμενος ἐπορεύου νυκτός, καὶ πρὶν κινεῖσθαι  
 τὰς ὄρνιθας ἐπεποίητό σοι αἱ πάγαι αὐταῖς καὶ τὸ  
 κεκινημένον χωρίον ἐξείκαστο τῷ ἀκινήτῳ· ὄρνιθες δ'  
 ἐπεπαίδευντό σοι ὥστε σοὶ μὲν τὰ συμφέροντα ὑπηρετεῖν,  
 τὰς δὲ ὁμοφύλους ὄρνιθας ἐξαπατᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐνὶ ἡδρενες,  
 ὥστε ὁρᾶν μὲν αὐτάς, μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι δὲ ὑπ' αὐτῶν· ἡσκήκεις  
 δὲ φθάνων ἔλκειν ἢ τὰ πτηνὰ

ποιητὴν εἶναι τῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους |machine; mecha-  
 |nism, way  
 ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ |musical, οὐχ οἷς ἂν μάθωσι τούτοις μόνον  
 |aesthetic  
 χρῶνται, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλα νέα πειρῶνται ποιεῖν. καὶ  
 σφόδρα μὲν καὶ ἐν τοῖς |musical, τὰ νέα καὶ ἀνθηρὰ  
 |aesthetic  
 |be esteemed ὁλὺ δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς |warlike, μᾶλλον τὰ |new, fresh, strange  
 |hostile  
 |machine; mech-|be esteemed : αὐτὰ γὰρ μᾶλλον καὶ |trick, cheat  
 |anism, way  
 δύναται τοὺς ὑπεναντίους. εἰ δὲ σύ γε, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ,  
 μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ |transfer; ἐπ' ἀνθρώπους τὰς |machine; mecha-  
 |change |nism, way  
 ἅς καὶ πάννυ ἐπὶ τοῖς μικροῖς θηρίοις |build, οὐκ οἷε  
 |contrive  
 ἂν, ἔφη, |forward, in the ἐλάσαι τῆς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |future; far  
 πλεονεξίας; σὺ γὰρ ἐπὶ μὲν τὰς |bird ἐν τῷ ἰσχυροτάτῳ  
 |winter, ἀνιστάμενος ἐπορεύου νυκτός, καὶ πρὶν |move,  
 |storm |remove  
 τὰς |bird ἐπεποιήντο σοι αἰ |trap, αὐταῖς καὶ τὸ  
 |snare,  
 |move, remove χωρίον ἐξείκαστο τῷ |noose  
 |motionless, |bird δ'  
 |immovable  
 |raise; train σοι ὥστε σοὶ μὲν τὰ |bring together;|serve  
 |be expedient;  
 τὰς δὲ ὁμοφύλους |bird |trick, cheat, αὐτὸς δὲ |ambush, trap  
 |happen  
 ὥστε ὁρᾶν μὲν αὐτάς, μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι δὲ ὑπ' αὐτῶν |work on  
 δὲ |be first |drag, pull, ἂ πτηνὰ  
 |hoist; rape

have learnt; you must show yourself a creator and discoverer, you must invent stratagems against the foe; just as a real musician is not content with the mere elements of his art, but sets himself to compose new themes. And if in music it is the novel melody, the flower-like freshness, that wins popularity, still more in military matters it is the newest contrivance that stands the highest, for the simple reason that such will give you the best chance of outwitting your opponent. And yet, my son, I must say that if you did no more than apply against human beings the devices you learnt to use against the smallest game, you would have made considerable progress in this art of overreaching. Do you not think so yourself? Why, to snare birds you would get up by night in the depth of winter and tramp off in the cold; your nets were laid before the creatures were astir, and your tracks completely covered and you actually had birds of your own, trained to serve you and decoy their kith and kin, while you yourself lay in some hiding-place, seeing yet unseen, and you had learnt by long practice to jerk in the net before the

*vocabulary***ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄνευρίσκω** discover**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking ~frenzy**βοά** din, a shout**βοάω** shout**βοείη** shield; leather, bovine**βόειος** shield; leather, bovine ~bovine**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine**διαφεύγω** escape, survive**δίχτυον** fishing net**ἐγγύθεν** near**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἐμφανής** visible**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after

~genus

**ἐπιτηδεύω** practice, pursue**ἰσόπεδον** (ι) flat spot**κραυγή** screaming, shouting**λαγός** hare ~lagomorph**λαγώς** -ω (m, 2) hare ~lagomorph**λαγώς** hare ~lagomorph**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ὀσμή** smell ~osmium, odor**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare**πότε** when?**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order

before

**σιγάω** (ι) be silent**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,

target ~telescope

**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow**συνάπτω** join, partake; adjoin; consult;

fight ~haptic

**συνδέω** bind together**σφόδρα** very much**ὕστερίζω** be late**χωρίον** area; downwards

φεύγειν. πρὸς δ' αὖ τὸν λαγῶ, ὅτι μὲν ἐν σκοτεινῇ νέμεται,  
 τὴν δ' ἡμέραν ἀποδιδράσκει, κύνας ἔτρεφες αἱ τῇ ὁσμῇ  
 αὐτὸν ἀνηύρισκον. ὅτι δὲ ταχὺ ἔφευγεν, ἐπεὶ εὐρεθείη,  
 ἄλλας κύνας εἶχες ἐπιτετηδευμένας πρὸς τὸ κατὰ πόδας  
 αἰρεῖν. εἰ δὲ καὶ ταύτας ἀποφύγοι, τοὺς πόρους αὐτῶν  
 ἐκμανθάνων καὶ πρὸς οἷα χωρία φεύγοντες ἀφικνοῦνται  
 οἱ λαγῶ, ἐν τούτοις δίκτυα δυσόρατα ἐνπετάνουντες ἄν,  
 καὶ τῷ σφόδρα φεύγειν αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐμπεσὼν συνέδει.  
 τοῦ δὲ μηδ' ἐντεῦθεν διαφεύγειν σκοποὺς τοῦ γιγνομένου  
 καθίστης, οἱ ἐγγύθεν ταχὺ ἔμελλον ἐπιγενήσεσθαι· καὶ  
 αὐτὸς μὲν σὺ ὅπισθεν κραυγῇ οὐδὲν ὑστεριζούσῃ τοῦ λαγῶ  
 βοῶν ἐξέπληττες αὐτὸν ὥστε ἄφρονα ἀλίσκεσθαι, τοὺς δ'  
 ἔμπροσθεν σιγᾶν διδάξας ἐνεδρεύοντας λανθάνειν ἐποίεις.  
 ὥσπερ οὖν προεῖπον, εἰ τοιαῦτα ἐθελήσῃς καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς  
 ἀνθρώποις μηχανᾶσθαι, οὐκ οἶδ' ἔγωγε εἴ τινος λείποιο  
 ἂν τῶν πολεμίων. ἦν δέ ποτε ἄρα ἀνάγκη γένηται καὶ  
 ἐν τῷ ἰσοπέδῳ καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανοῦς καὶ ὠπλισμένους  
 ἀμφοτέρους μάχην συνάπτειν, ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ δῆ, ὦ παῖ,





birds could fly away. Or you might be out after hares, and for a hare you had two breeds of dogs, one to track her out by scent, because she feeds in the dusk and takes to her form by day, and another to cut off her escape and run her down, because she is so swift. And even if she escaped these, she did not escape you; you had all her runs by heart and knew all her hiding-places, and there you would spread your nets, so that they were scarcely to be seen, and the very haste of her flight would fling her into the snare. And to make sure of her you had men placed on the spot to keep a look-out, and pounce on her at once. And there were you at her heels, shouting and scaring her out of her wits, so that she was caught from sheer terror, and there lay your men, as you had taught them, silent and motionless in their ambushade. I say, therefore, that if you chose to act like this against human beings, you would soon have no enemies left to fight, or I am much mistaken. And even if, as well may be, the necessity should arise for you to do battle on equal terms in open field, even so, my son, there will still be power in those arts which you have studied so

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἀντικαθίστημι** replace; set against  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀσκέω** work on  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon  
**θήγω** sharpen  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μηδέποτε** never  
**νάπη** valley  
**νάπος** -εος (n, 3) gully  
**νυκτερινός** nocturnal  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how

*great*

**ὄρεινός** mountainous  
**πεδινός** flat  
**πλατύς** extensive, wide  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**στενός** narrow  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

αἱ ἐκ πολλοῦ παρεσκευασμένοι πλεονεξίαι μέγα δύνανται. ταύτας δὲ ἐγὼ λέγω εἶναι, ἣν τῶν στρατιωτῶν εὖ μὲν τὰ σώματα ἡσκημένα ἦ, εὖ δὲ αἱ ψυχαὶ τεθηγμένοι, εὖ δὲ αἱ πολεμικαὶ τέχναι μεμελετημένοι ὦσιν. εὖ δὲ χρὴ καὶ τοῦτο εἰδέναι ὅτι ὁπόσους ἂν ἀξιοῖς σοι πείθεσθαι, καὶ ἐκεῖνοι πάντες ἀξιώσουσι σὲ πρὸ ἑαυτῶν βουλεύεσθαι. μηδέποτ' οὖν ἀφροντίστως ἔχε, ἀλλὰ τῆς μὲν νυκτὸς προσκόπει τί σοι ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἀρχόμενοι, ἐπειδὰν ἡμέρα γένηται, τῆς δ' ἡμέρας ὅπως τὰ εἰς νύκτα κάλλιστα ἔξει. ὅπως δὲ χρὴ τάττειν εἰς μάχην στρατιὰν ἢ ὅπως ἄγειν ἡμέρας ἢ νυκτὸς ἢ στενὰς ἢ πλατείας ὁδοὺς ἢ ὀρεινὰς ἢ πεδινὰς, ἢ ὅπως στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἢ ὅπως φυλακὰς νυκτερινὰς καὶ ἡμερινὰς καθιστάναι, ἢ ὅπως προσάγειν πρὸς πολεμίους ἢ ἀπάγειν ἀπὸ πολεμίων, ἢ ὅπως παρὰ πόλιν πολεμίαν ἄγειν ἢ ὅπως πρὸς τείχος ἄγειν ἢ ἀπάγειν, ἢ ὅπως νάπη ἢ ποταμοὺς διαβαίνειν, ἢ ὅπως ἵππικὸν φυλάττεσθαι ἢ ὅπως ἀκοντιστὰς ἢ τοξότας, καὶ εἴ γε δὴ σοι κατὰ κέρας ἄγοντι οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιφανείην, πῶς χρὴ ἀντικαθιστάναι,

αἱ ἐκ πολλοῦ |prepare, render πλεονεξίαι μέγα δύνανται.  
 ταύτας δὲ ἐγὼ λέγω εἶναι, ἣν τῶν |soldier, εὖ μὲν τὰ  
 |mercenary  
 σώματα |work on ἥ, εὖ δὲ αἱ ψυχαὶ |sharpen , εὖ δὲ αἱ  
 |warlike, |craft |pursue, attend to, ὦσιν. εὖ δὲ χρὴ καὶ τοῦτο  
 |hostile |exercise  
 εἰδέναι ὅτι |as/how ἢ |consider wor- εἶθεσθαι, καὶ ἐκείνοι  
 |many/great |thy, fitting  
 πάντες |consider wor- ἢ πρὸ ἑαυτῶν |(mp) to deliber-|never  
 |thy, fitting |ate  
 οὖν ἀφροντίστως ἔχε, ἀλλὰ τῆς μὲν νυκτὸς προσκόπει  
 τί σοι ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἀρχόμενοι, |when, ἡμέρα γένηται,  
 |after  
 τῆς δ' ἡμέρας ὅπως τὰ εἰς νύκτα κάλλιστα ἔξει. ὅπως δὲ  
 χρὴ τάττειν εἰς μάχην |army ἢ ὅπως ἄγειν ἡμέρας ἢ  
 νυκτὸς ἢ |narrow ἢ |extensive, wide. ἢ ὁρεινὰς ἢ |flat , ἢ  
 ὅπως |encamp or take up, ἢ ὅπως |guard, |nocturnal καὶ  
 |station |prison,  
 ἡμερινὰς καθιστάναι, ἢ ὅπως |bring to a place, ἢς πολεμίους  
 |watch  
 ἢ |lead away, back πολέμιων, ἢ ὅπως παρὰ πόλιν πολεμίαν  
 ἄγειν ἢ ὅπως πρὸς τεῖχος ἄγειν ἢ |lead away, back ὅς νάπη  
 ἢ ποταμοὺς |pass over, cross ὅπως |of horses φυλάττεσθαι ἢ  
 ὅπως |spearman ἢ |archer , καὶ εἴ γε δὴ σοι κατὰ |horn;  
 |military  
 ἄγοντι οἱ πολέμοι |display , πῶς χρὴ |replace; set against  
 |unit

long and which teach you to out-villain villainy. And among them I include all that has served to train the bodies and fire the courage of your men, all that has made them adepts in every craft of war. One thing you must ever bear in mind: if you wish your men to follow you, remember that they expect you to plan for them. Hence you must never know a careless mood; if it be night, you must consider what your troops shall do when it is day; if day, how the night had best be spent. For the rest, you do not need me to tell you now how you should draw up your troops or conduct your march by day or night, along broad roads or narrow lanes, over hills or level ground, or how you should encamp and post your pickets, or advance into battle or retreat before the foe, or march past a hostile city, or attack a fortress or retire from it, or cross a river or pass through a defile, or guard against a charge of cavalry or an attack from lancers or archers, or what you should do if the enemy comes into sight when you are marching in column

*vocabulary*

**ἄδαής** not knowing how to  
**ἄλλοθεν** from elsewhere ~alien  
**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**αὐξάνω** strengthen  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἥκιστος** least; above all  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that

**μηδέποτε** never  
**οἰωνός** vulture, large bird, bird of  
 prey; omen ~avis  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**πόθεν** from where?  
**ποίη** grass  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**σαυτοῦ** yourself  
**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx

καὶ εἴ σοι ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἄγοντι ἄλλοθέν ποθεν οἱ πολέμοι φαίνονται ἢ κατὰ πρόσωπον, ὅπως χρή ἀντιπαράγειν, ἢ ὅπως τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἂν τις μάλιστα αἰσθάνοιτο, ἢ ὅπως τὰ σὰ οἱ πολέμοι ἤκιστα εἰδέειν, ταῦτα δὲ πάντα τί ἂν ἐγὼ λέγοιμί σοι; ὅσα τε γὰρ ἔγωγε ἤδειν, πολλάκις ἀκήκοας, ἄλλος τε ὅστις ἐδόκει τι τούτων ἐπίστασθαι, οὐδενὸς αὐτῶν ἡμέληκας οὐδ' ἀδαῆς γεγένησαι. δεῖ οὖν πρὸς τὰ συμβαίνοντα, οἶμαι, τούτοις χρήσθαι ὅποιον ἂν συμφέρειν σοι τούτων δοκῇ.

Μάθε δέ μου καὶ τάδε, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, τὰ μέγιστα· παρὰ γὰρ ἱερὰ καὶ οἰωνοὺς μήτε σαρτῶ μηδέποτε μήτε στρατιᾷ κινδυνεύσης, κατανοῶν ὥς ἄνθρωποι μὲν αἰροῦνται πράξεις εἰκάζοντες, εἰδότες δὲ οὐδὲν ἀπὸ ποίας ἔσται αὐτοῖς τὰ ἀγαθὰ. γνοίης δ' ἂν ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν γιγνομένων· πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ ἤδη πόλεις ἔπεισαν καὶ ταῦτα οἱ δοκοῦντες σοφώτατοι εἶναι πόλεμον ἄρασθαι πρὸς τούτους ὑφ' ὧν οἱ πεισθέντες ἐπιθέσθαι ἀπώλοντο, πολλοὶ δὲ πολλοὺς ἠϋξήσαν καὶ ἰδιώτας καὶ πόλεις ὑφ' ὧν αὐξηθέντων τὰ



καὶ εἴ σοι ἐπὶ |rank of battle<sup>7</sup> , ὄντι |from elsewhere οἱ πολέμοι  
 φαίνονται ἢ κατὰ |face , ὅπως |must, ...τιπαράγειν,  
 |should  
 ἢ ὅπως τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἄν τις μάλιστα |perceive , ἢ  
 ὅπως τὰ σὰ οἱ πολέμοι |least; εἰδείεν, ταῦτα δὲ πάντα τί  
 |above  
 ἂν ἐγὼ λέγοιμί σοι; ὅσα τε γὰρ ἔγωγε ἦδεν, |all  
 |often  
 ἀκήκοας, ἄλλος τε ὅστις ἐδόκει τι τούτων ἐπίστασθαι,  
 οὐδενὸς αὐτῶν |disregard οὐδ' |not knowing how to. δεῖ οὖν  
 πρὸς τὰ |agree; occur , οἶμαι, τούτοις χρῆσθαι |whatever kind  
 |bring together; be expedi-δοκῇ.  
 |ent; agree; (mp) happen

Μάθε δέ μου καὶ τάδε, ἔφη, ὦ παῖ, τὰ μέγιστα· παρὰ  
 γὰρ ἱερὰ καὶ |vulture, |nei- |yourself |never |nei- |army  
 |eagle, |ther  
 |omen  
 |encounter dan-|notice, real- ὥς ἄνθρωποι μὲν αἰροῦνται  
 |ger; (+inf) there|ize, learn  
 |is a danger that  
 |πραεῖς |liken; , εἰδότες δὲ οὐδὲν ἀπὸ ποίας ἔσται  
 |conjecture  
 αὐτοῖς τὰ ἀγαθὰ. γνοίης δ' ἂν ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν γιγνομένων·  
 πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ ἤδη πόλεις ἔπεισαν καὶ ταῦτα οἱ δοκοῦντες  
 |skilled, εἶναι πόλεμον |raise, win πρὸς τούτους ὑφ' ὧν  
 |clever, wise  
 οἱ πεισθέντες |put on, apply; (mid) το, πολλοὶ δὲ πολλοὺς  
 |undertake, attack  
 |strengthen .αὶ |private; a layman<sup>8</sup> .εις ὑφ' ὧν |strengthen τὰ

and how you are to take up position against him, or how deploy into action if you are in line and he takes you in flank or rear, and how you are to learn all you can about his movements, while keeping your own as secret as may be; these are matters on which you need no further word of mine; all that I know about them you have heard a hundred times, and I am sure you have not neglected any other authority on whom you thought you could rely. You know all their theories, and you must apply them now, I take it, according to circumstances and your need. But," he added, "there is one lesson that I would fain impress on you, and it is the greatest of them all. Observe the sacrifices and pay heed to the omens; when they are against you, never risk your army or yourself, for you must remember that men undertake enterprises on the strength of probability alone and without any real knowledge as to what will bring them happiness. You may learn this from all life and all history. How often have cities allowed themselves to be persuaded into war, and that by advisers who were thought the wisest of men, and then been utterly destroyed by those whom they attacked! How often have statesmen helped to raise a city

*vocabulary***άνθρώπινος** human**άποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out

~basis

**άποτυγχάνω** fail**άρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**έξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**έπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet**έπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ήδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**ἔλεως** propitious, gracious**κληρόω** cast lots, assign**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
forms) allot; receive**πλοῦτος** wealth ~plutocrat**πολύευκτος** prayed for**προσημαίνω** foretell; proclaim**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer

μέγιστα κακὰ ἔπαθον, πολλοὶ δὲ οἷς ἐξῆν φίλοις χρῆσθαι καὶ εὖ ποιεῖν καὶ εὖ πάσχειν, τούτοις δούλοις μᾶλλον βουληθέντες ἢ φίλοις χρῆσθαι, ὑπ' αὐτῶν τούτων δίκην ἔδοσαν· πολλοῖς δ' οὐκ ἤρκεσεν αὐτοῖς τὸ μέρος ἔχουσι ζῆν ἡδέως, ἐπιθυμήσαντες δὲ πάντων κύριοι εἶναι, διὰ ταῦτα καὶ ὧν εἶχον ἀπέτυχον· πολλοὶ δὲ τὸν πολύευκτον πλοῦτον κατακτησάμενοι, διὰ τοῦτον ἀπώλοντο. οὕτως ἡ ἀνθρωπίνη σοφία οὐδὲν μᾶλλον οἶδε τὸ ἄριστον αἰρεῖσθαι ἢ εἰ κληρούμενος ὅ τι λάχοι τοῦτό τις πράττοι. θεοὶ δέ, ὦ παῖ, αἰεὶ ὄντες πάντα ἴσασι τά τε γεγεννημένα καὶ τὰ ὄντα καὶ ὅ τι ἐξ ἐκάστου αὐτῶν ἀποβήσεται, καὶ τῶν συμβουλευομένων ἀνθρώπων οἷς ἂν ἴλεω ᾧσι, προσημαίνουσιν ἅ τε χρὴ ποιεῖν καὶ ἃ οὐ χρὴ. εἰ δὲ μὴ πᾶσιν ἐθέλουσι συμβουλεύειν, οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν· οὐ γὰρ ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς ἐστὶν ὧν ἂν μὴ θέλωσιν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι.

μέγιστα κακὰ ἔπαθον, πολλοὶ δὲ οἷς ἐξῆν φίλοις χρῆσθαι  
 καὶ εὖ ποιεῖν καὶ εὖ πάσχειν, τούτοις |born enslaved, |  
 |servile  
 βουληθέντες ἢ φίλοις χρῆσθαι, ὑπ' αὐτῶν τούτων |justice  
 ἔδοσαν· πολλοῖς δ' οὐκ |satisfy; ward off, | τὸ μέρος ἔχουσι  
 |defend; suffice  
 ζῆν |sweet , |wish, covet δὲ πάντων κύριοι εἶναι, διὰ  
 ταῦτα καὶ ὧν εἶχον |fail πολλοὶ δὲ τὸν |prayed for  
 |wealth κατακτησάμενοι, διὰ τοῦτον ἀπώλοντο. οὕτως ἡ  
 |human σοφία οὐδὲν μᾶλλον οἶδε τὸ ἄριστον αἰρεῖσθαι  
 ἢ εἰ |cast lots, assign ὅ τι |be allotted; (esp. λελα-ίττοι. θεοὶ  
 |forms) allot; receive  
 δέ, ὦ παῖ, αἰεὶ ὄντες πάντα ἴσασι τά τε γεγενημένα  
 καὶ τὰ ὄντα καὶ ὅ τι ἐξ ἐκάστου αὐτῶν |leave, get off;,  
 |turn out  
 καὶ τῶν |give advice; (mid) ἀνθρώπων οἷς ἂν |propitiōus, |  
 |consult |gracious  
 |foretell; proclaim ἅ τε |must... |μειν καὶ ἅ οὐ |must, |ἰ δὲ μὴ  
 |should |should  
 πᾶσιν ἐθέλουσι |give advice; οὐδὲν |wonderful; οὐ γὰρ  
 |(mid) consult |admirable  
 |necessity ὑποῖς ἐστὶν ὧν ἂν μὴ θέλωσιν |take care of,  
 |oversee

or a leader to power, and then suffered the worst at the hands of those whom they exalted! And many who could have treated others as friends and equals, giving and receiving kindnesses, have chosen to use them as slaves, and then paid the penalty at their hands; and many, not content to enjoy their own share of good, have been swept on by the craving to master all, and thereby lost everything that they once possessed; and many have won the very wealth they prayed for and through it have found destruction. So little does human wisdom know how to choose the best, helpless as a man who could but draw lots to see what he should do. But the gods, my son, who live for ever, they know all things, the things that have been and the things that are and the things that are to be, and all that shall come from these; and to us mortals who ask their counsel and whom they love they will show signs, to tell us what we should do and what we should leave undone. Nor must we think it strange if the gods will not vouchsafe their wisdom to all men equally; no compulsion is laid on them to care for men, unless it be their will.”

*vocabulary*

ἀετός eagle ~avis

ἀριθμός number

ἄρnuμαι get, win

ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

εἰκός likely

ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go  
searching through

εὐμενής kind

ἥρω hero ~hero

ἔλεως propitious, gracious

μέχρι as far as, until

μισθοφόρος mercenary

ὀμότιμος (ἰ) equally honored

ὄριον boundary

Πέρσης Persian

Περσίς Persian (language)

πόσος how many, much, far?

προηγέομαι go first

προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
come in

προσεύχομαι pray, vow

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

τρισμύριοι (ἑ) 30,000

φοιτάω go back and forth

## 2

## 2.1

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀφίκοντο διαλεγόμενοι μέχρι τῶν ὁρίων  
 τῆς Περσίδος· ἐπεὶ δ' αὐτοῖς ἀετὸς δεξιὸς φανείς  
 προηγείτο, προσευξάμενοι θεοῖς καὶ ἥρωσι τοῖς Περσίδα  
 γῆν κατέχουσιν ἵλεως καὶ εὐμενεῖς πέμπειν σφᾶς, οὕτω  
 διέβαινον τὰ ὅρια. ἐπειδὴ δὲ διέβησαν, προσηύχοντο  
 αὖθις θεοῖς τοῖς Μηδῖαν γῆν κατέχουσιν ἵλεως καὶ εὐμενεῖς  
 δέχεσθαι αὐτούς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες, ἀσπασάμενοι  
 ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ εἰκὸς, ὁ μὲν πατὴρ πάλιν εἰς Πέρσας  
 ἀπῆει, Κῦρος δὲ εἰς Μήδους πρὸς Κναξάρην ἐπορεύετο.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκετο ὁ Κῦρος εἰς Μήδους πρὸς τὸν Κναξάρην,  
 πρῶτον μὲν ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἡσπάσαντο ἀλλήλους, ἔπειτα δὲ  
 ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Κναξάρης πόσον τι ἄγοι τὸ στράτευμα.  
 ὁ δὲ ἔφη· Τρισμυρίους μὲν γε οἶοι καὶ πρόσθεν ἐφοίτων  
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς μισθοφόροι· ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ τῶν οὐδεπώποτε  
 ἐξελθόντων προσέρχονται τῶν ὁμοτίμων. Πόσοι τινές;  
 ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης. Οὐκ ἂν ὁ ἀριθμὸς σε, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,



## 2

## 2.1

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀφίκοντο |go through, de-|as far as, ūn-|boundary  
 |bate |til  
 τῆς |Persian (language) δ' αὐτοῖς |eagle δεξιὸς φανείς  
 |go first |pray, vow θεοῖς καὶ |hero τοῖς |Persian (language)  
 γῆν κατέχουσιν |propitious, |kind πέμπειν σφᾶς, οὕτω  
 |gracious  
 |pass over, cross |boundary τειδὴ δὲ |pass over, |pray, vow  
 |cross  
 αὐθις θεοῖς τοῖς Μηδῖαν γῆν κατέχουσιν |propitious, |kind  
 |gracious  
 δέχεσθαι αὐτούς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες, |greet, salute  
 ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ |likely, ὁ μὲν πατὴρ πάλιν εἰς Πέρσας  
 ἀπῆει, Κῦρος δὲ εἰς Μήδους πρὸς Κυαξάρην ἐπορεύετο.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκετο ὁ Κῦρος εἰς Μήδους πρὸς τὸν Κυαξάρην,  
 πρῶτον μὲν ὥσπερ |likely |greet, salute ἀλλήλους, ἔπειτα δὲ  
 ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Κυαξάρης |how many, |much, |army  
 |far?  
 ὁ δὲ ἔφη· |30,000 μὲν γε οἶοι καὶ πρόσθεν |go back and forth  
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς |mercenary ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ τῶν οὐδεπώποτε  
 ἐξελθόντων |come forward, surren-|equally |how many, much, far?  
 |der, come in |honored  
 ἔφη ὁ Κυαξάρης. Οὐκ ἂν ὁ |number σε, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,

## 2

### 2.1

Thus they talked together, and thus they journeyed on until they reached the frontier, and there a good omen met them: an eagle swept into view on the right, and went before them as though to lead the way, and they prayed the gods and heroes of the land to show them favour and grant them safe entry, and then they crossed the boundary. And when they were across, they prayed once more that the gods of Media might receive them graciously, and when they had done this they embraced each other, as father and son will, and Cambyses turned back to his own city, but Cyrus went forward again, to his uncle Cyaxares in the land of Media. And when his journey was done and he was face to face with him and they had greeted each other as kinsmen may, then Cyaxares asked the prince how great an armament he had brought with him? And Cyrus answered, "I have 30,000 with me, men who have served with you before as mercenaries; and more are coming on behind, fresh troops, from the Peers of Persia."

"How many of those?" asked Cyaxares. And Cyrus answered, "Their numbers will not please you, but remember these

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**αὐτόθεν** from that place**ἐννοέω** consider**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**λογχοφόρος** spearman**μάτην** in vain, randomly**μείων** less, smaller**μυρίος** (ἑ) 10,000 ~myriad**ναί** yea**ὀμότιμος** (ἱ) equally honored**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt**Πέρσης** Persian**πόσος** how many, much, far?**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**σαφής** clear, understandable**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**χίλιοι** (ἑ) thousand ~kilo-

ἀκούσαντα εὐφράνειεν· ἀλλ' ἐκείνο ἐννόησον ὅτι ὀλίγοι ὄντες οὗτοι οἱ ὁμότιμοι καλούμενοι πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν ἄλλων Περσῶν ῥαδίως ἄρχουσιν. ἀτάρ, ἔφη, δέει τι αὐτῶν ἢ μάτην ἐφοβήθης, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οὐκ ἔρχονται; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, καὶ πολλοί γε. Πῶς τοῦτο σαφές; Ὅτι, ἔφη, πολλοὶ ἦκοντες αὐτόθεν ἄλλος ἄλλον τρόπον πάντες ταῦτ' ἐλέγουσιν. Ἀγωνιστέον μὲν ἄρα ἡμῖν πρὸς τοὺς ἄνδρας. Ἀνάγκη γάρ, ἔφη. τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐ καὶ τὴν δύναμιν ἔλεξάς μοι, εἰ οἶσθα, πόση τις ἢ προσιοῦσα, καὶ πάλιν τὴν ἡμετέραν, ὅπως εἰδότες ἀμφοτέρας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευόμεθα ὅπως ἂν ἄριστα ἀγωνιζοίμεθα; Ἄκουε δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κυαζάρης.

Κροῖσος μὲν ὁ Λυδὸς ἄγειν λέγεται μυρίους μὲν ἱππέας, πελταστὰς δὲ καὶ τοξότας πλείους ἢ τετρακισμυρίους. Ἄρτακάμαν δὲ τὸν τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας ἄρχοντα λέγουσιν ἱππέας μὲν εἰς ὀκτακισχιλίους ἄγειν, λογχοφόρους δὲ σὺν πελτασταῖς οὐ μείους τετρακισμυρίων, Ἀρίβαιον δὲ τὸν τῶν Καππαδοκῶν

ἀκούσαντα |gladden      ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνο |consider      ὅτι ὀλίγοι  
 ὄντες οὗτοι οἱ |equally      καλούμενοι πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν  
                                  |honored  
 ἄλλων Περσῶν |easy      ἄρχουσιν. ἀτάρ, ἔφη, δέει τι  
 αὐτῶν ἢ μάτην |scare, scare      οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οὐκ ἔρχονται;  
                                  |away  
 |yea      μὰ Δί, ἔφη, καὶ πολλοί γε. |how? why? ~ |clear, under- ,  
    |standable  
 ἔφη, πολλοὶ |be      |from that place ~ ἄλλον τρόπον πάντες  
                                  |present,  
 ταῦτό λέγουσιν |have      |contend, exert μὲν ἄρα ἡμῖν πρὸς τοὺς  
                                  |arrived |oneself  
 ἄνδρας. |necessity γάρ, ἔφη. τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐ καὶ τὴν  
 δύναμιν ἔλεξάς μοι, εἰ οἶσθα, |how      many |approach      καὶ  
    |much, far?  
 πάλιν τὴν |our, my      , ὅπως εἰδότες |both      πρὸς ταῦτα  
 |(mp) to deliberate ~ ὥς ἂν ἄριστα |contend,      exert, Ἄκουε δὴ,  
    |oneself  
 ἔφη ὁ Κναζάρης.

Κροῖσος μὲν ὁ Λυδὸς ἄγειν λέγεται μυρίους μὲν  
 |rider      ,      |light troops      δὲ καὶ |archer      πλείους ἢ  
 τετρακισμυρίους. Ἄρτακάμαν δὲ τὸν τῆς μεγάλης  
 Φρυγίας ἄρχοντα λέγουσιν |rider      μὲν εἰς ὀκτακισχιλίους  
 ἄγειν, |spearman      δὲ σὺν |light troops      οὐ |less,  
    |smaller  
 τετρακισμυρίων, Ἀρίβαιον δὲ τὸν τῶν Καππαδοκῶν

Peers of ours, though they are few, find it easy to rule the rest of the Persians, who are many. But now," he added, "have you any need of us at all? Perhaps it was only a false alarm that troubled you, and the enemy are not advancing?"

"Indeed they are," said the other, "and in full force."

"How do you know?" asked Cyrus.

"Because," said he, "many deserters come to us, and all of them, in one fashion or another, tell the same tale."

"Then we must give battle?" said Cyrus.

"Needs must," Cyaxares replied.

"Well," answered Cyrus, "but you have not told me yet how great their power is, or our own either. I want to hear, if you can tell me, so that we may make our plans."

"Listen, then," said Cyaxares. "Croesus the Lydian is coming, we hear, with 10,000 horse and more than 40,000 archers and targeteers. Artamas the governor of Greater Phrygia is bringing, they say, 8000 horse, and lancers and targeteers also, 40,000 strong. Then there is Aribaius

*vocabulary***ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**γοῦν** at least then**δεῦρο** here, come here!**διακόσιοι** (ἄ) two hundred**δισμύριοι** (ὅ) 20,000**εἴωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**ἐλαχὺς** small; comp.: less ~light**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**μείων** less, smaller**μυριάς** -δος (ῶ, f, 3) countless, myriad**μυρίος** (ὅ) 10,000 ~myriad**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**πάμπολυς** very great**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

**σαφής** clear, understandable**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with ~ballistic

**σφενδονάω** sling**σφενδονέω** sling**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**τρισμύριοι** (ὅ) 30,000

βασιλέα ἰππέας μὲν ἑξακισχιλίους, τοξότας δὲ καὶ  
 πελταστὰς οὐ μείους τρισμυρίων, τὸν Ἀράβιον δὲ  
 Ἄραγδον ἰππέας τε εἰς μυρίους καὶ ἄρματα εἰς ἑκατὸν  
 καὶ σφενδονητῶν πάμπολύ τι χρῆμα. τοὺς μέντοι  
 Ἕλληνας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ οἰκοῦντας οὐδέν πω σαφὲς  
 λέγεται εἰ ἔπονται. τοὺς δὲ ἀπὸ Φρυγίας τῆς πρὸς  
 Ἑλλησπόντῳ συμβαλεῖν φασὶ Γάβαιδον ἔχοντα εἰς  
 Καῦστρου πεδίον ἑξακισχιλίους μὲν ἰππέας, πελταστὰς δὲ  
 εἰς μυρίους. Κᾶρας μέντοι καὶ Κίλικας καὶ Παφλαγόνας  
 παρακληθέντας οὗ φασιν ἔπεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ἀσσύριος ὁ  
 Βαβυλῶνά τε ἔχων καὶ τὴν ἄλλην Ἀσσυρίαν ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι  
 ἰππέας μὲν ἄξει οὐκ ἐλάττους δισμυρίων, ἄρματα δ' εὖ οἶδ'  
 οὐ μείον διακοσίων, πεζοὺς δὲ οἶμαι παμπόλλους· εἰώθει  
 γοῦν ὁπότε δεῦρ' ἐμβάλλοι. Σὺ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, πολεμίους  
 λέγεις ἰππέας μὲν ἑξακισμυρίους εἶναι, πελταστὰς δὲ  
 καὶ τοξότας πλεόν ἢ εἴκοσι μυριάδας. ἄγε δὴ τῆς σῆς  
 δυνάμεως τί φῆς πλῆθος εἶναι; εἰσὶν, ἔφη, Μήδων μὲν  
 ἱππεῖς πλείους τῶν μυρίων· πελτασταὶ



βασιλέα ἱππέας μὲν |6000 , |archer δὲ καὶ  
 |light troops οὐ |less, |30,000 , τὸν Ἀράβιον δὲ  
 |smaller  
 Ἄραγον ἱππέας τε εἰς μυρίους καὶ |chariot εἰς ἑκατὸν  
 καὶ σφενδονητῶν |very great τι χρῆμα. τοὺς μέντοι  
 |Greek τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ |inhabit οὐδὲν πω |clear, under-  
 |standable  
 λέγεται εἰ ἔπονται. τοὺς δὲ ἀπὸ Φρυγίας τῆς πρὸς  
 Ἑλλησπόντου |pit against; compare; Ἰάβαιδον ἔχοντα εἰς  
 |mp: meet, fall in with  
 Καῦστρου |plain, |6000 μὲν ἱππέας, |light troops δὲ  
 |sea  
 εἰς μυρίους. Κῆρας μέντοι καὶ Κίλικας καὶ Παφλαγόνας  
 παρακληθέντας οὗ φασιν ἔπεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ἀσσύριος ὁ  
 Βαβυλωνά τε ἔχων καὶ τὴν ἄλλην Ἀσσυρίαν ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι  
 ἱππέας μὲν ἄξει οὐκ |small |20,000 , |chariot δ' εὖ οἶδ'  
 οὐ |less, |two hundred |on foot; footsoldier |very great |be accustomed, in  
 |smaller |the habit  
 |at |when |here, |throw in; inspire, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, πολεμίους  
 |least |come  
 |then |here!  
 λέγεις ἱππεὺς μὲν ἑξακισμυρίους εἶναι, |light troops δὲ  
 καὶ |archer πλέον ἢ εἴκοσι |countless, . ἄγε δὴ τῆς σῆς  
 |myriad  
 δυνάμεως τί φῆς πλῆθος εἶναι; εἰσὶν, ἔφη, Μήδων μὲν  
 ἱππεὺς πλείους τῶν μυρίων\* |light troops

the king of Cappadocia with 6000 horse and 30,000 archers and targeteers. And Aragdus the Arabian with 10,000 horse, a hundred chariots, and innumerable slingers. As for the Hellenes who dwell in Asia, it is not clear as yet whether they will send a following or not. But the Phrygians from the Hellespont, we are told, are mustering in the Caystrian plain under Gabaidus, 6000 horse and 40,000 targeteers. Word has been sent to the Carians, Cilicians, and Paphlagonians, but it is said they will not rise; the Lord of Assyria and Babylon will himself, I believe, bring not less than 20,000 horse, and I make no doubt as many as 200 chariots, and thousands upon thousands of men on foot; such at least has been his custom whenever he invaded us before."

Cyrus answered: "Then you reckon the numbers of the enemy to be, in all, something like 60,000 horse and 200,000 archers and targeteers. And what do you take your own to be?"

"Well," he answered, "we ourselves can furnish over 10,000

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἀκροβολίζομαι** fight with missiles  
**ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on  
**δισμύριοι** (ὅ) 20,000  
**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μυρίος** (ὅ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike  
**ὄμορος** bordering

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

δὲ καὶ τοξόται γένοιντ' ἄν πως ἐκ τῆς ἡμετέρας κἄν  
ἐξακισμύριοι. Ἀρμενίων δ', ἔφη, τῶν όμόρων ἡμῖν  
παρέσσονται ἵππεῖς μὲν τετρακισχίλιοι, πεζοὶ δὲ δισμύριοι.  
Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἱππέας μὲν ἡμῖν εἶναι μείον  
ἢ τέταρτον μέρος τοῦ τῶν πολεμίων ἱππικοῦ, πεζοὺς  
δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἡμίσεις. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης, οὐκ  
ὀλίγους νομίζεις Περσῶν εἶναι οὓς σὺ φῆς ἄγειν; Ἄλλ'  
εἰ μὲν ἀνδρῶν προσδεῖ ἡμῖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴτε καὶ μή,  
αὐθις συμβουλευσόμεθα· τὴν δὲ μάχην μοι, ἔφη, λέξον  
ἐκάστων ἥτις ἐστί. Σχεδόν, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης, πάντων  
ἡ αὐτή· τοξόται γάρ εἰσι καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ οἳ τ' ἐκείνων  
καὶ οἱ ἡμέτεροι. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀκροβολίζεσθαι  
ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ τοιούτων γε τῶν ὅπλων ὄντων. Ἀνάγκη  
γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης· οὐκοῦν ἐν τούτῳ μὲν τῶν  
πλειόνων ἡ νίκη· πολὺ γὰρ ἂν θᾶπτον οἱ ὀλίγοι ὑπὸ τῶν  
πολλῶν τιτρωσκόμενοι ἀναλωθείησαν ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ ὑπὸ  
τῶν ὀλίγων· εἰ οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, ὦ Κῦρε, τί ἂν ἄλλο τις  
κρεῖττον εὗροι ἢ πέμπειν ἐς Πέρσας, καὶ ἅμα μὲν

δὲ καὶ |archer γένονται ἅν |somehow τῆς |our, my κὰν  
 ἑξακισμύριοι. Ἀρμενίων δ', ἔφη, τῶν |bordering ἡμῖν  
 παρέσσονται |rider μὲν |4000 , |on foot; |20,000  
 Λέγεις σύ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, |rider μὲν ἡμῖν εἶναι |less,  
 ἢ |fourth μέρος τοῦ τῶν πολεμίων |of horses, |on foot; footsoldier  
 δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς |half . Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κυζάρης, οὐκ  
 ὀλίγους |consider τῶν εἶναι οὓς σὺ φῆς ἄγειν; Ἄλλ'  
 εἰ μὲν ἀνδρῶν προσδεῖ ἡμῖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, |if, whenever;  
 ἐκαστῶν ἥτις ἐστί. |about , ἔφη ὁ Κυζάρης, πάντων  
 ἢ αὐτῇ\* |archer γάρ εἰσι καὶ |spearman οἳ τ' ἐκείνων  
 καὶ οἱ |our, my |not so?; and so ὁ Κῦρος, |fight with missiles  
 |necessity ἐστὶ τοιούτων γε τῶν |tool ὄντων. |necessity  
 γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κυζάρης\* |not so?; and so ἴτω μὲν τῶν  
 πλειόνων ἢ νίκη\* πολὺ γὰρ ἂν θάπτον οἱ ὀλίγοι ὑπὸ τῶν  
 πολλῶν |wound, bring to |consume, spend ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ ὑπὸ  
 τῶν ὀλίγων\* εἰ οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, ὦ Κῦρε, τί ἂν ἄλλο τις  
 κρεῖττον εὖροι ἢ πέμπειν ἐς Πέρσας, καὶ ἅμα μὲν

horse and perhaps, considering the state of the country, as many as 60,000 archers and targeteers. And from our neighbours, the Armenians," he added, "we look to get 4000 horse and 20,000 foot."

"I See," said Cyrus, "you reckon our cavalry at less than a third of the enemy's, and our infantry at less than half."

"Ah," said Cyaxares, "and perhaps you feel that the force you are bringing from Persia is very small?"

"We will consider that later on," answered Cyrus, "and see then if we require more men or not. Tell me first the methods of fighting that the different troops adopt."

"They are much the same for all," answered Cyaxares, "that is to say, their men and ours alike are armed with bows and javelins."

"Well," replied Cyrus, "if such arms are used, skirmishing at long range must be the order of the day." "True," said the other. "And in that case," went on Cyrus, "the victory is in the hands of the larger force; for even if the same numbers fall on either side, the few would be exhausted long before the many." "If that be so," cried Cyaxares, "there is nothing left for us but to send to Persia, and make them see that if disaster falls on Media it will fall on Persia

*vocabulary***αίρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**γέρρον** wicker object**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**ἐνοράω** look at, notice something in**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic**ὁμότιμος** (ι) equally honored**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**Πέρσης** Persian**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum**προερέω** say beforehand**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
~legion**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**στέρνον** breast, chest, seat of feelings

~sternum

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**σχολάζω** have leisure**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay  
~ballistic

διδάσκειν αὐτοὺς ὅτι εἴ τι πείσονται Μῆδοι, εἰς Πέρσας  
 τὸ δεινὸν ἦξει, ἅμα δὲ αἰτεῖν πλεόν στρατεύμα; Ἀλλὰ  
 τοῦτο μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι, οὐδ' εἰ πάντες  
 ἔλθοιεν Πέρσαι, πλήθει γε οὐχ ὑπερβαλοίμεθ' ἂν τοὺς  
 πολεμίους. Τί μὲν ἄλλο ἐνορᾶς ἄμεινον τούτου; Ἐγὼ  
 μὲν ἂν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰ σὺ εἶην, ὥς τάχιστα ὅπλα  
 ποιοίμην πᾶσι Πέρσαις τοῖς προσιούσιν οἰάπερ ἔχοντες  
 ἔρχονται παρ' ἡμῶν οἱ τῶν ὁμοτίμων καλούμενοι· ταῦτα  
 δ' ἐστὶ θώραξ μὲν περὶ τὰ στέρνα, γέρρον δὲ εἰς τὴν  
 ἀριστεράν, κοπίς δὲ ἢ σάγαρις εἰς τὴν δεξιάν· κὰν ταῦτα  
 παρασκευάσῃς, ἡμῖν μὲν ποιήσεις τὸ ὁμόσε τοῖς ἐναντίοις  
 ἶεναι ἀσφαλέστατον, τοῖς πολεμίοις δὲ τὸ φεύγειν ἢ τὸ  
 μένειν αἰρετώτερον. τάττομεν δέ, ἔφη, ἡμᾶς μὲν αὐτοὺς  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς μένοντας· οἳ γε μέντ' αὖ αὐτῶν φεύγωσι, τούτους  
 ὑμῖν καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις νέμομεν, ὥς μὴ σχολάζωσι μήτε  
 μένειν μήτε ἀναστρέφεσθαι. Κῦρος μὲν οὕτως ἔλεξε·  
 τῷ δὲ Κναξάρῃ ἔδοξέ τε εὖ λέγειν, καὶ τοῦ μὲν πλείους  
 μεταπέμπεσθαι οὐκέτι ἐμέμνητο, παρεσκευάζετο δὲ ὅπλα  
 τὰ προειρημένα.



|teach αὐτοὺς ὅτι εἴ τι πείσονται Μῆδοι, εἰς Πέρσας  
 τὸ δεινὸν |be present, have|ask for πλέον |army , Ἀλλὰ  
 |arrived  
 τοῦτο μὲν, ἔφη ὁ |authority; ὅ ἴσθι ὅτι, οὐδ' εἰ πάντες  
 |validity  
 ἔλθοιεν Πέρσαι, πλήθει γε οὐχ |cause to go be- ἂν τοὺς  
 |yond; delay  
 πολεμίους. Τί μὴν ἄλλο |look at|better τούτου; Ἐγὼ  
 |notice  
 μὲν ἂν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς αὐτὴν εἶην, ὥς τάχιστα |tool  
 |some-thing  
 |in  
 ποιοίμην πᾶσι Πέρσαις τοῖς προσιοῦσιν οἰάπερ ἔχοντες  
 ἔρχονται παρ' ἡμῶν οἱ τῶν |equally καλούμενοι· ταῦτα  
 |honored  
 δ' ἐστὶ |breastplate· ὑπὲρ τὰ |chest , |wicker δὲ εἰς τὴν  
 |object  
 |left-hand , κοπὺς δὲ ἡ σάγαρις εἰς τὴν δεξιάν· κὰν ταῦτα  
 |prepare, render , ἡμῖν μὲν ποιήσεις τὸ |to the same|opposite  
 |spot  
 ἰέναι |safe, easy, steady, τοῖς πολεμίους δὲ τὸ φεύγειν ἢ τὸ  
 |careful  
 μένειν |takeable, . |arrange δέ, ἔφη, ἡμᾶς μὲν αὐτοὺς  
 |desirable  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς μένοντας· οἳ γε μέντ' αὐτῶν φεύγωσι, τούτους  
 ὑμῖν καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις |distribute ὥς μὴ |have leisure |neither  
 μένειν |neither|act: overturn; mid: Κῦρος μὲν οὕτως ἔλεξε·  
 |find oneself in  
 τῷ δὲ Κναξάρῃ ἔδοξε τε εὖ λέγειν, καὶ τοῦ μὲν πλείους  
 |send; (mid) sum-|no more|remind; , |prepare, render δὲ |tool  
 |mon (mid)  
 τὰ προειρημένα.  
 |remember,  
 |turn one's  
 |thoughts to

next, and beg them for a larger force.” “Ah, but,” said Cyrus, “you must remember that even if every single Persian were to come at once, we could not outnumber our enemies.” “But,” said the other, “can you see anything else to be done?” “For my part,” answered Cyrus, “if I could have my way, I would arm every Persian who is coming here in precisely the same fashion as our Peers at home, that is to say, with a corslet for the breast, a shield for the left arm, and a sword or battle-axe for the right hand. If you will give us these you will make it quite safe for us to close with the enemy, and our foes will find that flight is far pleasanter than defence. But we Persians,” he added, “will deal with those who do stand firm, leaving the fugitives to you and to your cavalry, who must give them no time to rally and no time to escape.”

That was the counsel of Cyrus, and Cyaxares approved it. He thought no more of sending for a larger force, but set about preparing the equipment he had been asked

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**θήγω** sharpen**μεμπτός** blameworthy**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**ὀμότιμος** (ι) equally honored**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**Πέρσης** Persian**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμπίπτω** fall together, happen**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle

~demagogue

**σχεδόν** near, approximately at

~ischemia

**τήγω** melt**τοιόσδε** such**ὕμέτερος** (ὕ) yours

καὶ σχεδόν τε ἔτοιμα ἦν καὶ τῶν Περσῶν οἱ ὁμότιμοι  
παρήσαν ἔχοντες τὸ ἀπὸ Περσῶν στράτευμα. ἐνταῦθα  
δὴ εἰπεῖν λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος συναγαγὼν αὐτούς· Ἄνδρες  
φίλοι, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ὁρῶν αὐτοὺς μὲν καθωπλισμένους  
οὕτω καὶ ταῖς ψυχαῖς παρεσκευασμένους ὥς εἰς χεῖρας  
συμμείζοντας τοῖς πολεμίοις, τοὺς δὲ ἐπομένους ὑμῖν  
Πέρσας γιγνώσκων ὅτι οὕτως ὠπλισμένοι εἰσὶν ὥς  
ὅτι προσωτάτω ταχθέντες μάχεσθαι, ἔδωκα μὴ ὀλίγοι  
καὶ ἔρημοι συμμάχων συμπίπτοντες πολεμίοις πολλοῖς  
πάθοιτέ τι. νῦν οὖν, ἔφη, σώματα μὲν ἔχοντες ἀνδρῶν  
ἦκετε οὐ μεμπτά· ὅπλα δὲ ἔσται αὐτοῖς ὅμοια τοῖς  
ἡμετέροις· τὰς γε μέντοι ψυχὰς θήγειν αὐτῶν ὑμέτερον  
ἔργον. ἄρχοντος γάρ ἐστιν οὐχ ἑαυτὸν μόνον ἀγαθὸν  
παρέχειν, ἀλλὰ δεῖ καὶ τῶν ἀρχομένων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ὅπως  
ὥς βέλτιστοι ἔσονται.

Ὁ Μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δ' ἥσθησαν μὲν πάντες, νομίζοντες  
μετὰ πλειόνων ἀγωνιεῖσθαι· εἰς δ' αὐτῶν καὶ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.  
Ἀλλὰ θαυμαστά, ἔφη, ἴσως δόξω λέγειν, εἰ

καὶ |about τε ἔτοιμα ἦν καὶ τῶν Περσῶν οἱ |equally  
 |honored  
 παρήσαν ἔχοντες τὸ ἀπὸ Περσῶν |army . |there, here  
 δὴ εἰπεῖν λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος |join αὐτούς· Ἄνδρες  
 φίλοι, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ὁρῶν αὐτοὺς μὲν καθωπλισμένους  
 οὕτω καὶ ταῖς |soul; life |prepare, render ὥς εἰς χεῖρας  
 |mix τοῖς πολεμίοις, τοὺς δὲ ἐπομένους ὑμῖν  
 Πέρσας γινώσκων ὅτι οὕτως |prepare, arm εἰσὶν ὥς  
 ὅτι προσωτάτω ταχθέντες μάχεσθαι, |to fear μὴ ὀλίγοι  
 καὶ ἔρημοι συμμάχων |fall together, πολεμίοις πολλοῖς  
 |happen  
 πάθοιτέ τι. νῦν οὖν, ἔφη, |body, μὲν ἔχοντες ἀνδρῶν  
 |person,  
 |thing  
 |be present, |blamewor- |tool οὐδε ἔσται αὐτοῖς |like τοῖς  
 |have arrived |thy  
 |our, my τάς γε |however |soul; life |sharpen ὑτῶν |yours  
 ἔργον. ἄρχοντος γάρ ἐστιν οὐχ ἑαυτὸν μόνον ἀγαθὸν  
 |furnish , ἀλλὰ δεῖ καὶ τῶν ἀρχομένων |take care of, ὅπως  
 |oversee  
 ὥς |best, ἔσονται.  
 |noblest  
 Ὁ Μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δ' |be pleased, enjoy ὕντες, |consider cus-  
 |tomary; believe  
 μετὰ πλειόνων |contend, exert εἰς δ' αὐτῶν καὶ ἔλεξε |such  
 |oneself  
 Ἀλλὰ θαυμαστά, ἔφη, |equal δόξω λέγειν, εἰ

for, and all was in readiness just about the time when the Peers arrived from Persia at the head of their own troops. Then, so says the story, Cyrus called the Peers together and spoke to them as follows: "Men of Persia, my friends and comrades, when I looked at you first and saw the arms you bore and how you were all on fire to meet the enemy, hand to hand, and when I remembered that your squires are only equipped for fighting on the outskirts of the field, I confess my mind misgave me. Few and forlorn they will be, I said to myself, swallowed up in a host of enemies; no good can come of it. But to-day you are here, and your men behind you, stalwart and stout of limb, and to-morrow they shall have armour like our own. None could find fault with their thews and sinews, and as for their spirit, it is for us to see it does not fail. A leader must not only have a stout heart himself; he must see to it that his followers are as valiant as he."

Thus Cyrus spoke, and the Peers were well satisfied at his words, feeling that on the day of battle they would have more to help them in the struggle. And one of them

*vocabulary***ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἔσθω** eat ~eat**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θήγω** sharpen**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay  
aside ~thesis**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**ὁμότιμος** (ἶ) equally honored**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite**πάντως** by all means**Πέρσης** Persian**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer**συμμάχομαι** fight with**τιμάω** (ἶ) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**τοιόσδε** such**φρόνημα** -τος (n, 3) mind, spirit**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χρήσιμος** useful

Κύρῳ συμβουλεύσω τι εἰπεῖν ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν, ὅταν τὰ ὄπλα λαμβάνωσιν οἱ ἡμῖν μέλλοντες συμμάχεσθαι· ἀλλὰ γιγνώσκω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι οἱ τῶν ἱκανωτάτων καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν λόγοι οὗτοι καὶ μάλιστα ἐνδύονται ταῖς ψυχαῖς τῶν ἀκουόντων· καὶ δῶρά γε ἦν διδῶσιν οἱ τοιοῦτοι, κὰν μείω τυγχάνῃ ὄντα ἢ τὰ παρὰ τῶν ὁμοίων, ὅμως μείζονος αὐτὰ τιμῶνται οἱ λαμβάνοντες. καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, οἱ Πέρσαι παραστάται ὑπὸ Κύρου πολὺ μᾶλλον ἡσθήσονται ἢ ὑφ' ἡμῶν παρακαλούμενοι, εἰς τε τοὺς ὁμοτίμους καθιστάμενοι βεβαιότερως σφίσιν ἡγήσονται ἔχειν τοῦτο ὑπὸ βασιλέως τε παιδὸς καὶ ὑπὸ στρατηγοῦ γενόμενον ἢ εἰ ὑφ' ἡμῶν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο γίγνοιτο. ἀπεῖναι μέντοι οὐδὲ τὰ ἡμέτερα χρή, ἀλλὰ παντὶ τρόπῳ δεῖ τῶν ἀνδρῶν θήγειν πάντως τὸ φρόνημα. ἡμῖν γὰρ ἔσται τοῦτο χρήσιμον ὃ τι ἂν οὗτοι βελτίονες γένωνται.

Οὕτω δὲ ὁ Κῦρος καταθεὶς τὰ ὄπλα εἰς τὸ μέσον καὶ συγκαλέσας πάντας τοὺς Περσῶν στρατιώτας ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, ὑμεῖς καὶ ἔφυτε ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμῖν



Κύρω |give advice; (mid) consult τι εἰπεῖν ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν, |whenever  
 |tool λαμβάνωσιν οἱ ἡμῖν μέλλοντες |fight with ἀλλὰ  
 γινώσκω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι οἱ τῶν |sufficient; fit, καὶ εὖ  
 |empowered καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν λόγοι οὗτοι καὶ μάλιστα |go into, put on  
 ταῖς |soul; life ὧν ἀκουόντων· καὶ |gift γε ἦν διδῶσιν οἱ  
 τοιοῦτοι, κὰν μείω τυγχάνῃ ὄντα ἢ τὰ παρὰ τῶν |like  
 |anyway, nevertheless· ἀ τιμῶνται οἱ λαμβάνοντες. καὶ νῦν,  
 ἔφη, οἱ Πέρσαι παραστάται ὑπὸ Κύρου πολὺν μᾶλλον  
 ἡσθήσονται ἢ ὑφ' ἡμῶν |summon, exhort, εἰς τε τοὺς  
 |(pass) repent |equally |set down, land; βεβαιοτέρως σφίσιν ἡγήσονται  
 |honored |become, be |ἔχειν τοῦτο ὑπὸ βασιλέως τε παιδὸς καὶ ὑπὸ στρατηγοῦ  
 γενόμενον ἢ εἰ ὑφ' ἡμῶν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο γίγνοιτο. |be absent, go away,  
 |return |however ὑδὲ τὰ |our, my |must, ἄλλὰ παντὶ |turn; manner, ὅν  
 |should |kind, fashion |ἀνδρῶν |sharpen|by all means |mind, ἡμῖν γὰρ ἔσται τοῦτο  
 |spirit |useful ὅ τι ἂν οὗτοι βελτίονες γένωνται.  
 Οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κῦρος |put down τὰ |tool εἰς τὸ μέσον  
 καὶ |call together πάντας τοὺς Περσῶν |soldier, ἔλεξε  
 |mercenary |such Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, ὑμεῖς καὶ |produce, . ἢ αὐτῇ ἡμῖν  
 |beget; clasp

said, "Perhaps it will seem strange if I ask Cyrus to speak in our stead to our fellow-combatants when they receive their arms, and yet I know well that the words of him who has the greatest power for weal or woe sink deepest into the listener's heart. His very gifts, though they should be less than the gifts of equals, are valued more. These new comrades of ours," he went on, "would rather be addressed by Cyrus himself than by us, and now that they are to take their place among the Peers their title will seem to them far more secure if it is given them by the king's own son and our general-in- chief. Not that we have not still our own duties left. We are bound to do our best in every way to rouse the spirit of our men. Shall we not gain ourselves by all they gain in valour?"

So it came about that Cyrus had the new armour placed before him and summoned a general meeting of the Persian soldiery, and spoke to them as follows:

"Men of Persia, born and bred in the same land as ourselves, whose limbs are as

*vocabulary***ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman

~acute

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away**ἀριστερός** left-hand**γέρρον** wicker object**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**ἐθίζω** accustom**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis**ἐξαμαρτάνω** miss; err, do wrong**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's  
responsibility**μετέχω** partake of**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ὀπλισίς** -τος (f) arming for war**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παίω** hit**πορίζω** bring about, provide**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid:  
have before one**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**στέρνον** breast, chest, seat of feelings  
~sternum**σχολή** rest, leisure**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
~bear**χείρων** worse, more base, inferior,  
weaker

καὶ ἐτράφητε, καὶ τὰ σώματά τε οὐδὲν ἡμῶν χείρονα ἔχετε, ψυχάς τε οὐδὲν κακίονας ὑμῖν προσήκει ἡμῶν ἔχειν. τοιοῦτοι δ' ὄντες ἐν μὲν τῇ πατρίδι οὐ μετείχετε τῶν ἴσων ἡμῖν, οὐχ ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἀπελαθέντες ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῦ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνάγκην ὑμῖν εἶναι πορίζεσθαι. νῦν δὲ ὅπως μὲν ταῦτα ἔξετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς· ἔξεστι δ' ὑμῖν, εἰ βούλεσθε, λαβόντας ὅπλα οἰάπερ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν ἡμῖν κίνδυνον ἐμβαίνειν, καὶ ἂν τι ἐκ τούτων καλὸν καγαθὸν γίγνηται, τῶν ὁμοίων ἡμῖν ἀξιουῖσθαι. τὸν μὲν οὖν πρόσθεν χρόνον ὑμεῖς τε τοξόται καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ ἦτε καὶ ἡμεῖς, καὶ εἴ τι χείρους ἡμῶν ταῦτα ποιεῖν ἦτε, οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὑμῖν σχολὴ ὥσπερ ἡμῖν τούτων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι· ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ ὀπλίσει οὐδὲν ἡμεῖς ὑμῶν προέξομεν. θώραξ μὲν γε περὶ τὰ στέρνα ἀρμόττων ἐκάστω ἔσται, γέρρον δὲ ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ, ὃ πάντες εἰθίσμεθα φορεῖν, μάχαιρα δὲ ἢ σάγαρις ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ, ἣ δὴ παίειν τοὺς ἐναντίους δεήσει οὐδὲν φυλαττομένους μή τι παίοντες ἐξαμάρτωμεν. τί οὖν ἂν ἐν τούτοις ἕτερος ἐτέρου

καὶ |nurture , καὶ τὰ σώματά τε οὐδὲν ἡμῶν |worse, more base

ἔχετε, ψυχὰς τε οὐδὲν κακίονας ὑμῖν |belong to, ἡμῶν ἔχειν.  
|it beseems

τοιούτοι δ' ὄντες ἐν μὲν τῇ πατρίδι οὐ |partake of τῶν

ἴσων ἡμῖν, οὐχ ὑφ' ἡμῶν |expel, exclude, ward off; γὰρ τοῦ τὰ  
|(intrans) ride away

|fit, suitable ἰνάγκην ὑμῖν εἶναι |bring about, . νῦν δὲ ὅπως μὲν  
|provide

ταῦτα ἔξετε ἐμοὶ |be in/on the mind . θεοῖς· ἔξεστι δ' ὑμῖν,

εἰ βούλεσθε, λαβόντας |tool οἷάπερ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν εἰς τὸν

αὐτὸν ἡμῖν |danger |step on, board ἂν τι ἐκ τούτων καλὸν

κάγαθὸν γίγνηται, τῶν |like ἡμῖν |consider wor- ὃν μὲν  
|thy, fitting

οὖν πρόσθεν χρόνον ὑμεῖς τε |archer καὶ |spearman ἦτε

καὶ ἡμεῖς, καὶ εἴ τι |worse, more base . ταῦτα ποιεῖν ἦτε, οὐδὲν

|wonderful; οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὑμῖν |rest, ὥσπερ ἡμῖν τούτων  
|admirable |leisure

|take care of, ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ ὀπλίσει οὐδὲν ἡμεῖς ὑμῶν  
|oversee

|be ahead, have|breastplate ἔν γε περὶ τὰ |chest ἀρμόττων  
|before

ἐκάστω ἔσται, |wicker δὲ ἐν τῇ |left-hand , ὃ πάντες  
|object

|accustom |frequent- |knife δὲ ἡ σάγαρις ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ, ἡ  
|tative of

δὴ |hit φέρω, to  
|carry ὅπως ἐναντίους δεήσει οὐδὲν φυλαττομένους μή

τι |hit |miss; err, do wrong ἂν ὦν ἐν τούτοις ἕτερος

ἐτέρου

stout and as strong as our own, your hearts should be as brave. I know they are; and yet at home in the land of our fathers you did not share our rights; not that we drove you out ourselves, but you were banished by the compulsion that lay upon you to find your livelihood for yourselves. Now from this day forward, with heaven's help, it shall be my care to provide it for you; and now, if so you will, you have it in your power to take the armour that we wear ourselves, face the same perils and win the same honours, if so be you make any glorious deed your own. In former days you were trained, like ourselves, in the use of bow and javelin, and if you were at all inferior to us in skill, that was not to be wondered at; you had not the same leisure for practice as we; but now in this new accoutrement we shall have no pre-eminence at all. Each of us will wear a corslet fitted to his breast and carry a shield on his left arm of the type to which we are all accustomed, and in his right hand a sabre or a battle-axe. With these we shall smite the enemy before us, and need have no fear that we shall miss the mark. How can we differ from one another with these arms? There can be no difference except in daring. And daring you may

*vocabulary***ἀμηχανέω** be helpless, resourceless**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀπογράφω** copy, register**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**ἀσκέω** work on**βιοτεύω** live, live on**δωρέω** give ~donate**εἰκός** likely**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops**καταμένω** stay; not change**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy

**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μισθοφόρος** mercenary**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**οὐδέπω** not, not yet**Πέρσης** Persian**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσέχω** belong to, it beseems**προσίημι** be allowed near**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military

unit

**τόλμη** courage**χρήζω** need ~chresard

διαφέροι ἡμῶν πλὴν τόλμη; ἦν οὐδὲν ὑμῖν ἦττον προσήκει ἢ ἡμῖν ὑποτρέφεσθαι. νίκης τε γὰρ ἐπιθυμεῖν, ἢ τὰ καλὰ πάντα καὶ τὰγαθὰ κτᾶται τε καὶ σώζει, τί μᾶλλον ἡμῖν ἢ ὑμῖν προσήκει; κράτους τε, ὃ πάντα τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων τοῖς κρείττοσι δωρεῖται, τί εἰκὸς ἡμᾶς μᾶλλον ἢ καὶ ὑμᾶς τούτου δεῖσθαι; τέλος εἶπεν· Ἀκηκόατε πάντα· ὁρᾶτε τὰ ὄπλα· ὃ μὲν χρήζων λαμβανέτω ταῦτα καὶ ἀπογραφέσθω πρὸς τὸν ταξίαρχον εἰς τὴν ὁμοίαν τάξιν ἡμῖν· ὅτω δ' ἀρκεῖ ἐν μισθοφόρου χώρα εἶναι, καταμενέτω ἐν τοῖς ὑπηρετικοῖς ὅπλοις. ὃ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν. ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι ἐνόμισαν, εἰ παρακαλούμενοι ὥστε τὰ ὅμοια πονοῦντες τῶν αὐτῶν τυγχάνειν μὴ ἐθελήσουσι ταῦτα ποιεῖν, δικαίως ἂν διὰ παντὸς τοῦ αἰῶνος ἀμηχανοῦντες βιοτεύειν. οὕτω δὲ ἀπογράφονται πάντες ἀνέλαβόν τε τὰ ὄπλα πάντες.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἱ πολέμοι ἐλέγοντο μὲν προσιέναι, παρῆσαν δὲ οὐδέπω, ἐν τούτῳ ἐπειρᾶτο ὁ Κῦρος ἀσκεῖν μὲν τὰ σώματα τῶν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς ἰσχύν, διδάσκειν δὲ τὰ



|carry on; ,differ;|except|courage ἦν οὐδὲν ὑμῖν ἡττον |belong to,  
|excel |it beseems

ἢ ἡμῖν ὑποτρέφεσθαι. |victory .:ε γὰρ |wish, covet, ἢ τὰ καλὰ

πάντα καὶ τὰγαθὰ κτᾶται τε καὶ σώζει, τί μᾶλλον ἡμῖν

ἢ ὑμῖν |belong to, it|strength, , ὃ πάντα τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων  
|beseems |power; vic-

τοῖς κρείττοσι δωρεῖται, τί |likely ἡμᾶς μᾶλλον ἢ καὶ ὑμᾶς

τούτου δεῖσθαι; τέλος εἶπεν· Ἀκηκόατε πάντα· ὁρᾶτε τὰ

|tool ὁ μὲν |need λαμβανέτω ταῦτα καὶ |copy, register

πρὸς τὸν |military rank ἐς τὴν |like τάξιν ἡμῖν· ὅτω δ'

|satisfy; , |mercenary χώρα εἶναι, |stay; not change' τοῖς  
|ward off,  
|defend;  
|suffice

ὑποσέτικοῖς |tool ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν. ἀκούσαντες δὲ

οἱ Πέρσαι ἐνόμισαν, εἰ |summon, exhort, ὥστε τὰ |like  
|(pass) repent

|work τῶν αὐτῶν τυγχάνειν μὴ ἐθελήσουσι ταῦτα

ποιεῖν, δικαίως ἂν διὰ παντὸς τοῦ |life force |be helpless, re-  
|sourceless

|live, live on οὕτω δὲ |copy, register πάντες |take up, re-  
|cover, resume

|tool πάντες.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἱ πολέμοι ἐλέγοντο μὲν προσιέναι, παρήσαν

δὲ |not, not yet' , τούτῳ ἐπειρᾶτο ὁ Κῦρος |work on , μὲν τὰ

σώματα τῶν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς |strength; , body εἰν δὲ τὰ  
|of troops

foster in your hearts as much as we in ours. What greater right have we than you to love victory and follow after her, victory who wins for us and preserves to us all things that are beautiful and good? Why should you, any more than we, be found lacking in that power which takes the goods of weaklings and bestows them on the strong?"

He ended: "Now you have heard all. There lie your weapons; let him who chooses take them up and write his name with the brigadier in the same roll as ours. And if a man prefers to remain a mercenary, let him do so; he carries the arms of a servant."

Thus spoke Cyrus; and the Persians, every man of them, felt they would be ashamed for the rest of their days, and deservedly, if they drew back now, when they were offered equal honour in return for equal toil. One and all they inscribed their names and took up the new arms.

And now in the interval, before the enemy were actually at hand, but while rumour said they were advancing, Cyrus took on himself a three-fold task: to bring the physical strength of his men to the highest pitch, to teach them tactics, and to

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin**ἄσκέω** work on**γέρον** wicker object**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐννοέω** consider**θήγω** sharpen**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**ἱκάνω** (ᾱ) reach, arrive at**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**κράτιστος** best**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**περιαιρέω** strip off**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order before**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect ~legion**προσέχω** direct to; think about**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**τόξον** bow ~toxic**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**φιλονικία** (τι) rivalry, competition

τακτικά, θήγειν δὲ τὰς ψυχὰς εἰς τὰ πολεμικά. καὶ  
 πρῶτον μὲν λαβὼν παρὰ Κναζάρου ὑπηρέτας προσέταξεν  
 ἐκάστοις τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἱκανῶς ὧν ἐδέοντο πάντα  
 πεποιημένα παρασχεῖν· τοῦτο δὲ παρασκευάσας οὐδὲν  
 αὐτοῖς ἐλελοίπει ἄλλο ἢ ἀσκεῖν τὰ ἀμφὶ τὸν πόλεμον,  
 ἐκείνο δοκῶν καταμεμαθηκέναι ὅτι οὗτοι κράτιστοι  
 ἕκαστα γίνονται οἱ ἂν ἀφέμενοι τοῦ πολλοῖς προσέχειν  
 τὸν νοῦν ἐπὶ ἓν ἔργον τράπωνται. καὶ αὐτῶν δὲ τῶν  
 πολεμικῶν περιελὼν καὶ τὸ τόξῳ μελετᾶν καὶ ἀκοντίῳ  
 κατέλιπε τοῦτο μόνον αὐτοῖς τὸ σὺν μαχαίρᾳ καὶ γέρρῳ  
 καὶ θώρακι μάχεσθαι· ὥστε εὐθὺς αὐτῶν παρεσκεύασε  
 τὰς γνώμας ὡς ὁμόσε ἰτέον εἴη τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἢ  
 ὁμολογητέον μηδενὸς εἶναι ἀξίους συμμάχους· τοῦτο δὲ  
 χαλεπὸν ὁμολογήσαι οἵτινες ἂν εἰδῶσιν ὅτι οὐδὲ δι' ἓν  
 ἄλλο τρέφονται ἢ ὅπως μαχοῦνται ὑπὲρ τῶν τρεφόντων.  
 ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοις ἐννοήσας ὅτι περὶ ὀπόσων ἂν  
 ἐγγένωνται ἀνθρώποις φιλονικίαι, πολὺ μᾶλλον ἐθέλουσι  
 ταῦτ' ἀσκεῖν, ἀγῶνάς τε αὐτοῖς προεῖπεν ἀπάντων ὀπόσα

τακτικά,	sharpen	δὲ τὰς ψυχὰς εἰς τὰ	warlike,	καὶ
			hostile	

πρώτον μὲν λαβὼν παρὰ Κναξάρου	servant,  officer	post at, attach  to, command
--------------------------------	----------------------	---------------------------------

ἐκάστοις τῶν | soldier,  
mercenary

πεποιημένα παρασχέιν· τοῦτο δὲ παρασκευάσας οὐδὲν

αὐτοῖς ἐλελοίπει ἄλλο ἢ |work on τὰ ἀμφὶ τὸν πόλεμον,

ἐκεῖνο δοκῶν |examine, observe      ὅτι οὕτοι |best

ἕκαστα γίνονται οἱ ἂν ἀφέμενοι τοῦ πολλοῖς | direct to;  
| think about

τὸν νοῦν ἐπὶ ἐν ἔργον |divert καὶ αὐτῶν δὲ τῶν

warlike,	strip off	καὶ τὸ	bow	pursue, attend	diminutive
hostile				to, exercise	of javelin

leave behind,	<i>ὑπο μόνον αὐτοῖς τὸ σὺν</i>	knife	<i>καὶ</i>	wicker
abandon				object

καὶ |breastplate ἵχῃ· ὥστε εὐθὺς αὐτῶν παρεσκεύασε

τὰς γνώμας ὡς |to the same spot ἢ τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἡ

agree with/to μηδενὸς εἶναι ἀξίους συμμάχους· τοῦτο δέ

χαλεπὸν |agree with/to οἵτινες ἂν εἰδῶσιν ὅτι οὐδὲ δι' ἐν

ἄλλο |nurture            ἢ ὅπως μαχοῦνται ὑπὲρ τῶν |nurture

ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοις |consider ὅτι περὶ |as/how many/great

live in ἀνθρώποις φιλονικίαι, πολὺν μᾶλλον ἐθέλουσι

ταῦτ' |work on |gathering : ἐ αὐτοῖς προεῖπεν ἀπάντων |as/how many/great  
place

rouse their spirit for martial deeds. He asked Cyaxares for a body of assistants whose duty it should be to provide each of his soldiers with all they could possibly need, thus leaving the men themselves free for the art of war. He had learnt, he thought, that success, in whatever sphere, was only to be won by refusing to attempt a multitude of tasks and concentrating the mind on one.

Thus in the military training itself he gave up the practice with bow and javelin, leaving his men to perfect themselves in the use of sabre, shield, and corslet, accustoming them from the very first to the thought that they must close with the enemy, or confess themselves worthless as fellow-combatants; a harsh conclusion for those who knew that they were only protected in order to fight on behalf of their protectors. And further, being convinced that wherever the feeling of emulation can be roused, there the eagerness to

*vocabulary***ἄθλον** ἄεθλου prize ~athlete**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὑ) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀσκέω** work on**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten  
~decimal**ἐπαναβαίνω** mount; rise**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιστήμων** skillful, clever ~station**εὐπειθής** obedient**εὐταξία** good order ~syntax**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**κράτιστος** best**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
before**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
~legion**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**στρατιωτικός** military**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**φιλοκίνδυνος** (ὑ) adventurous,  
foolhardy**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἐγίγνωσκεν ἀσκεῖσθαι ἀγαθὸν εἶναι ὑπὸ στρατιωτῶν καὶ προεῖπε τάδε, ἰδιώτῃ μὲν ἑαυτὸν παρέχειν εὐπειθῇ τοῖς ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐθελόπονον καὶ φιλοκίνδυνον μετ' εὐταξίας καὶ ἐπιστήμονα τῶν στρατιωτικῶν καὶ φιλόκαλον περὶ ὅπλα καὶ φιλότιμον ἐπὶ πᾶσι τοῖς τοιούτοις, πεμπαδάρχῳ δ' αὐτὸν ὄντα οἰόνπερ τὸν ἀγαθὸν ἰδιώτην καὶ τὴν πεμπάδα εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν τοιαύτην παρέχειν, δεκαδάρχῳ δὲ τὴν δεκάδα ὡσαύτως, λοχαγῷ δὲ τὸν λόχον, καὶ ταξιάρχῳ ἀνεπὶκλήτον αὐτὸν ὄντα ἐπιμελεῖσθαι καὶ τῶν ὑφ' αὐτῷ ἀρχόντων ὅπως ἐκεῖνοι αὐτῶν ἂν ἄρχωσι παρέξουσιν τὰ δέοντα ποιούντας. ἅθλα δὲ προύφηγε τοῖς μὲν ταξιάρχοις ὡς τοὺς κρατίστας δόξαντας τὰς τάξεις παρεσκευάσθαι χιλιάρχους ἔσεσθαι, τῶν δὲ λοχαγῶν οἱ κρατίστους δόξειαν τοὺς λόχους ἀποδεικνύναι, εἰς τὰς τῶν ταξιάρχων χώρας ἐπαναβήσεσθαι, τῶν δ' αὖ δεκαδάρχων τοὺς κρατίστους εἰς τὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν χώρας καταστήσεσθαι, τῶν δ' αὖ πεμπαδάρχων ὡσαύτως εἰς τὰς τῶν δεκαδάρχων, τῶν γε μὴν ἰδιωτῶν τοὺς



ἐγίγνωσκεν |work on ἀγαθὸν εἶναι ὑπὸ |soldier, καὶ  
 |mercenary  
 προεῖπε τάδε, |private; a layman ὃν παρέχειν |obedient τοῖς  
 ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐθελόπονον καὶ |adventurous, μετ' |good order  
 |foolhardy  
 καὶ |skillful, clever τῶν |military καὶ φιλόκαλον περὶ  
 |tool καὶ φιλότιμον ἐπὶ πᾶσι τοῖς τοιούτοις, πεμπαδάρχῳ  
 δ' αὐτὸν ὄντα οἰόνπερ τὸν ἀγαθὸν |private; a layman ἔν  
 πεμπάδα εἰς τὸ |powerful, τοιαύτην παρέχειν, δεκαδάρχῳ  
 |possible  
 δὲ τὴν |decade |in the same|captain δὲ τὸν |ambush, band,  
 |way |childbirth  
 |military rank' ἐπὶ κλητὸν αὐτὸν ὄντα |take care of, καὶ τῶν  
 |oversee  
 ὑφ' αὐτῷ ἀρχόντων ὅπως ἐκείνοι αὐτῶν ἂν ἄρχουσι  
 παρέξουσι τὰ δέοντα ποιούντας. |prize δὲ προύφηγε τοῖς  
 μὲν |military rank ὅς τοὺς |best δόξαντας τὰς τάξεις  
 παρεσκευάσθαι χιλιάρχους ἔσεσθαι, τῶν δὲ λοχαγῶν  
 οἱ |best δόξειαν τοὺς |ambush, |show, point out; ἀπὸ  
 |band, |point; (mid) declare  
 τὰς τῶν |military rank χώρας |childbirth  
 |mount; rise , τῶν δ' αὐτῶν  
 δεκαδάρχων τοὺς |best εἰς τὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν χώρας  
 καταστήσεσθαι, τῶν δ' αὐτῶν πεμπαδάρχων |in the same way ἵνα  
 τῶν δεκαδάρχων, τῶν γε μὴν |private; a layman

excel is greatest, he instituted competitions for everything in which he thought his soldiers should be trained. The private soldier was challenged to prove himself prompt to obey, anxious to work, eager for danger, and yet ever mindful of discipline, an expert in the science of war, an artist in the conduct of his arms, and a lover of honour in all things. The petty officer commanding a squad of five was not only to equal the leading private, he must also do what he could to bring his men to the same perfection; the captain of ten must do the same for his ten, and the company's captain for the company, while the commander of the whole regiment, himself above reproach, must take the utmost care with the officers under him so that they in their turn should see that their subordinates were perfect in all their duties. For prizes, Cyrus announced that the brigadier in command of the finest regiment should be raised to the rank of general, the captain of the finest company should be made a brigadier, the captain of the finest squad of ten captain of a company, and the captain of the best five a captain of

*vocabulary***ἄγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἀσκέω** work on**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten

~decimal

**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἔπαινος** (noun) praise**ἐπιμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)

~megaton

**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent

~refurbish

**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
before**προερέω** say beforehand**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
~legion**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
prediction ~fame**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνή** tent; stage**σκηνόω** camp**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**ὕφίημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet**ὡσαύτως** in the same way**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

κρατιστεύοντας εἰς τὰς τῶν πεμπαδάρχων. ὑπῆρχε δὲ πᾶσι τούτοις τοῖς ἄρχουσι πρῶτον μὲν θεραπεύεσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι τιμαὶ αἱ πρέπουσαι ἐκάστοις συμπαρείποντο. ἐπαντείνοντο δὲ καὶ μείζονες ἐλπίδες τοῖς ἀξίοις ἐπαίνου, εἴ τι ἐν τῷ ἐπιόντι χρόνῳ ἀγαθὸν μείζον φανοῖτο· προεῖπε δὲ νικητήρια καὶ ὅλαις ταῖς τάξεσι καὶ ὅλοις τοῖς λόχοις, καὶ ταῖς δεκάσιν ὡσαύτως καὶ ταῖς πεμπάσιν, αἱ ἂν φαίνωνται εὐπιστόταται τοῖς ἄρχουσιν οὔσαι καὶ προθυμότατα ἀσκοῦσαι τὰ προειρημένα. ἦν δὲ ταύταις τὰ νικητήρια οἶα δὴ εἰς πλῆθος πρέπει. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ προεῖρητό τε καὶ ἡσκεῖτο ἡ στρατιά. σκηνὰς δ' αὐτοῖς κατεσκεύασε, πλῆθος μὲν ὅσοι ταξίαρχοι ἦσαν, μέγεθος δὲ ὥστε ἱκανὰς εἶναι τῇ τάξει ἐκάστη· ἡ δὲ τάξις ἦν ἑκατὸν ἄνδρες. ἐσκήνουν μὲν δὴ οὕτω κατὰ τάξεις· ἐν δὲ τῷ ὁμοῦ σκηνοῦν ἐδόκουν μὲν αὐτῷ ὠφελείσθαι πρὸς τὸν μέλλοντα ἀγῶνα τοῦτο ὅτι ἐώρων ἀλλήλους ὁμοίως τρεφομένους καὶ οὐκ ἐνῆν πρόφασις μειονεξίας ὥστε ὑφίεσθαι τινὰς κακίῳ ἑτέρῳ

κρατιστεύοντας εἰς τὰς τῶν πεμπαδάρχων. |there is δὲ  
 πᾶσι τούτοις τοῖς ἄρχουσι πρῶτον μὲν |help, serve  
 ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι |honor, αἰ  
 |value  
 |be conspicuous, ἴστοις συμπαρείποντο. ἐπανετείνοντο δὲ  
 |preeminent  
 καὶ μείζονες |hope τοῖς |worthy |(noun) praise ἐν τῷ |lie upon; approach  
 χρόνῳ ἀγαθὸν μείζον φανοῖτο· προείπε δὲ νικητήρια  
 καὶ ὅλαις ταῖς τάξεσι καὶ ὅλοις τοῖς |ambush, band, αἰς  
 |childbirth  
 |decade |in the same way αἰς πεμπάσιν, αἱ ἅν φαίνωνται  
 εὐπιστόταται τοῖς ἄρχουσιν οὔσαι καὶ |willing, eager  
 |work on τὰ προειρημένα. ἦν δὲ ταύταις τὰ νικητήρια  
 οἷα δὴ εἰς |nu- |be conspicuōus, μὲν δὴ προείρητό τε καὶ  
 |merical |preeminent  
 |work on ἡ |superior- |tent; δ' αὐτοῖς |equip, build |numerical  
 |ity |stage |superiority  
 μὲν ὅσοι |military rank, |σαν, |tall, big δὲ ὥστε |sufficient; |fit, |  
 |empowered  
 τῇ τάξει ἐκάστη· ἡ δὲ τάξις ἦν |hundred Ἴνδρες. ἐσκήνουν  
 μὲν δὴ οὕτω κατὰ τάξεις· ἐν δὲ τῷ ὁμοῦ σκηνοῦν ἐδόκουν  
 μὲν αὐτῷ |help, be useful ρὸς τὸν μέλλοντα |gathering οὗτο  
 |place  
 ὅτι ἐώρων ἀλλήλους ὁμοίως |nurture καὶ οὐκ ἐνῆν  
 |pretext; motive; |νεξίας ὥστε |lower; admit; ας κακίῳ ἑτερον  
 |prediction |slack off

ten, while the best soldiers from the ranks should become captains of five themselves. Every one of these officers had the privilege of being served by those beneath him, and various other honours also, suited to their several grades, while ampler hopes were offered for any nobler exploits. Finally prizes were announced to be won by a regiment or a company or a squad taken as a whole, by those who proved themselves most loyal to their leaders and most zealous in the practice of their duty. These prizes, of course, were such as to be suitable for men taken in the mass.

Such were the orders of the Persian leader, and such the exercises of the Persian troops. For their quarters, he arranged that a separate shelter should be assigned to every brigadier, and that it should be large enough for the whole regiment he commanded; a regiment consisting of 100 men. Thus they were encamped by regiments, and in the mere fact of common quarters there was this advantage, Cyrus thought, for the coming struggle, that the men saw they were all treated alike, and therefore no one could pretend that he was slighted, and no one sink to the confession

*vocabulary***ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of ~gnostic**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**γνώρισμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, token**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten ~decimal**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth ~genus**εὐδηλος** very clear**εὐπέτης** flying well**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off ~ballistic**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνόω** camp**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow**σφόδρα** very much**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**ὡσαύτως** in the same way**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἑτέρου εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ὠφελεῖσθαι δ' ἐδόκουν  
 αὐτῷ καὶ πρὸς τὸ γινώσκειν ἀλλήλους ὁμοῦ σκηνοῦντες.  
 ἐν δὲ τῷ γινώσκεσθαι καὶ τὸ αἰσχύνεσθαι πᾶσι δοκεῖ  
 μᾶλλον ἐγγίγνεσθαι, οἱ δ' ἀγνοούμενοι ῥαδιουργεῖν πως  
 μᾶλλον δοκοῦσιν, ὥσπερ ἐν σκοτει ὄντες. ἐδόκουν δ'  
 αὐτῷ καὶ εἰς τὸ τὰς τάξεις ἀκριβοῦν μεγάλα ὠφελεῖσθαι  
 διὰ τὴν συσκηνίαν. εἶχον γὰρ οἱ μὲν ταξίարχοι ὑφ'  
 ἑαυτοῖς τὰς τάξεις κεκοσμημένας ὥσπερ ὁπότε εἰς ἓνα  
 πορεύοιτο ἡ τάξις, οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ τοὺς λόχους ὡσαύτως,  
 οἱ δὲ δεκάδαρχοι δεκάδας, πεμπάδαρχοι πεμπάδας. τὸ  
 δὲ διακριβοῦν τὰς τάξεις σφόδρα ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν  
 εἶναι καὶ εἰς τὸ μὴ ταραττεσθαι καὶ εἰ ταραχθεῖεν θάπτον  
 καταστῆναι, ὥσπερ γε καὶ λίθων καὶ ξύλων ἂν δέη  
 συναρμοσθῆναι, ἔστι, καὶ ὅπως οὖν καταβεβλημένα τύχη,  
 συναρμόσαι αὐτὰ εὐπετῶς, ἣν ἔχη γνωρίσματα ὥστ'  
 εὐδηλον εἶναι ἐξ ὁποίας ἕκαστον χώρας αὐτῶν ἐστίν.  
 ἐδόκουν δ' ὠφελεῖσθαι αὐτῷ ὁμοῦ τρεφόμενοι καὶ πρὸς  
 τὸ ἦττον ἀλλήλους θέλειν ἀπολιπεῖν, ὅτι ἐώρα καὶ τὰ



ἑτέρου εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. |help, be useful ᾿ ἐδόκουν  
 αὐτῷ καὶ πρὸς τὸ γινώσκειν ἀλλήλους ὁμοῦ σκηνοῦντες.  
 ἐν δὲ τῷ γινώσκεισθαι καὶ τὸ |spoil, disgrace πᾶσι δοκεῖ  
 μᾶλλον ἐγγίγνεσθαι, οἱ δ' |be ignorant of ῥαδιουργεῖν |somehow  
 μᾶλλον δοκοῦσιν, ὥσπερ ἐν |darkness ᾿ντες. ἐδόκουν δ'  
 αὐτῷ καὶ εἰς τὸ τὰς τάξεις ἀκριβοῦν μεγάλα |help, be useful  
 διὰ τὴν συσκηνίαν. εἶχον γὰρ οἱ μὲν |military rank ᾿φ'  
 ἑαυτοῖς τὰς τάξεις |marshal, array ὥσπερ |when εἰς ἓνα  
 πορεύοιτο ἡ τάξις, οἱ δὲ |captain τοὺς |ambush, |in the same way  
 οἱ δὲ δεκάδαρχοι |decade , πεμπάδαρχοι |band, |child-  
 |birth πεμπάδας. τὸ  
 δὲ διακριβοῦν τὰς τάξεις |very much ᾿δόκει αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν  
 εἶναι καὶ εἰς τὸ μὴ |mess things up :αὶ εἰ |mess things up ᾿ττον  
 |set down, land; ὥσπερ γε καὶ |stone καὶ |piece of wood ᾿ή  
 |become, be συναρμοσθῆναι, ἔστι, κἂν ὁπωσοῦν |throw down, cast off ᾿χη,  
 συναρμόσαι αὐτὰ |flying well ἣν ἔχη |mark, token ὥστ'  
 |very clear εἶναι ἔξ |whatever kind ᾿ον |place αὐτῶν ἐστίν.  
 ἐδόκουν δ' |help, be useful ᾿τῷ ὁμοῦ |nurture καὶ πρὸς  
 τὸ ἥττον ἀλλήλους θέλει ἀπολιπεῖν, ὅτι ἑώρα καὶ τὰ

that he was a worse man than his neighbours when it came to facing the foe. Moreover the life in common would help the men to know each other, and it is only by such knowledge, as a rule, that a common conscience is engendered; those who live apart, unknowing and unknown, seem far more apt for mischief, like those who skulk in the dark. Cyrus thought the common life would lead to the happiest results in the discipline of the regiments. By this system all the officers—brigadiers, company-captains, captains of the squads—could keep their men in as perfect order as if they were marching before them in single file. Such precision in the ranks would do most to guard against disorder and re-establish order if ever it were broken; just as when timbers and stones have to be fitted together it is easy enough to put them into place, wherever they chance to lie, provided only that they are marked so as to leave no doubt where each belongs. And finally, he felt, there was the fact that those who live together are the less likely

*vocabulary***ἀνιδρωτί** (ι) without sweat ~exude**ἀσκέω** work on**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe  
~hegemony**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**ἰδρώς** sweat ~exude**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**μήποτε** absolutely never**παιδιά** childish play**πόθος** longing, regret ~bid**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business

~practice

**σκηνή** tent; stage**συμπονέω** work together**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle

~station

**ταξίαρχος** military rank**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy

θηρία τὰ συντρεφόμενα δεινὸν ἔχοντα πόθον, ἣν τις αὐτὰ διασπᾶ ἀπ' ἀλλήλων. ἐπεμέλετο δὲ καὶ τούτου ὁ Κῦρος ὅπως μήποτε ἀνίδρωτοι γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄριστον καὶ τὸ δείπνον εἰσίοιεν. ἥ γὰρ ἐπὶ θήραν ἐξάγων ἰδρώτα αὐτοῖς παρείχεν, ἥ παιδιὰς τοιαύτας ἐξηύρισκεν αἱ ἰδρώτα ἔμελλον παρέχειν, ἥ καὶ πρᾶξαι εἴ τι δεόμενος τύχοι, οὕτως ἐξηγείτο τῆς πράξεως ὥς μὴ ἐπανίοιεν ἀνιδρωτί. τοῦτο γὰρ ἡγείτο καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἡδέως ἐσθίειν ἀγαθὸν εἶναι καὶ πρὸς τὸ ὑγιαίνειν καὶ πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι πονεῖν, καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἀλλήλοις δὲ πραότερους εἶναι ἀγαθὸν ἡγείτο τοὺς πόνους εἶναι, ὅτι καὶ οἱ ἵπποι συμπονοῦντες ἀλλήλοις πραότεροι συνεστήκασιν. πρὸς γε μὴν τοὺς πολεμίους μεγαλοφρονέστεροι γίνονται οἱ ἂν συνειδῶσιν ἑαυτοῖς εὖ ἡσκηκότες.

Κῦρος δ' ἑαυτῷ σκηνὴν μὲν κατεσκευάσατο ὥστε ἱκανὴν ἔχειν οἷς καλοίῃ ἐπὶ δείπνον. ἐκάλει δὲ ὥς τὰ πολλὰ τῶν ταξιάρχων οὓς καιρὸς αὐτῷ δοκοίῃ εἶναι, ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν δεκαδάρχων τινὰς καὶ τῶν

|wild animal |ντρεφόμενα δεινὸν ἔχοντα |longing, ἦν τις αὐτὰ  
 |regret  
 |tear apart |π' ἀλλήλων. |take care of, δὲ καὶ τούτου ὁ |authority;  
 |oversee |validity  
 ὅπως |absolutely |νιδρωτοὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄριστον καὶ  
 |never  
 τὸ δεῖπνον εἰσίοιεν. ἦ γὰρ ἐπὶ |hunt |lead out |sweat  
 αὐτοῖς |furnish , ἦ παιδιὰς τοιαύτας |find; αἶ |sweat  
 |discover  
 ἔμελλον |furnish , ἦ καὶ πράξαι εἴ τι δεόμενος τύχοι,  
 οὕτως |lead forth; |set|result, ὥς μὴ ἐπανίοιεν ἀνδρωτί.  
 |out, describe |business  
 τοῦτο γὰρ ἡγείτο καὶ πρὸς τὸ |sweet ἐσθίειν ἀγαθὸν εἶναι  
 καὶ πρὸς τὸ |be healthy καὶ πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι |work , καὶ  
 πρὸς τὸ ἀλλήλοις δὲ πραότεροὺς εἶναι ἀγαθὸν ἡγείτο τοὺς  
 |toil, suffering..., ὅτι καὶ οἱ ἵπποι συμπονοῦντες ἀλλήλοις  
 πραότεροι |unite; confront πρὸς γε μὴν τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |in battle  
 μεγαλοφρονέστεροι γίνονται οἳ ἂν συνειδῶσιν ἑαυτοῖς εὖ  
 |work on .

Κῦρος δ' ἑαυτῷ |tent; μὲν |equip, build ὥστε |sufficient; fit, em-  
 |stage |powered  
 ἔχειν οἷς καλοίῃ ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. ἐκάλει δὲ ὡς τὰ πολλὰ τῶν  
 |military rank ὅς καιρὸς αὐτῷ δοκοίῃ εἶναι, ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ  
 τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν δεκαδάρχων τινὰς καὶ τῶν

to desert one another; even the wild animals, Cyrus knew, who are reared together suffer terribly from loneliness when they are severed from each other.

There was a further matter, to which he gave much care; he wished no man to take his meal at morning or at night till he had sweated for it. He would lead the men out to hunt, or invent games for them, or if there was work to be done, he would so conduct it that they did not leave it without sweat. He believed this regimen gave them zest for their food, was good for their health, and increased their powers of toil; and the toil itself was a blessed means for making the men more gentle towards each other; just as horses that work together grow gentle, and will stand quietly side by side. Moreover the knowledge of having gone through a common training would increase tenfold the courage with which they met the foe.

Cyrus had his own quarters built to hold all the guests he might think it well to entertain, and, as a rule, he would invite such of the brigadiers as the occasion seemed to call for, but sometimes he would send for the company-captains and the officers in command of the smaller squads, and even the private soldiers were summoned to his board, and from time to time a squad of five, or of ten, or an entire

*vocabulary***ἀναίνομαι** refuse, reject**ἄοκνος** resolute**ἀσκέω** work on**ἀτάρακτος** calm**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δείπνον** meal, food**δείπνος** meal, food**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten  
~decimal**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιστήμων** skillful, clever ~station**ἰσάζω** (i) equalize, compare to**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk  
~thesis**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
~refurbish**προσέτι** in addition**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
command**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**στρατιωτικός** military**συνετός** smart; intelligible**σφοδρός** vehement**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**τιμάω** (i) honor, exalt**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer

πεμπαδάρχων ἐκάλει, ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ πεμπάδα ὅλην καὶ δεκάδα ὅλην καὶ λόχον ὅλον καὶ τάξιν ὅλην. ἐκάλει δὲ καὶ ἐτίμα ὅποτε τινὰς ἴδοι τοιοῦτόν τι ποιήσαντας ὃ αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο ποιεῖν. ἦν δὲ τὰ παρατιθέμενα αἰὲ ἴσα αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς καλουμένοις ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. καὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὸ στράτευμα δὲ ὑπηρέτας ἰσομοίρους πάντων αἰὲ ἐποίει· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἦττον τιμᾶν ἄξιον ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατιωτικὰ ὑπηρέτας οὔτε κηρύκων οὔτε πρέσβων. καὶ γὰρ πιστοὺς ἠγείτο δεῖν εἶναι τούτους καὶ ἐπιστήμονας τῶν στρατιωτικῶν καὶ συνετούς, προσέτι δὲ καὶ σφοδροὺς καὶ ταχεῖς καὶ ἀόκνους καὶ ἀταράκτους. πρὸς δ' ἔτι ἃ οἱ βέλτιστοι νομιζόμενοι ἔχουσιν ἐγγίγνωσκειν ὁ Κῦρος δεῖν τοὺς ὑπηρέτας ἔχειν, καὶ τοῦτο ἀσκεῖν ὥς μηδὲν ἀναίνονται ἔργον, ἀλλὰ πάντα νομίζοιεν πρέπειν αὐτοῖς πράττειν ὅσα ἄρχων προστάττοι.

## 2.2

Ἀεὶ μὲν οὖν ἐπεμέλετο ὁ Κῦρος, ὅποτε συσκηνοῖεν,



πεμπαδάρχων ἐκάλει, ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ τῶν |soldier,  
 |mercenary  
 ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ πεμπάδα ὅλην καὶ |decade ὅλην καὶ  
 |ambush, "band, αὶ τάξιν ὅλην. ἐκάλει δὲ καὶ |honor |when  
 |childbirth  
 τινὰς ἴδοι τοιοῦτόν τι ποιήσαντας ὁ αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο  
 ποιεῖν. ἦν δὲ τὰ |put near, put at αἰὶ ἴσα αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς  
 |risk  
 καλουμένοις ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. καὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὸ |army  
 δὲ |servant, ἰσομοίρους πάντων αἰὲ ἐποίει· οὐδὲν γὰρ  
 |officer  
 ἦττον |honor |worthy ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὰ  
 |military |servant, οὔτε |henchman, ὥτε πρέσβων. καὶ  
 |officer |functionary  
 γὰρ |faithful; ἔ, εἶτο δεῖν εἶναι τούτους καὶ |skillful, clever  
 |trustworthy  
 τῶν |military καὶ |smart; in-|in addition καὶ |vehement  
 |telligible  
 καὶ ταχεῖς καὶ |resolute καὶ |calm πρὸς δ' ἔτι  
 ἃ οἱ |best, νομιζόμενοι ἔχουσιν ἐγίγνωσκεν ὁ Κῦρος  
 |noblest  
 δεῖν τοὺς |servant, ἔχειν, καὶ τοῦτο |work on ὥς μηδὲν  
 |officer  
 |refuse, reject ἔργον, ἀλλὰ πάντα νομίζουσιν |be conspicuous, |  
 |preeminent  
 πράττειν ὅσα ἄρχων |post at, attach  
 |to, command

## 2.2

Ἀεὶ μὲν οὖν |take care of, ὁ Κῦρος, |when συσκηνοῖεν,  
 |oversee

company, or even a whole regiment, or he would give a special invitation by way of honour to any one whom he knew had undertaken some work he had at heart himself. In every case there was no distinction whatever between the meats for himself and for his guests. Further he always insisted that the army servants should share and share alike with the soldiers in everything, for he held that those who did such service for the army were as much to be honoured as heralds or ambassadors. They were bound, he said, to be loyal and intelligent, alive to all a soldier's needs, active, swift, unhesitating, and withal cool and imperturbable. Nor was that all; he was convinced that they ought also to possess those qualities which are thought to be peculiar to what we call "the better classes," and yet never despise their work, but feel that everything their commander laid upon them must be fit for them to do.

## 2.2

It was the constant aim of Cyrus whenever he and his soldiers messed

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**δύσκολος** hard to please; troublesome**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐνδεής** inadequate**ἔνιοι** some**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand ~station**εὐχάριστος** agreeable, grateful, beneficent**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station**ἱερεῖον** animal victim ~hieroglyph**κατάκειμαι** lie down**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**ναί** yea**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**οὐδέποτε** never**οὐπω** no longer**παιδεύω** raise; train**περίοδος** picket, circuit**περιφέρω** carry around**πρώην** recently**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**συνουσία** society, sex**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τελευταῖος** last, final**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine ~epilepsy

ὅπως εὐχαριστότατοί τε ἅμα λόγοι ἐμβληθήσονται καὶ παρορμῶντες εἰς τὰγαθόν. ἀφίκετο δὲ καὶ εἰς τόνδε ποτὲ τὸν λόγον· Ἄρά γε, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐνδεέστεροί τι ἡμῶν διὰ τοῦτο φαίνονται εἶναι οἱ ἐταῖροι ὅτι οὐ πεπαίδευνται τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἡμῖν, ἢ οὐδὲν ἄρα διοίσειν ἡμῶν οὐτ' ἐν ταῖς συνουσίαις οὔτε ὅταν ἀγωνίζεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους δέῃ; καὶ ὁ Ὑστάσπας ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ὅποιοι μὲν τινες ἔσονται εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους οὕτω ἔγωγε ἐπίσταμαι· ἐν μέντοι τῇ συνουσίᾳ δύσκολοι ναὶ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς ἔνιοι αὐτῶν φαίνονται. πρῶν μὲν γε, ἔφη, ὁ Κναξάρης ἔπεμψεν εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἐκάστην ἱερεῖα, καὶ ἐγένοντο κρέα ἐκάστῳ ἡμῶν τρία ἢ καὶ πλείω τὰ περιφερόμενα. καὶ ἤρξατο μὲν ἀπ' ἐμοῦ τὴν πρώτην περίοδον περιφέρων· ὅτε δὲ τὸ δεύτερον εἰσῆει περιοίσων, ἐκέλευσα ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ τελευταίου ἄρχεσθαι καὶ ἀνάπαλιν φέρειν. ἀνακραγὼν οὖν τις τῶν κατὰ μέσον τὸν κύκλον κατακειμένων στρατιωτῶν, Μὰ Δί', ἔφη, τῶνδε μὲν οὐδὲν ἴσον ἐστίν, εἴγε ἀφ' ἡμῶν γε τῶν ἐν μέσῳ οὐδεὶς οὐδέποτε

ὅπως |agreeable, grateful, |beneficent τε ἅμα λόγοι |throw in; inspire καὶ  
 παρορμῶντες εἰς τὰγαθόν. ἀφίκετο δὲ καὶ εἰς τόνδε  
 ποτὲ τὸν λόγον· |interrogative'pcl, ὦ ἄνδρες, |inadequate  
 τι ἡμῶν διὰ τοῦτο φαίνονται εἶναι οἱ ἐταῖροι ὅτι οὐ  
 |raise; train τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἡμῖν, ἢ οὐδὲν ἄρα |carry on;  
 |differ; excel ἡμῶν οὐτ' ἐν ταῖς συνουσίαις οὔτε ὅταν |contend, exert πρὸς  
 |oneself τοὺς πολεμίους δέη; καὶ ὁ Ὑστάσπας |take under one's support, seize;  
 |speak up; imagine Ἄλλ' |whatever kind νες ἔσονται εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους |no longer  
 ἔγωγε ἐπίσταμαι· ἐν |however ἧ συνουσία |hard to|yea  
 |please; μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς |some αὐτῶν φαίνονται. |recently |trouble-  
 |some μέν γε, ἔφη, ὁ Κναξάρης ἔπεμψεν εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἐκάστην |animal,  
 |victim καὶ ἐγένοντο |meat ἐκάστῳ ἡμῶν |three ἢ καὶ πλείω τὰ  
 |carry around καὶ ἤρξατο μὲν ἀπ' ἐμοῦ τὴν πρώτην  
 |picket, |carry ὅτε δὲ τὸ |second |go in |carry  
 |circuit |around , ἐκέλευσα ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ |last, final ἄρχεσθαι καὶ ἀνάπαλιν  
 φέρειν. |yell, scream οὖν τις τῶν κατὰ μέσον τὸν |circle,  
 |wheel |lie down |soldier, Μὰ Δί', ἔφη, τῶνδε μὲν οὐδὲν  
 |mercenary ἴσον ἐστίν, εἴγε ἀφ' ἡμῶν γε τῶν ἐν μέσῳ οὐδεὶς |never

together, that the talk should be lively and full of grace, and at the same time do the listeners good. Thus one day he brought the conversation round to the following theme: — "Do you think, gentlemen," said he, "that our new comrades appear somewhat deficient in certain respects simply because they have not been educated in the same fashion as ourselves? Or will they show themselves our equals in daily life and on the field of battle when the time comes to meet the foe?"

Hystaspas took up the challenge: — "What sort of warriors they will prove I do not pretend to know, but this I do say, in private life some of them are cross-grained fellows enough. Only the other day," he went on, "Cyaxares sent a present of sacrificial meat to every regiment. There was flesh enough for three courses apiece or more, and the attendant had handed round the first, beginning with myself. So when he came in again, I told him to begin at the other end of the board, and serve the company in that order. But I was greeted by a yell from the centre: one of these men who was sitting there bawled out, 'Equality indeed! There's not much of it here, if we who sit in the middle are never

*vocabulary***ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on**ἀνατρέπω** defeat, thwart ~trophy**ἀνιάω** (ἰ) vex**ἄτε** as if; since**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**βαρύς** heavy ~baritone**δεῦρο** here, come here!**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐγγύς** near**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off  
~ballistic**λείβω** libate**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**μείων** less, smaller**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy**ὄψον** piece of cooked meat, relish**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience,  
passion, condition**παραφέρω** serve; carry past; outdo**περιφέρω** carry around**συγκροτέω** clap together, assemble**τύχη** fortune, act of a god**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**φροντίζω** consider, ponder

ἄρξεται. καὶ ἐγὼ ἀκούσας ἠχθέσθην, εἴ τι μείον δοκοῖεν ἔχειν, καὶ ἐκάλεσα εὐθὺς αὐτὸν πρὸς ἐμέ. ὁ δὲ μάλα γε τοῦτο εὐτάκτως ὑπήκουσεν. ὥς δὲ τὰ περιφερόμενα ἦκε πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ἅτε οἶμαι ὑστάτους λαμβάνοντας, τὰ μικρότατα λελειμμένα ἦν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐκείνος πάννυ ἀνιαθεὶς δηλὸς ἦν καὶ εἶπε πρὸς αὐτόν· Τῆς τύχης, τὸ ἐμὲ νῦν κληθέντα δεῦρο τυχεῖν. καὶ ἐγὼ εἶπον· ἀλλὰ μὴ φρόντιζε· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἀφ' ἡμῶν ἄρξεται καὶ σὺ πρῶτος λήψῃ τὸ μέγιστον. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ περιέφερε τὸ τρίτον, ὅπερ δὴ λοιπὸν ἦν τῆς περιφορᾶς· καὶ ἐκείνος ἔλαβε, καὶ τ' ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ μείον λαβεῖν· κατέβαλεν οὖν ὃ ἔλαβεν ὡς ἕτερον ληψόμενος. καὶ ὁ ἄρταμος οἰόμενος αὐτὸν οὐδὲν ἔτι δεῖσθαι ὄψον, ὥχετο παραφέρων πρὶν λαβεῖν αὐτὸν ἕτερον. ἐνταῦθα δὴ οὕτω βαρέως ἤνεγκε τὸ πάθος ὥστε ἀνήλωτο μὲν αὐτῷ ὃ εἰλήφει ὄψον, ὃ δ' ἔτι αὐτῷ λοιπὸν ἦν τοῦ ἐμβάπτεσθαι, τοῦτό πως ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐκπεπλήχθαι τε καὶ τῇ τύχῃ ὀργίζεσθαι δυσθετούμενος ἀνέτρεψεν. ὁ μὲν δὴ λοχαγὸς ὁ ἐγγύτατα ἡμῶν ἰδὼν συνεκρότησε τὰ χεῖρε καὶ



ἄρξεται. καὶ ἐγὼ ἀκούσας |be burdened with |less, <sup>ο</sup>κοοῖεν  
|smaller

ἔχειν, καὶ ἐκάλεσα εὐθὺς αὐτὸν πρὸς ἐμέ. ὁ δὲ μάλα

γε τοῦτο |orderly, |listen, reply . ὥς δὲ τὰ |carry around  
|disciplined

ἦκε πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ἅτε οἶμαι ὑστάτους λαμβάνοντας, τὰ

μικρότατα λελειμμένα ἦν. |there, here ἢ ἐκεῖνος πάνν

|vex |visible, <sup>αι</sup> αἶ |ειπε πρὸς αὐτόν· Τῆς |fortune, act  
|conspicuous |of a god

ἐμὲ νῦν κληθέντα |here, come here! αἶ ἐγὼ εἶπον· ἀλλὰ μὴ

|consider, αὐτίκα γὰρ ἀφ' ἡμῶν ἄρξεται καὶ σὺ πρῶτος  
|ponder

λήψῃ τὸ μέγιστον. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ |carry τὸ |third  
|around

ὅπερ δὴ λοιπὸν ἦν τῆς περιφορᾶς· καὶ κεῖνος ἔλαβε, καὶ τ'

ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ |less, <sup>α</sup>αβεῖν· |throw down, cast off ἔλαβεν ὥς  
|smaller

ἕτερον ληψόμενος. καὶ ὁ ἄρταμος οἰόμενος αὐτὸν οὐδὲν

ἔτι δεῖσθαι |piece of |come, go |serve; carry πρὶν λαβεῖν αὐτὸν  
|cooked |past; outdo

ἕτερον. |there, here ἢ οὕτω |heavy ἤνεγκε τὸ |an experience, passion,  
|relish |condition

|consume, μὲν αὐτῷ ὁ εἰλήφει ὄψον, ὁ δ' ἔτι αὐτῷ λοιπὸν  
|spend on

ἦν τοῦ ἐμβάπτεσθαι, τοῦτό πως ὑπὸ τοῦ |panic, be τε  
|knocked out

καὶ τῇ τύχῃ |anger, pro- δυσθετούμενος |defeat, . ὁ μὲν  
|vex, annoy |thwart

δὴ |captain ὁ |near ἡμῶν ἰδὼν |συγκροτέω?: clap together, assemble;  
|or συγκροτέω?: clap together, assemble  
καὶ

served first at all!’ It nettled me that they should fancy themselves treated worse than we, so I called him up at once and made him sit beside me. And I am bound to say he obeyed that order with the most exemplary alacrity. But when the dish came round to us, we found, not unnaturally, since we were the last to be served, that only a few scraps were left. At this my man fell into the deepest dudgeon, and made no attempt to conceal it, muttering to himself, ‘Just like my ill-luck! To be invited here just now and never before!’ I tried to comfort him. ‘Never mind,’ I said, ‘presently the servant will begin again with us, and then you will help yourself first and you can take the biggest piece.’ Just then the third course, and, as it proved, the last, came round, and so the poor fellow took his helping, but as he did so it struck him that the piece he had chosen first was too small, and he put it back, meaning to pick out another. But the carver, thinking he had changed his mind and did not want any more, passed on to the next man before he had time to secure his second slice. At this our friend took his loss so hard that he only made matters worse: his third course was clean gone, and now in his rage and his bad luck he somehow managed to upset the gravy, which was all that remained to him. The captain next to us seeing how matters stood rubbed his hands with glee and went

*vocabulary***ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**γέλως** laughter**δύσκολος** hard to please; troublesome**εἰκός** likely**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit**ἐπιτυγχάνω** meet, attain**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**ἤνικα** when**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λοχίτης** -ου (ι, m, f) comrade**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**μεταστρέφω** turn around, change one's mind ~atrophy**νεανίας** -ου (ᾱ, m) young person**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out**προΐημι** send forth, abandon**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend ~poet**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit

τῷ γέλωτι ἠυφραίνετο. ἐγὼ μέντοι, ἔφη, προσεποιούμην  
 βήττειν· οὐδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸς ἐδυνάμην τὸν γέλωτα κατασχέιν.  
 τοιοῦτον μὲν δὴ σοι ἔνα, ὦ Κῦρε, τῶν ἐταίρων ἐπιδεικνύω.  
 ἐπὶ μὲν δὴ τούτῳ ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐγέλασαν. ἄλλος δέ  
 τις ἔλεξε τῶν ταξιάρχων· Οὗτος μὲν δὴ, ὦ Κῦρε, ὡς  
 ἔοικεν, οὕτω δυσκόλῳ ἐπέτυχεν. ἐγὼ δέ, ὡς σὺ διδάξας  
 ἡμᾶς τὰς τάξεις ἀπέπεμψας καὶ ἐκέλευσας διδάσκειν τὴν  
 ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστον τάξιν ἃ παρὰ σοῦ ἐμάθομεν, οὕτω δὴ καὶ  
 ἐγὼ, ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐποιοῦν, ἐλθὼν ἐδίδασκον ἕνα  
 λόχον. καὶ στήσας τὸν λοχαγὸν πρῶτον καὶ τάξας δὴ  
 ἐπ' αὐτῷ ἄνδρα νεανίαν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἥ ὥμην δεῖν,  
 ἔπειτα στὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἔμπροσθεν βλέπων εἰς τὸν λόχον,  
 ἡνίκα μοι ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, προϊέναι ἐκέλευσα. καὶ ἀνὴρ  
 σοι ὁ νεανίας ἐκείνος προελθὼν τοῦ λοχαγοῦ πρότερος  
 ἐπορεύετο. καὶ γὰρ ἰδὼν εἶπον· ἄνθρωπε, τί ποιεῖς; καὶ ὃς  
 ἔφη· Προέρχομαι ὥσπερ σὺ κελεύεις. καὶ γὰρ εἶπον· Ἄλλ'  
 οὐκ ἐγὼ σὲ μόνον ἐκέλευον ἀλλὰ πάντας προϊέναι. καὶ ὃς  
 ἀκούσας τοῦτο μεταστραφεὶς πρὸς τοὺς λοχίτας

τῷ |laughter |gladden . ἐγὼ |however ἔφη, |give over to; pre-  
 tend  
 βήττειν· οὐδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸς ἐδυνάμην τὸν |laughter |restrain; stop; continue;  
 |keep; take possession  
 τοιοῦτον μὲν δὴ σοι ἔνα, ὦ Κῦρε, τῶν ἐταίρων |display,  
 |exhibit  
 ἐπὶ μὲν δὴ τούτῳ ὥσπερ |likely |laugh, |ἄλλος δέ  
 |smile  
 τις ἔλεξε τῶν |military rank Οὗτος μὲν δὴ, ὦ Κῦρε, ὡς  
 ἔοικεν, οὕτω |hard to|meet, . ἐγὼ δέ, ὡς σὺ διδάξας  
 |please; |attain  
 ἡμᾶς τὰς τάξεις |trouble- |some |send away καὶ ἐκέλευσας διδάσκειν τὴν  
 ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστον τάξιν ἃ παρὰ σοῦ |learn , οὕτω δὴ καὶ  
 ἐγὼ, ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐποίουν, ἐλθὼν ἐδίδασκον ἕνα  
 |ambush, band, |τήσας τὸν |captain πρῶτον καὶ |arrange δὴ  
 |childbirth  
 ἐπ' αὐτῷ ἄνδρα |young |person καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἢ ὥμην δεῖν,  
 ἔπειτα στὰς ἐκ τοῦ |before (time,|see, look at 's τὸν |ambush, |band,  
 |space) |childbirth  
 |when μοι ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, |send forth, abandon . καὶ ἀνήρ  
 σοι ὁ |young |person ἐκείνος |proceed, come out ὡς χαγοῦ πρότερος  
 ἐπορεύετο. καὶ γὰρ ἰδὼν εἶπον· ἄνθρωπε, τί ποιεῖς; καὶ ὃς  
 ἔφη· Προέρχομαι ὥσπερ σὺ κελεύεις. καὶ γὰρ εἶπον· Ἄλλ'  
 οὐκ ἐγὼ σὲ μόνον ἐκέλευον ἀλλὰ πάντας |send forth, abandon  
 ἀκούσας τοῦτο |turn around, change |ὃς τοὺς |comrade  
 |one's mind

into peals of laughter. And," said Hystaspas, "I took refuge in a fit of coughing myself, for really I could not have controlled my laughter. There, Cyrus," said he, "that is a specimen of our new comrades, as nearly as I can draw his portrait."

The description, as may be guessed, was greeted with shouts of laughter, and then another brigadier took up the word: "Well, Cyrus," said he, "our friend here has certainly met with an absolute boor: my own experience is somewhat different. You remember the admonitions you gave us when you dismissed the regiments, and how you bade each of us instruct his own men in the lessons we had learnt from you. Well, I, like the rest of us, went off at once and set about instructing one of the companies under me. I posted the captain in front with a fine young fellow behind him, and after them the others in the order I thought best; I took my stand facing them all, and waited, with my eyes fixed on the captain, until I thought the right moment had come, and then I gave the order to advance. And what must my fine fellow do but get in front of the captain and march off ahead of the whole troop. I cried out, 'You, sir, what are you doing?' 'Advancing as you ordered.' 'I never ordered you to advance alone,' I retorted, 'the order was given to the whole company.' At which he turned right round and addressed the ranks: 'Don't you hear the officer

*vocabulary***ἀναχωρίζω** force back**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**εἰκός** likely**ἐπιστολή** message, letter**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**καταχωρίζω** emplace; record**κινέω** (i) set in motion, move, remove  
~kinetic**λοιδορέω** abuse, revile**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**νεανίας** -ου (ᾱα, m) young person**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὅπου** where**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**Πέρσης** Persian**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πραῶς** soft, gentle**προΐημι** send forth, abandon**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**συντρέχω** rush together**τρέχω** run, spin

εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἀκούετε, ἔφη, λοιδορουμένου; προϊέναι πάντας κελεύει. καὶ ἄνδρες πάντες παρελθόντες τὸν λοχαγὸν ἦσαν πρὸς ἐμέ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ λοχαγὸς αὐτοὺς ἀνεχώριζεν, ἐδυσφόρουν καὶ ἔλεγον· Ποτέρῳ δὴ πείθεσθαι χρή; νῦν γὰρ ὁ μὲν κελεύει προϊέναι, ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔᾶ. ἐγὼ μέντοι ἐνεγκὼν ταῦτα πρῶως ἐξ ἀρχῆς αὐτὴν καταχωρίσας εἶπον μηδένα τῶν ὀπισθεν κινεῖσθαι πρὶν ἂν ὁ πρόσθεν ἡγήται, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μόνον ὁρᾶν πάντας, τῷ πρόσθεν ἔπεσθαι. ὥς δ' εἰς Πέρσας τις ἀπὼν ἦλθε πρὸς ἐμέ καὶ ἐκέλευσέ με τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἣν ἔγραψα οἴκαδε δοῦναι, καὶ γὰρ ὁ λοχαγὸς ἤδει ὅπου ἔκειτο ἡ ἐπιστολή, ἐκέλευσα αὐτὸν δραμόντα ἐνεγκεῖν τὴν ἐπιστολήν, ὁ μὲν δὴ ἔτρεχεν, ὁ δὲ νεανίας ἐκείνος εἶπετο τῷ λοχαγῷ σὺν αὐτῷ τῷ θώρακι καὶ τῇ κοπίδι, καὶ ὁ ἄλλος δὲ πᾶς λόχος ἰδὼν ἐκείνον συνέτρεχον· καὶ ἦκον οἱ ἄνδρες φέροντες τὴν ἐπιστολήν. οὕτως, ἔφη, ὁ γ' ἐμὸς λόχος σοι ἀκριβοῖ πάντα τὰ παρὰ σοῦ. οἱ μὲν δὲ ἄλλοι ὥς εἰκὸς ἐγέλων ἐπὶ τῇ δορυφορίᾳ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εἶπεν· ὦ Ζεῦ καὶ πάντες θεοί, οἷους ἄρα ἡμεῖς



εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἀκούετε, ἔφη, |abuse, revile , |send forth, abandon  
 κελεύει. καὶ ἄνδρες πάντες |pass, escape τὸν |captain  
 ἦσαν πρὸς ἐμέ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ |captain αὐτοὺς |force back ,  
 ἐδυσφόρουν καὶ ἔλεγον· |which, ὅτ' ἔπειθ' ἐπείθεται χρή; νῦν  
 |whichever  
 γὰρ ὁ μὲν κελεύει |send forth, abandon' : ἔα. ἐγὼ μέντοι  
 ἐνεγκὼν ταῦτα |soft, ἐξ ἀρχῆς αὐτῶν |emplace; record εἶπον  
 |gentle  
 μηδένα τῶν |behind, |move, πρὶν ἂν ὁ πρόσθεν ἡγήται,  
 |hereafter |remove  
 ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μόνον ὁρᾶν πάντας, τῷ πρόσθεν ἔπεσθαι. ὥς  
 δ' εἰς Πέρσας τις ἀπιὼν ἦλθε πρὸς ἐμέ καὶ ἐκέλευσέ με τὴν  
 |message, ἥν ἔγραψα |homeward ἵναι, καὶ γὰρ |captain  
 |letter  
 ἦδει |where ἔκειτο ἡ ἐπιστολή, ἐκέλευσα αὐτὸν |run, spin  
 ἐνεγκεῖν τὴν |message, , ὁ μὲν δὴ |run, spin. ὁ δὲ |young  
 |letter |person  
 ἐκεῖνος εἶπετο τῷ |captain σὺν αὐτῷ τῷ |breastplate. καὶ τῇ  
 κοπίδι, καὶ ὁ ἄλλος δὲ πᾶς |ambush, ὃν band, εἶνον |rush together  
 |childbirth  
 καὶ ἦκον οἱ ἄνδρες φέροντες τὴν |message, οὕτως, ἔφη,  
 |letter  
 ὃ γ' ἐμὸς |ambush, band, μβοὶ πάντα τὰ παρὰ σοῦ. οἱ μὲν δὴ  
 |childbirth  
 ἄλλοι ὥς |likely |laugh, ἐπὶ τῇ δορυφορίᾳ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς·  
 |smile  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εἶπεν· ὦ Ζεῦ καὶ πάντες θεοί, οἷους ἄρα ἡμεῖς

abusing you? The orders are for all to advance!’ Whereupon the rest of them marched right past their captain and up to me. Of course the captain called them back, and they began to grumble and growl: ‘Which of the two are we to obey? One tells us to advance, the other won’t let us move.’ ”Well, I had to take the whole matter very quietly and begin again from the beginning, posting the company as they were, and explaining that no one in the rear was to move until the front rank man led off: all they had to do was to follow the man in front. As I was speaking, up came a friend of mine; he was going off to Persia, and had come to ask me for a letter I had written home. So I turned to the captain who happened to know where I had left the letter lying, and bade him fetch it for me. Off he ran, and off ran my young fellow at his heels, breast-plate, battle-axe, and all. The rest of the company thought they were bound to follow suit, joined in the race, and brought my letter back in style. That is how my company, you see, carries out your instructions to the full.”

He paused, and the listeners laughed to their hearts’ content, as well as they might, over the triumphant entry of the letter under its armed escort.

*vocabulary*

**ἀλαζονεύομαι** brag falsely  
**ἀλαζών** -όνος (m, 3) charlatan, boaster  
**ἀνακτάομαι** regain, revive; win over  
**ἀνδρεῖος** of a man, manly  
**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at  
**γέλως** laughter  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**εὐφημέω** speak propitiously ~fame  
**κερδαίνω** profit, take advantage  
**ὄψον** piece of cooked meat, relish  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**πιθανός** persuasive  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**ποῖος** what kind

**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend  
 ~poet  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**ὕπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φανερόω** demonstrate ~photon  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

ἔχομεν ἄνδρας ἐταίρους, οἳ γε εὐθεράπευτοι μὲν οὕτως  
 εἰσὶν ὥστ' εἶναι αὐτῶν καὶ μικρῷ ὄψῳ παμπόλλους φίλους  
 ἀνακτῆσασθαι, πιθανοὶ δ' οὕτως εἰσὶ τινες ὥστε πρὶν  
 εἰδέναι τὸ προσταττόμενον πρότερον πείθονται. ἐγὼ μὲν  
 οὐκ οἶδα ποίους τινὰς χρή μᾶλλον εὔξασθαι ἢ τοιούτους  
 στρατιώτας ἔχειν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἅμα γελῶν οὕτως  
 ἐπήνεσε τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐν δὲ τῇ σκηνῇ ἐτύγχανέ τις  
 ὢν τῶν ταξιάρχων Ἀγλαϊτάδας ὄνομα, ἀνὴρ τὸν τρόπον  
 τῶν στρυφνοτέρων ἀνθρώπων, ὃς οὕτωςί πως εἶπεν· Ἡ  
 γὰρ οἶει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, τούτους ἀληθῆ λέγειν ταῦτα; ἀλλὰ  
 τί μὴν βουλόμενοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ψεύδονται; Τί δ' ἄλλο  
 γ', ἔφη, εἰ μὴ γέλωτα ποιεῖν ἐθέλοντες ὑπὲρ οὗ λέγουσι  
 ταῦτα καὶ ἀλαζονεύονται; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, εὐφήμει, ἔφη,  
 μὴδὲ λέγε ἀλαζόνας εἶναι τούτους. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἀλαζῶν  
 ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ὄνομα κείσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς προσποιουμένοις καὶ  
 πλουσιωτέροις εἶναι ἢ εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνδρειοτέροις καὶ ποιήσειν  
 ἅ μὴ ἱκανοὶ εἰσιν ὑπισχνουμένοις, καὶ ταῦτα φανεροῖς  
 γιγνομένοις ὅτι τοῦ λαβεῖν τι ἔνεκα καὶ κερδᾶναι

ἔχομεν ἄνδρας ἐταίρους, οἳ γε εὐθεράπευτοι μὲν οὕτως

εἰσὶν ὥστ' εἶναι αὐτῶν καὶ small piece very great φίλους  
of  
regain, revive; win persuasive οὕτως εἰσὶ τινες ὥστε before, formerly;  
over negated: until

εἰδέναι τὸ post at, attach to, πρότερον πείθονται. ἐγὼ μὲν  
command

οὐκ οἶδα what kind ἅς must, ἄλλον declare; pray ῥοιούτους  
should

soldier, ἔχειν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἅμα γελῶν οὕτως  
mercenary

concur τοὺς soldier, ἐν δὲ τῇ σκηνῇ ἐτύγχανέ τις  
mercenary

ὦν τῶν military rank Ἰγλαϊτάδας ὄνομα, ἀνὴρ τὸν τρόπον

τῶν στρυφνοτέρων ἀνθρώπων, ὃς οὕτως somehow Ἡ

γὰρ οἶει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, τούτους true; λέγειν ταῦτα; ἀλλὰ  
careful

τί μὴν βουλόμενοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, be false, deceive; δ' ἄλλο  
(mid) to lie

γ', ἔφη, εἰ μὴ laughter ποιεῖν ἐθέλοντες ὑπὲρ οὗ λέγουσι

ταῦτα καὶ brag falsely, καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, speak propitiiously

and not; not εἶναι τούτους. ὁ μὲν γὰρ charlatan,  
even boaster

ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ὄνομα lie ἐπὶ τοῖς give over to; pretend καὶ

wealth εἶναι ἢ εἰσὶ καὶ of a man, manly αἱ ποιήσιν

ἃ μὴ sufficient; fit, καὶ ταῦτα φανεροῖς  
empowered

γιγνομένοις ὅτι τοῦ λαβεῖν τι ἔνεκα καὶ profit, take  
advantage

Then Cyrus spoke:

"Now heaven be praised! A fine set they are, these new friends of ours, a most rare race! So grateful are they for any little act of courtesy, you may win a hundred hearts by a dish of meat! And so docile, some of them must needs obey an order before they have understood it! For my part I can only pray to be blest with an army like them all."

Thus he joined in the mirth, but he turned the laughter to the praise of his new recruits.

Then one of the company, a brigadier called Aglaïtadas, a somewhat sour-tempered man, turned to him and said:

"Cyrus, do you really think the tales they tell are true?"

"Certainly," he answered, "why should they say what is false?"

"Why," repeated the other, "simply to raise a laugh, and make a brag like the impostors that they are." But Cyrus cut him short, "Hush! hush! You must not use such ugly names. Let me tell you what an impostor is. He is a man who claims to be wealthier or braver than he is in fact, and who undertakes what he can never carry out,

*vocabulary*

**ἀλαζών** -όνος (m, 3) charlatan, boaster  
**ᾠοιδή** song  
**ἀπολογέομαι** defend one's conduct  
**ἀστεῖος** urbane, refined  
**ἀτιμία** (τι) dishonor  
**βλάβη** harm  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**γέλως** laughter  
**δάκρυον** tear  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**διδάσκαλος** teacher  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**ἐλαχὺς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἐνιοι** some  
**εὐφροαίνω** gladden ~frenzy  
**ζημία** loss, penalty ~zeal  
**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit  
**κέρδος** -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning

**κλαίω** weep  
**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μέμφομαι** blame; reject  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**ναί** yea  
**οἰκτρός** pitiable  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀνομάζω** to address, name ~name  
**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal  
**ὀρθόω** stand up  
**πολλαχού** in many places  
**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion  
**σφόδρα** very much  
**σφοδρός** vehement  
**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation

ποιούσιν. οἱ δὲ μηχανώμενοι γέλωτα τοῖς συνοῦσι μήτε  
 ἐπὶ τῷ αὐτῶν κέρδει μήτ' ἐπὶ ζημίᾳ τῶν ἀκουόντων  
 μήτε ἐπὶ βλάβῃ μηδεμιᾶ, πῶς οὐχ οὗτοι ἀστείοι ἂν καὶ  
 εὐχάριτες δικαιότερον ὀνομάζοντο μᾶλλον ἢ ἀλαζόνες; ὁ  
 μὲν δὴ Κῦρος οὕτως ἀπελογήσατο περὶ τῶν τὸν γέλωτα  
 παρασχόντων· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ λοχαγὸς ὁ τὴν τοῦ λόχου  
 χαριτίαν διηγησάμενος ἔφη· Ἦπου ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀγλαϊτάδα,  
 εἴ γε κλαίειν ἐπειρώμεθά σε ποιεῖν, σφόδρ' ἂν ἡμῖν  
 ἐμέμφου, ὥσπερ ἔνιοι καὶ ἐν ὥδαῖς καὶ ἐν λόγοις οἰκτρὰ  
 ἄττα λογοποιοῦντες εἰς δάκρυα πειρῶνται ἄγειν, ὅποτε γε  
 νῦν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰδὼς ὅτι εὐφραίνειν μὲν τί σε βουλόμεθα,  
 βλάψαι δ' οὐδέν, ὅμως οὕτως ἐν πολλῇ ἀτιμίᾳ ἡμᾶς ἔχεις.  
 Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Ἀγλαϊτάδας, καὶ δικαίως γε, ἐπεὶ καὶ  
 αὐτοῦ τοῦ κλαίοντος καθίζοντος τοὺς φίλους πολλαχοῦ  
 ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ἐλάττονος ἄξια διαπράττεσθαι ὁ γέλωτα  
 αὐτοῖς μηχανώμενος. εὐρήσεις δὲ καὶ σύ, ἣν ὀρθῶς λογίζῃ,  
 ἐμὲ ἀληθῆ λέγοντα. κλαύμασι μὲν γε καὶ πατέρες υἱοῖς  
 σωφροσύνην μηχανῶνται καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισὶν



ποιούσιν. οἱ δὲ |build, contrive |laughter τοῖς |be with; have sex  
 ἐπὶ τῷ αὐτῶν |advantage, cunning, τ' ἐπὶ |loss, γῶν ἀκουόντων  
 |penalty  
 μήτε ἐπὶ βλάβῃ μηδεμιᾶ, πῶς οὐχ οὗτοι |urbane, ἂν καὶ  
 |refined  
 εὐχάριτες δικαιότερον |to address, name ἄλλον ἢ |charlatan, , ὁ  
 |boaster  
 μὲν δὲ Κῦρος οὕτως |defend one's conduct γῶν τὸν |laughter  
 παρασχόντων· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ |captain ὁ τὴν τοῦ |ambush, band,  
 |childbirth  
 χαριτίαν |detail, describe ἔφη· Ἦπου ἂν, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀγλαϊτάδα,  
 εἴ γε κλαίειν ἐπειρώμεθά σε ποιεῖν, σφόδρ' ἂν ἡμῖν  
 |blame; , ὥσπερ |some καὶ ἐν ᾠδαῖς καὶ ἐν λόγοις |pitiable  
 |reject  
 ἅττα λογοποιοῦντες εἰς |tear πειρῶνται ἄγειν, ὅποτε γε  
 νῦν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰδὼς ὅτι |gladden μὲν τί σε βουλόμεθα,  
 |break, make fail ' , ὅμως οὕτως ἐν πολλῇ |dishonor, μᾶς ἔχεις.  
 Ναὶ μὰ Δι', ἔφη ὁ Ἀγλαϊτάδας, καὶ δικαίως γε, ἐπεὶ καὶ  
 αὐτοῦ τοῦ κλαίοντος |set, sit, alight, τοὺς φίλους |in many places  
 |set up  
 ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ἐλάττονος ἄξια |travel over, ac- ὁ |laughter  
 |comply  
 αὐτοῖς |build, contrive . εὐρήσεις δὲ καὶ σύ, ἣν ὀρθῶς |reckon, ,  
 |consider  
 ἐμὲ ἀληθῆ λέγοντα. κλαύμασι μὲν γε καὶ πατέρες υἱοῖς  
 |discretion, |build, contrive καὶ |teacher παισὶν  
 |moderation

and all this for the sake of gain. But he who contrives mirth for his friends, not for his own profit, or his hearers' loss, or to injure any man, surely, if we must needs give him a name, we ought to call him a man of taste and breeding and a messenger of wit."

Such was the defence of Cyrus in behalf of the merry-makers. And the officer who had begun the jest turned to Aglaïtadas and said:

"Just think, my dear sir, if we had tried to make you weep! What fault you would have found with us! Suppose we had been like the ballad-singers and story-tellers who put in lamentable tales in the hope of reducing their audience to tears! What would you have said about us then? Why, even now, when you know we only wish to amuse you, not to make you suffer, you must needs hold us up to shame."

"And is not the shame justified?" Aglaïtadas replied. "The man who sets himself to make his fellows laugh does far less for them than he who makes them weep. If you will but think, you will admit that what I say is true. It is through tears our fathers teach self-control unto their sons, and our tutors sound

*vocabulary***ἀναισιμώ** spend, use up**ἀνόητος** foolish**ἀπόκειμαι** be stored up, put aside**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**γέλως** laughter**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste**δικαιοσύνη** justice**ἐκτρίβω** (ι) rub out**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit**κλαίω** weep**μάθημα** -τος (n, 3) lesson, knowledge**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**ναί** yea**πάντως** by all means**παράγω** deflect; bring forward**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce**περιποιέω** preserve; obtain**προτρέπω** prompt, urge, compel; (mp) go, flee to ~trophy**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;

prediction ~fame

**ῥαίω** smite**ταξίαρχος** military rank**ώφελέω** help, be useful

ἀγαθὰ μαθήματα, καὶ νόμοι γε πολίτας διὰ τοῦ κλαίοντας καθίζειν ἐς δικαιοσύνην προτρέπονται· τοὺς δὲ γέλωτα μηχανωμένους ἔχοις ἂν εἰπεῖν ἢ σώματα ὠφελοῦντας ἢ ψυχὰς οἰκονομικωτέρας τι ποιοῦντας ἢ πολιτικωτέρας; ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ὑστάσπας ὠδέ πως εἶπε· Σὺ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀγλαϊτάδα, ἦν ἐμοὶ πείθῃ, εἰς μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους θαρρῶν δαπανήσεις τοῦτο τὸ πολλοῦ ἄξιον, καὶ κλαίοντας ἐκείνους πειράσῃ καθίζειν· ἡμῖν δὲ πάντως, ἔφη, τοῖσδε τοῖς φίλοις τούτου τοῦ ὀλίγου ἀξίου, τοῦ γέλωτος ἐπιδαφιλεύσῃ. καὶ γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺς σοί ἐστιν ἀποκείμενος· οὔτε γὰρ αὐτὸς χρώμενος ἀνησίμωκας αὐτόν, οὐδὲ μὴν φίλοις οὐδὲ ξένοις ἐκὼν εἶναι γέλωτα παρέχεις· ὥστε οὐδεμία σοι πρόφασίς ἐστιν ὡς οὐ παρεκτέον σοι ἡμῖν γέλωτα. καὶ ὁ Ἀγλαϊτάδας εἶπε· Καὶ οἶει γε, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, γέλωτα περιποιεῖν ἐξ ἐμοῦ; καὶ ὁ ταξίαρχος εἶπε· Ναὶ μὰ Δί, ἀνόητος ἄρ' ἐστίν· ἐπεὶ ἔκ γε σοῦ πῦρ, οἶμαι, ῥᾶον ἂν τις ἐκτρίψειεν ἢ γέλωτα ἐξαγάγοιτο. ἐπὶ τούτῳ μὲν δὴ οἱ τε ἄλλοι ἐγέλασαν, τὸν τρόπον εἰδότες αὐτοῦ, ὃ

ἀγαθὰ |lesson, , καὶ νόμοι γε πολίτας διὰ τοῦ |weep  
|knowledge

|set, sit, alight, |justice |prompt, urge, compel; (mp) |laughter  
|set up |go, flee to

|build, contrive ἔχους ἂν εἰπεῖν ἢ σώματα |help, be useful ᾗ

ψυχὰς οἰκονομικωτέρας τι ποιούντας ἢ πολιτικωτέρας; ἐκ

τούτου ὁ Ὑστάσπας ὥδέ |somehow· Σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀγλαϊτάδα,

ἦν ἐμοὶ πείθη, εἰς μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους θαρρῶν δαπανήσεις

τοῦτο τὸ πολλοῦ ἄξιον, καὶ |weep ἐκείνους πειράσῃ

|set, sit, alight, ἵν δὲ |by all means' ᾗ, τοῖσδε τοῖς φίλοις τούτου  
|set up

τοῦ ὀλίγου ἀξίου, τοῦ |laughter ἐπιδαιψιλεύσῃ. καὶ γὰρ

οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺς σοί ἐστιν |be stored up, οὔτε γὰρ αὐτὸς  
|put aside

χρῶμενος |spend, use up αὐτόν, οὐδὲ μὴν φίλοις οὐδὲ

ξένοις |willingly· |ai |laughter παρέχεις· ὥστε οὐδεμία σοι

|pretext; motive; ἢ ὥς οὐ |deflect; bring |ai ἡμῶν |laughter . καὶ  
|prediction |forward

ὁ Ἀγλαϊτάδας εἶπε· Καὶ οἶε γε, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, |laughter

|preserve; ἐξ ἐμοῦ; καὶ ὁ |military rank ἵπε· |yea μὰ Δί,  
|obtain

|foolish ἄρ' ἐστίν· ἐπεὶ ἔκ γε σοῦ πῦρ, οἶμαι, ῥᾶον ἂν τις

|rub out ᾗ |laughter |lead out . ἐπὶ τούτῳ μὲν δὴ οἷ τε

ἄλλοι |laugh, , τὸν τρόπον εἰδότες αὐτοῦ, ὃ  
|smile

learning to their scholars, and the laws themselves lead the grown man to righteousness by putting him to sit in the place of penitence. But your mirth-makers, can you say they benefit the body or edify the soul? Can smiles make a man a better master or a better citizen? Can he learn economy or statesmanship from a grin?"

But Hystaspas answered back:

"Take my advice, Aglaïtadas, pluck up heart and spend this precious gift of yours on your enemies: make them sit in the seat of the sorrowful, and fling away on us, your friends, that vile and worthless laughter. You must have an ample store of it in reserve: it cannot be said you have squandered it on yourself, or ever wasted a smile on friend or foreigner if you could help it. So you have no excuse to be niggardly now, and cannot refuse us a smile."

"I See," said Aglaïtadas, "you are trying to get a laugh out of me, are you not?"

But the brigadier interposed, "Then he is a fool for his pains, my friend: one might strike fire out of you, perhaps, but not a laugh, not a laugh."

At this sally all the others shouted with glee, and even Aglaïtadas could not help himself: he smiled.

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄθλον** ἀέθλου prize ~athlete**ἀναπείθω** (aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey, be confident in**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer**ἄρῃν** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit**γελᾶω** laugh, smile, laugh at**γέλως** laughter**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπιμειδάω** smile at**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**κράτιστος** best**λάσκω** cry, crack, ring**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease

~lax

**μείων** less, smaller**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πότερος** which, whichever of two**προείπον** foretell, proclaim, order before**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect

~legion

**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συνεξέρχομαι** go out with**ταξίαρχος** military rank

τ' Ἀγλαϊτάδας ἐπεμειδίασε. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἰδὼν αὐτὸν  
 φαιδρωθέντα, Ἀδικεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ ταξίαρχε, ὅτι ἄνδρα ἡμῖν  
 τὸν σπουδαιότατον διαφθείρεις γελᾶν ἀναπείθων, καὶ  
 ταῦτα, ἔφη, οὕτω πολέμιον ὄντα τῷ γέλωτι. ταῦτα μὲν  
 δὴ ἐνταῦθα ἔληξεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Χρυσάντας ᾧδ' ἔλεξεν.

Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες, ἐννοῶ  
 ὅτι συνεξεληλύθασιν μὲν ἡμῖν οἱ μὲν καὶ βελτίονες, οἱ δὲ  
 καὶ μείονος ἄξιοι· ἦν δέ τι γένηται ἀγαθόν, ἀξιώσουσιν  
 οὔτοι πάντες ἰσομοιρεῖν. καίτοι ἔγωγε οὐδὲν ἀνισώτερον  
 νομίζω ἐν ἀνθρώποις εἶναι τοῦ τῶν ἴσων τόν τε κακὸν καὶ  
 τὸν ἀγαθὸν ἀξιουῖσθαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε πρὸς τοῦτο· Ἄρ'  
 οὖν, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ ἄνδρες, κράτιστον ἡμῖν ἐμβαλεῖν  
 περὶ τούτου βουλὴν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα, πότερα δοκεῖ, ἦν  
 τι ἐκ τῶν πόνων δῶ ὁ θεὸς ἀγαθόν, ἰσομοίρους πάντας  
 ποιεῖν, ἢ σκοποῦντας τὰ ἔργα ἐκάστου πρὸς ταῦτα καὶ τὰς  
 τιμὰς ἐκάστω προστιθέναι; Καὶ τί δεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας,  
 ἐμβαλεῖν λόγον περὶ τούτου, ἀλλ' οὐχὶ προειπεῖν ὅτι οὕτω  
 ποιήσεις; οὐ καὶ τοὺς ἀγῶνας οὕτω προείπας καὶ τὰ ἀθλα;



τ' Ἀγλαϊτάδας |smile at . . . καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἰδὼν αὐτὸν

φαιδρωθέντα, Ἀδικεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ |military rank"· ἄνδρα ἡμῖν

τὸν |quick, active; excel-|destroy, cor-|laugh, |(aor, plupf) seduce, persuade;  
|lent |rupt; (pf.)|smile |(mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey, be  
ταῦτα, ἔφη, οὕτω πο<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup> <sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup> <sup>14</sup> <sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup> <sup>17</sup> <sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup> <sup>20</sup> <sup>21</sup> <sup>22</sup> <sup>23</sup> <sup>24</sup> <sup>25</sup> <sup>26</sup> <sup>27</sup> <sup>28</sup> <sup>29</sup> <sup>30</sup> <sup>31</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>33</sup> <sup>34</sup> <sup>35</sup> <sup>36</sup> <sup>37</sup> <sup>38</sup> <sup>39</sup> <sup>40</sup> <sup>41</sup> <sup>42</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>44</sup> <sup>45</sup> <sup>46</sup> <sup>47</sup> <sup>48</sup> <sup>49</sup> <sup>50</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>52</sup> <sup>53</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>56</sup> <sup>57</sup> <sup>58</sup> <sup>59</sup> <sup>60</sup> <sup>61</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>63</sup> <sup>64</sup> <sup>65</sup> <sup>66</sup> <sup>67</sup> <sup>68</sup> <sup>69</sup> <sup>70</sup> <sup>71</sup> <sup>72</sup> <sup>73</sup> <sup>74</sup> <sup>75</sup> <sup>76</sup> <sup>77</sup> <sup>78</sup> <sup>79</sup> <sup>80</sup> <sup>81</sup> <sup>82</sup> <sup>83</sup> <sup>84</sup> <sup>85</sup> <sup>86</sup> <sup>87</sup> <sup>88</sup> <sup>89</sup> <sup>90</sup> <sup>91</sup> <sup>92</sup> <sup>93</sup> <sup>94</sup> <sup>95</sup> <sup>96</sup> <sup>97</sup> <sup>98</sup> <sup>99</sup> <sup>100</sup> <sup>101</sup> <sup>102</sup> <sup>103</sup> <sup>104</sup> <sup>105</sup> <sup>106</sup> <sup>107</sup> <sup>108</sup> <sup>109</sup> <sup>110</sup> <sup>111</sup> <sup>112</sup> <sup>113</sup> <sup>114</sup> <sup>115</sup> <sup>116</sup> <sup>117</sup> <sup>118</sup> <sup>119</sup> <sup>120</sup> <sup>121</sup> <sup>122</sup> <sup>123</sup> <sup>124</sup> <sup>125</sup> <sup>126</sup> <sup>127</sup> <sup>128</sup> <sup>129</sup> <sup>130</sup> <sup>131</sup> <sup>132</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>134</sup> <sup>135</sup> <sup>136</sup> <sup>137</sup> <sup>138</sup> <sup>139</sup> <sup>140</sup> <sup>141</sup> <sup>142</sup> <sup>143</sup> <sup>144</sup> <sup>145</sup> <sup>146</sup> <sup>147</sup> <sup>148</sup> <sup>149</sup> <sup>150</sup> <sup>151</sup> <sup>152</sup> <sup>153</sup> <sup>154</sup> <sup>155</sup> <sup>156</sup> <sup>157</sup> <sup>158</sup> <sup>159</sup> <sup>160</sup> <sup>161</sup> <sup>162</sup> <sup>163</sup> <sup>164</sup> <sup>165</sup> <sup>166</sup> <sup>167</sup> <sup>168</sup> <sup>169</sup> <sup>170</sup> <sup>171</sup> <sup>172</sup> <sup>173</sup> <sup>174</sup> <sup>175</sup> <sup>176</sup> <sup>177</sup> <sup>178</sup> <sup>179</sup> <sup>180</sup> <sup>181</sup> <sup>182</sup> <sup>183</sup> <sup>184</sup> <sup>185</sup> <sup>186</sup> <sup>187</sup> <sup>188</sup> <sup>189</sup> <sup>190</sup> <sup>191</sup> <sup>192</sup> <sup>193</sup> <sup>194</sup> <sup>195</sup> <sup>196</sup> <sup>197</sup> <sup>198</sup> <sup>199</sup> <sup>200</sup> <sup>201</sup> <sup>202</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>204</sup> <sup>205</sup> <sup>206</sup> <sup>207</sup> <sup>208</sup> <sup>209</sup> <sup>210</sup> <sup>211</sup> <sup>212</sup> <sup>213</sup> <sup>214</sup> <sup>215</sup> <sup>216</sup> <sup>217</sup> <sup>218</sup> <sup>219</sup> <sup>220</sup> <sup>221</sup> <sup>222</sup> <sup>223</sup> <sup>224</sup> <sup>225</sup> <sup>226</sup> <sup>227</sup> <sup>228</sup> <sup>229</sup> <sup>230</sup> <sup>231</sup> <sup>232</sup> <sup>233</sup> <sup>234</sup> <sup>235</sup> <sup>236</sup> <sup>237</sup> <sup>238</sup> <sup>239</sup> <sup>240</sup> <sup>241</sup> <sup>242</sup> <sup>243</sup> <sup>244</sup> <sup>245</sup> <sup>246</sup> <sup>247</sup> <sup>248</sup> <sup>249</sup> <sup>250</sup> <sup>251</sup> <sup>252</sup> <sup>253</sup> <sup>254</sup> <sup>255</sup> <sup>256</sup> <sup>257</sup> <sup>258</sup> <sup>259</sup> <sup>260</sup> <sup>261</sup> <sup>262</sup> <sup>263</sup> <sup>264</sup> <sup>265</sup> <sup>266</sup> <sup>267</sup> <sup>268</sup> <sup>269</sup> <sup>270</sup> <sup>271</sup> <sup>272</sup> <sup>273</sup> <sup>274</sup> <sup>275</sup> <sup>276</sup> <sup>277</sup> <sup>278</sup> <sup>279</sup> <sup>280</sup> <sup>281</sup> <sup>282</sup> <sup>283</sup> <sup>284</sup> <sup>285</sup> <sup>286</sup> <sup>287</sup> <sup>288</sup> <sup>289</sup> <sup>290</sup> <sup>291</sup> <sup>292</sup> <sup>293</sup> <sup>294</sup> <sup>295</sup> <sup>296</sup> <sup>297</sup> <sup>298</sup> <sup>299</sup> <sup>300</sup> <sup>301</sup> <sup>302</sup> <sup>303</sup> <sup>304</sup> <sup>305</sup> <sup>306</sup> <sup>307</sup> <sup>308</sup> <sup>309</sup> <sup>310</sup> <sup>311</sup> <sup>312</sup> <sup>313</sup> <sup>314</sup> <sup>315</sup> <sup>316</sup> <sup>317</sup> <sup>318</sup> <sup>319</sup> <sup>320</sup> <sup>321</sup> <sup>322</sup> <sup>323</sup> <sup>324</sup> <sup>325</sup> <sup>326</sup> <sup>327</sup> <sup>328</sup> <sup>329</sup> <sup>330</sup> <sup>331</sup> <sup>332</sup> <sup>333</sup> <sup>334</sup> <sup>335</sup> <sup>336</sup> <sup>337</sup> <sup>338</sup> <sup>339</sup> <sup>340</sup> <sup>341</sup> <sup>342</sup> <sup>343</sup> <sup>344</sup> <sup>345</sup> <sup>346</sup> <sup>347</sup> <sup>348</sup> <sup>349</sup> <sup>350</sup> <sup>351</sup> <sup>352</sup> <sup>353</sup> <sup>354</sup> <sup>355</sup> <sup>356</sup> <sup>357</sup> <sup>358</sup> <sup>359</sup> <sup>360</sup> <sup>361</sup> <sup>362</sup> <sup>363</sup> <sup>364</sup> <sup>365</sup> <sup>366</sup> <sup>367</sup> <sup>368</sup> <sup>369</sup> <sup>370</sup> <sup>371</sup> <sup>372</sup> <sup>373</sup> <sup>374</sup> <sup>375</sup> <sup>376</sup> <sup>377</sup> <sup>378</sup> <sup>379</sup> <sup>380</sup> <sup>381</sup> <sup>382</sup> <sup>383</sup> <sup>384</sup> <sup>385</sup> <sup>386</sup> <sup>387</sup> <sup>388</sup> <sup>389</sup> <sup>390</sup> <sup>391</sup> <sup>392</sup> <sup>393</sup> <sup>394</sup> <sup>395</sup> <sup>396</sup> <sup>397</sup> <sup>398</sup> <sup>399</sup> <sup>400</sup> <sup>401</sup> <sup>402</sup> <sup>403</sup> <sup>404</sup> <sup>405</sup> <sup>406</sup> <sup>407</sup> <sup>408</sup> <sup>409</sup> <sup>410</sup> <sup>411</sup> <sup>412</sup> <sup>413</sup> <sup>414</sup> <sup>415</sup> <sup>416</sup> <sup>417</sup> <sup>418</sup> <sup>419</sup> <sup>420</sup> <sup>421</sup> <sup>422</sup> <sup>423</sup> <sup>424</sup> <sup>425</sup> <sup>426</sup> <sup>427</sup> <sup>428</sup> <sup>429</sup> <sup>430</sup> <sup>431</sup> <sup>432</sup> <sup>433</sup> <sup>434</sup> <sup>435</sup> <sup>436</sup> <sup>437</sup> <sup>438</sup> <sup>439</sup> <sup>440</sup> <sup>441</sup> <sup>442</sup> <sup>443</sup> <sup>444</sup> <sup>445</sup> <sup>446</sup> <sup>447</sup> <sup>448</sup> <sup>449</sup> <sup>450</sup> <sup>451</sup> <sup>452</sup> <sup>453</sup> <sup>454</sup> <sup>455</sup> <sup>456</sup> <sup>457</sup> <sup>458</sup> <sup>459</sup> <sup>460</sup> <sup>461</sup> <sup>462</sup> <sup>463</sup> <sup>464</sup> <sup>465</sup> <sup>466</sup> <sup>467</sup> <sup>468</sup> <sup>469</sup> <sup>470</sup> <sup>471</sup> <sup>472</sup> <sup>473</sup> <sup>474</sup> <sup>475</sup> <sup>476</sup> <sup>477</sup> <sup>478</sup> <sup>479</sup> <sup>480</sup> <sup>481</sup> <sup>482</sup> <sup>483</sup> <sup>484</sup> <sup>485</sup> <sup>486</sup> <sup>487</sup> <sup>488</sup> <sup>489</sup> <sup>490</sup> <sup>491</sup> <sup>492</sup> <sup>493</sup> <sup>494</sup> <sup>495</sup> <sup>496</sup> <sup>497</sup> <sup>498</sup> <sup>499</sup> <sup>500</sup> <sup>501</sup> <sup>502</sup> <sup>503</sup> <sup>504</sup> <sup>505</sup> <sup>506</sup> <sup>507</sup> <sup>508</sup> <sup>509</sup> <sup>510</sup> <sup>511</sup> <sup>512</sup> <sup>513</sup> <sup>514</sup> <sup>515</sup> <sup>516</sup> <sup>517</sup> <sup>518</sup> <sup>519</sup> <sup>520</sup> <sup>521</sup> <sup>522</sup> <sup>523</sup> <sup>524</sup> <sup>525</sup> <sup>526</sup> <sup>527</sup> <sup>528</sup> <sup>529</sup> <sup>530</sup> <sup>531</sup> <sup>532</sup> <sup>533</sup> <sup>534</sup> <sup>535</sup> <sup>536</sup> <sup>537</sup> <sup>538</sup> <sup>539</sup> <sup>540</sup> <sup>541</sup> <sup>542</sup> <sup>543</sup> <sup>544</sup> <sup>545</sup> <sup>546</sup> <sup>547</sup> <sup>548</sup> <sup>549</sup> <sup>550</sup> <sup>551</sup> <sup>552</sup> <sup>553</sup> <sup>554</sup> <sup>555</sup> <sup>556</sup> <sup>557</sup> <sup>558</sup> <sup>559</sup> <sup>560</sup> <sup>561</sup> <sup>562</sup> <sup>563</sup> <sup>564</sup> <sup>565</sup> <sup>566</sup> <sup>567</sup> <sup>568</sup> <sup>569</sup> <sup>570</sup> <sup>571</sup> <sup>572</sup> <sup>573</sup> <sup>574</sup> <sup>575</sup> <sup>576</sup> <sup>577</sup> <sup>578</sup> <sup>579</sup> <sup>580</sup> <sup>581</sup> <sup>582</sup> <sup>583</sup> <sup>584</sup> <sup>585</sup> <sup>586</sup> <sup>587</sup> <sup>588</sup> <sup>589</sup> <sup>590</sup> <sup>591</sup> <sup>592</sup> <sup>593</sup> <sup>594</sup> <sup>595</sup> <sup>596</sup> <sup>597</sup> <sup>598</sup> <sup>599</sup> <sup>600</sup> <sup>601</sup> <sup>602</sup> <sup>603</sup> <sup>604</sup> <sup>605</sup> <sup>606</sup> <sup>607</sup> <sup>608</sup> <sup>609</sup> <sup>610</sup> <sup>611</sup> <sup>612</sup> <sup>613</sup> <sup>614</sup> <sup>615</sup> <sup>616</sup> <sup>617</sup> <sup>618</sup> <sup>619</sup> <sup>620</sup> <sup>621</sup> <sup>622</sup> <sup>623</sup> <sup>624</sup> <sup>625</sup> <sup>626</sup> <sup>627</sup> <sup>628</sup> <sup>629</sup> <sup>630</sup> <sup>631</sup> <sup>632</sup> <sup>633</sup> <sup>634</sup> <sup>635</sup> <sup>636</sup> <sup>637</sup> <sup>638</sup> <sup>639</sup> <sup>640</sup> <sup>641</sup> <sup>642</sup> <sup>643</sup> <sup>644</sup> <sup>645</sup> <sup>646</sup> <sup>647</sup> <sup>648</sup> <sup>649</sup> <sup>650</sup> <sup>651</sup> <sup>652</sup> <sup>653</sup> <sup>654</sup> <sup>655</sup> <sup>656</sup> <sup>657</sup> <sup>658</sup> <sup>659</sup> <sup>660</sup> <sup>661</sup> <sup>662</sup> <sup>663</sup> <sup>664</sup> <sup>665</sup> <sup>666</sup> <sup>667</sup> <sup>668</sup> <sup>669</sup> <sup>670</sup> <sup>671</sup> <sup>672</sup> <sup>673</sup> <sup>674</sup> <sup>675</sup> <sup>676</sup> <sup>677</sup> <sup>678</sup> <sup>679</sup> <sup>680</sup> <sup>681</sup> <sup>682</sup> <sup>683</sup> <sup>684</sup> <sup>685</sup> <sup>686</sup> <sup>687</sup> <sup>688</sup> <sup>689</sup> <sup>690</sup> <sup>691</sup> <sup>692</sup> <sup>693</sup> <sup>694</sup> <sup>695</sup> <sup>696</sup> <sup>697</sup> <sup>698</sup> <sup>699</sup> <sup>700</sup> <sup>701</sup> <sup>702</sup> <sup>703</sup> <sup>704</sup> <sup>705</sup> <sup>706</sup> <sup>707</sup> <sup>708</sup> <sup>709</sup> <sup>710</sup> <sup>711</sup> <sup>712</sup> <sup>713</sup> <sup>714</sup> <sup>715</sup> <sup>716</sup> <sup>717</sup> <sup>718</sup> <sup>719</sup> <sup>720</sup> <sup>721</sup> <sup>722</sup> <sup>723</sup> <sup>724</sup> <sup>725</sup> <sup>726</sup> <sup>727</sup> <sup>728</sup> <sup>729</sup> <sup>730</sup> <sup>731</sup> <sup>732</sup> <sup>733</sup> <sup>734</sup> <sup>735</sup> <sup>736</sup> <sup>737</sup> <sup>738</sup> <sup>739</sup> <sup>740</sup> <sup>741</sup> <sup>742</sup> <sup>743</sup> <sup>744</sup> <sup>745</sup> <sup>746</sup> <sup>747</sup> <sup>748</sup> <sup>749</sup> <sup>750</sup> <sup>751</sup> <sup>752</sup> <sup>753</sup> <sup>754</sup> <sup>755</sup> <sup>756</sup> <sup>757</sup> <sup>758</sup> <sup>759</sup> <sup>760</sup> <sup>761</sup> <sup>762</sup> <sup>763</sup> <sup>764</sup> <sup>765</sup> <sup>766</sup> <sup>767</sup> <sup>768</sup> <sup>769</sup> <sup>770</sup> <sup>771</sup> <sup>772</sup> <sup>773</sup> <sup>774</sup> <sup>775</sup> <sup>776</sup> <sup>777</sup> <sup>778</sup> <sup>779</sup> <sup>780</sup> <sup>781</sup> <sup>782</sup> <sup>783</sup> <sup>784</sup> <sup>785</sup> <sup>786</sup> <sup>787</sup> <sup>788</sup> <sup>789</sup> <sup>790</sup> <sup>791</sup> <sup>792</sup> <sup>793</sup> <sup>794</sup> <sup>795</sup> <sup>796</sup> <sup>797</sup> <sup>798</sup> <sup>799</sup> <sup>800</sup> <sup>801</sup> <sup>802</sup> <sup>803</sup> <sup>804</sup> <sup>805</sup> <sup>806</sup> <sup>807</sup> <sup>808</sup> <sup>809</sup> <sup>810</sup> <sup>811</sup> <sup>812</sup> <sup>813</sup> <sup>814</sup> <sup>815</sup> <sup>816</sup> <sup>817</sup> <sup>818</sup> <sup>819</sup> <sup>820</sup> <sup>821</sup> <sup>822</sup> <sup>823</sup> <sup>824</sup> <sup>825</sup> <sup>826</sup> <sup>827</sup> <sup>828</sup> <sup>829</sup> <sup>830</sup> <sup>831</sup> <sup>832</sup> <sup>833</sup> <sup>834</sup> <sup>835</sup> <sup>836</sup> <sup>837</sup> <sup>838</sup> <sup>839</sup> <sup>840</sup> <sup>841</sup> <sup>842</sup> <sup>843</sup> <sup>844</sup> <sup>845</sup> <sup>846</sup> <sup>847</sup> <sup>848</sup> <sup>849</sup> <sup>850</sup> <sup>851</sup> <sup>852</sup> <sup>853</sup> <sup>854</sup> <sup>855</sup> <sup>856</sup> <sup>857</sup> <sup>858</sup> <sup>859</sup> <sup>860</sup> <sup>861</sup> <sup>862</sup> <sup>863</sup> <sup>864</sup> <sup>865</sup> <sup>866</sup> <sup>867</sup> <sup>868</sup> <sup>869</sup> <sup>870</sup> <sup>871</sup> <sup>872</sup> <sup>873</sup> <sup>874</sup> <sup>875</sup> <sup>876</sup> <sup>877</sup> <sup>878</sup> <sup>879</sup> <sup>880</sup> <sup>881</sup> <sup>882</sup> <sup>883</sup> <sup>884</sup> <sup>885</sup> <sup>886</sup> <sup>887</sup> <sup>888</sup> <sup>889</sup> <sup>890</sup> <sup>891</sup> <sup>892</sup> <sup>893</sup> <sup>894</sup> <sup>895</sup> <sup>896</sup> <sup>897</sup> <sup>898</sup> <sup>899</sup> <sup>900</sup> <sup>901</sup> <sup>902</sup> <sup>903</sup> <sup>904</sup> <sup>905</sup> <sup>906</sup> <sup>907</sup> <sup>908</sup> <sup>909</sup> <sup>910</sup> <sup>911</sup> <sup>912</sup> <sup>913</sup> <sup>914</sup> <sup>915</sup> <sup>916</sup> <sup>917</sup> <sup>918</sup> <sup>919</sup> <sup>920</sup> <sup>921</sup> <sup>922</sup> <sup>923</sup> <sup>924</sup> <sup>925</sup> <sup>926</sup> <sup>927</sup> <sup>928</sup> <sup>929</sup> <sup>930</sup> <sup>931</sup> <sup>932</sup> <sup>933</sup> <sup>934</sup> <sup>935</sup> <sup>936</sup> <sup>937</sup> <sup>938</sup> <sup>939</sup> <sup>940</sup> <sup>941</sup> <sup>942</sup> <sup>943</sup> <sup>944</sup> <sup>945</sup> <sup>946</sup> <sup>947</sup> <sup>948</sup> <sup>949</sup> <sup>950</sup> <sup>951</sup> <sup>952</sup> <sup>953</sup> <sup>954</sup> <sup>955</sup> <sup>956</sup> <sup>957</sup> <sup>958</sup> <sup>959</sup> <sup>960</sup> <sup>961</sup> <sup>962</sup> <sup>963</sup> <sup>964</sup> <sup>965</sup> <sup>966</sup> <sup>967</sup> <sup>968</sup> <sup>969</sup> <sup>970</sup> <sup>971</sup> <sup>972</sup> <sup>973</sup> <sup>974</sup> <sup>975</sup> <sup>976</sup> <sup>977</sup> <sup>978</sup> <sup>979</sup> <sup>980</sup> <sup>981</sup> <sup>982</sup> <sup>983</sup> <sup>984</sup> <sup>985</sup> <sup>986</sup> <sup>987</sup> <sup>988</sup> <sup>989</sup> <sup>990</sup> <sup>991</sup> <sup>992</sup> <sup>993</sup> <sup>994</sup> <sup>995</sup> <sup>996</sup> <sup>997</sup> <sup>998</sup> <sup>999</sup> <sup>1000</sup> <sup>1001</sup> <sup>1002</sup> <sup>1003</sup> <sup>1004</sup> <sup>1005</sup> <sup>1006</sup> <sup>1007</sup> <sup>1008</sup> <sup>1009</sup> <sup>1010</sup> <sup>1011</sup> <sup>1012</sup> <sup>1013</sup> <sup>1014</sup> <sup>1015</sup> <sup>1016</sup> <sup>1017</sup> <sup>1018</sup> <sup>1019</sup> <sup>1020</sup> <sup>1021</sup> <sup>1022</sup> <sup>1023</sup> <sup>1024</sup> <sup>1025</sup> <sup>1026</sup> <sup>1027</sup> <sup>1028</sup> <sup>1029</sup> <sup>1030</sup> <sup>1031</sup> <sup>1032</sup> <sup>1033</sup> <sup>1034</sup> <sup>1035</sup> <sup>1036</sup> <sup>1037</sup> <sup>1038</sup> <sup>1039</sup> <sup>1040</sup> <sup>1041</sup> <sup>1042</sup> <sup>1043</sup> <sup>1044</sup> <sup>1045</sup> <sup>1046</sup> <sup>1047</sup> <sup>1048</sup> <sup>1049</sup> <sup>1050</sup> <sup>1051</sup> <sup>1052</sup> <sup>1053</sup> <sup>1054</sup> <sup>1055</sup> <sup>1056</sup> <sup>1057</sup> <sup>1058</sup> <sup>1059</sup> <sup>1060</sup> <sup>1061</sup> <sup>1062</sup> <sup>1063</sup> <sup>1064</sup> <sup>1065</sup> <sup>1066</sup> <sup>1067</sup> <sup>1068</sup> <sup>1069</sup> <sup>1070</sup> <sup>1071</sup> <sup>1072</sup> <sup>1073</sup> <sup>1074</sup> <sup>1075</sup> <sup>1076</sup> <sup>1077</sup> <sup>1078</sup> <sup>1079</sup> <sup>1080</sup> <sup>1081</sup> <sup>1082</sup> <sup>1083</sup> <sup>1084</sup> <sup>1085</sup> <sup>1086</sup> <sup>1087</sup> <sup>1088</sup> <sup>1089</sup> <sup>1090</sup> <sup>1091</sup> <sup>1092</sup> <sup>1093</sup> <sup>1094</sup> <sup>1095</sup> <sup>1096</sup> <sup>1097</sup> <sup>1098</sup> <sup>1099</sup> <sup>1100</sup> <sup>1101</sup> <sup>1102</sup> <sup>1103</sup> <sup>1104</sup> <sup>1105</sup> <sup>1106</sup> <sup>1107</sup> <sup>1108</sup> <sup>1109</sup> <sup>1110</sup> <sup>1111</sup> <sup>1112</sup> <sup>1113</sup> <sup>1114</sup> <sup>1115</sup> <sup>1116</sup> <sup>1117</sup> <sup>1118</sup> <sup>1119</sup> <sup>1120</sup> <sup>1121</sup> <sup>1122</sup> <sup>1123</sup> <sup>1124</sup> <sup>1125</sup> <sup>1126</sup> <sup>1127</sup> <sup>1128</sup> <sup>1129</sup> <sup>1130</sup> <sup>1131</sup> <sup>1132</sup> <sup>1133</sup> <sup>1134</sup> <sup>1135</sup> <sup>1136</sup> <sup>1137</sup> <sup>1138</sup> <sup>1139</sup> <sup>1140</sup> <sup>1141</sup> <sup>1142</sup> <sup>1143</sup> <sup>1144</sup> <sup>1145</sup> <sup>1146</sup> <sup>1147</sup> <sup>1148</sup> <sup>1149</sup> <sup>1150</sup> <sup>1151</sup> <sup>1152</sup> <sup>1153</sup> <sup>1154</sup> <sup>1155</sup> <sup>1156</sup> <sup>1157</sup> <sup>1158</sup> <sup>1159</sup> <sup>1160</sup> <sup>1161</sup> <sup>1162</sup> <sup>1163</sup> <sup>1164</sup> <sup>1165</sup> <sup>1166</sup> <sup>1167</sup> <sup>1168</sup> <sup>1169</sup> <sup>1170</sup> <sup>1171</sup> <sup>1172</sup> <sup>1173</sup> <sup>1174</sup> <sup>1175</sup> <sup>1176</sup> <sup>1177</sup> <sup>1178</sup> <sup>1179</sup> <sup>1180</sup> <sup>1181</sup> <sup>1182</sup> <sup>1183</sup> <sup>1184</sup> <sup>1185</sup> <sup>1186</sup> <sup>1187</sup> <sup>1188</sup> <sup>1189</sup> <sup>1190</sup> <sup>1191</sup> <sup>1192</sup> <sup>1193</sup> <sup>1194</sup> <sup>1195</sup> <sup>1196</sup> <sup>1197</sup> <sup>1198</sup> <sup>1199</sup> <sup>1200</sup> <sup>1201</sup> <sup>1202</sup> <sup>1203</sup> <sup>1204</sup> <sup>1205</sup> <sup>1206</sup> <sup>1207</sup> <sup>1208</sup> <sup>1209</sup> <sup>1210</sup> <sup>1211</sup> <sup>1212</sup> <sup>1213</sup> <sup>1214</sup> <sup>1215</sup> <sup>1216</sup> <sup>1217</sup> <sup>1218</sup> <sup>1219</sup> <sup>1220</sup> <sup>1221</sup> <sup>1222</sup> <sup>1223</sup> <sup>1224</sup> <sup>1225</sup> <sup>1226</sup> <sup>1227</sup> <sup>1228</sup> <sup>1229</sup> <sup>1230</sup> <sup>1231</sup> <sup>1232</sup> <sup>1233</sup> <sup>1234</sup> <sup>1235</sup> <sup>1236</sup> <sup>1237</sup> <sup>1238</sup> <sup>1239</sup> <sup>1240</sup> <sup>1241</sup> <sup>1242</sup> <sup>1243</sup> <sup>1244</sup> <sup>1245</sup> <sup>1246</sup> <sup>1247</sup> <sup>1248</sup> <sup>1249</sup> <sup>1250</sup> <sup>1251</sup> <sup>1252</sup> <sup>1253</sup> <sup>1254</sup> <sup>1255</sup> <sup>1256</sup> <sup>1257</sup> <sup>1258</sup> <sup>1259</sup> <sup>1260</sup> <sup>1261</sup> <sup>1262</sup> <sup>1263</sup> <sup>1264</sup> <sup>1265</sup> <sup>1266</sup> <sup>1267</sup> <sup>1268</sup> <sup>1269</sup> <sup>1270</sup> <sup>1271</sup> <sup>1272</sup> <sup>1273</sup> <sup>1274</sup> <sup>1275</sup> <sup>1276</sup> <sup>1277</sup> <sup>1278</sup> <sup>1279</sup> <sup>1280</sup> <sup>1281</sup> <sup>1282</sup> <sup>1283</sup> <sup>1284</sup> <sup>1285</sup> <sup>1286</sup> <sup>1287</sup> <sup>1288</sup> <sup>1289</sup> <sup>1290</sup> <sup>1291</sup> <sup>1292</sup> <sup>1293</sup> <sup>1294</sup> <sup>1295</sup> <sup>1296</sup> <sup>1297</sup> <sup>1298</sup> <sup>1299</sup> <sup>1300</sup> <sup>1301</sup> <sup>1302</sup> <sup>1303</sup> <sup>1304</sup> <sup>1305</sup> <sup>1306</sup> <sup>1307</sup> <sup>1308</sup> <sup>1309</sup> <sup>1310</sup> <sup>1311</sup> <sup>1312</sup> <sup>1313</sup> <sup>1314</sup> <sup>1315</sup>

And Cyrus, seeing the sombre face light up said:

"Brigadier, you are very wrong to corrupt so virtuous a man, luring him to laughter, and that too when he is the sworn foe of gaiety."

So they talked and jested. And then Chrysantas began on another theme.

"Cyrus," he said, "and gentlemen all, I cannot help seeing that within our ranks are men of every kind, some better and some worse, and yet if anything is won every man will claim an equal share. Now to my mind nothing is more unfair than that the base man and the good should be held of equal account."

"Perhaps it would be best, gentlemen," said Cyrus in answer, "to bring the matter before the army in council and put it to them, whether, if God grant us success, we should let all share and share alike, or distribute the rewards and honours in proportion to the deserts of each."

"But why," asked Chrysantas, "why discuss the point? Why not simply issue a general order that you intend to do this? Was not that enough in the case of the competitions?"

"Doubtless," Cyrus answered, "but

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀντιλέγω** contradict, oppose**διατάσσω** arrange, array**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐπιστάτης** -ου (m, f) suppliant, dependant ~station**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κράτιστος** best**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**οἶκοθεν** from home, from one's own resources ~economics**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὀμότιμος** (f) equally honored**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear**συναγορεύω** support**συνέρχομαι** come together**ψηφίζω** count, vote**ψῆφος** (f) pebble, vote, decree, sentence**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

Ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐχ ὅμοια ταῦτα ἐκείνοις· ἃ μὲν γὰρ ἂν στρατευόμενοι κτήσωνται, κοινὰ οἶμαι ἑαυτῶν ἡγήσονται εἶναι· τὴν δὲ ἀρχὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐμὴν ἴσως ἔτι οἴκοθεν νομίζουσιν εἶναι, ὥστε διατάττοντα ἐμὲ τοὺς ἐπιστάτας οὐδὲν οἶμαι ἀδικεῖν νομίζουσιν. Ἡ καὶ οἶει, ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, ψηφίσασθαι ἂν τὸ πλῆθος συνελθὼν ὥστε μὴ ἴσων ἕκαστον τυγχάνειν, ἀλλὰ τοὺς κρατίστους καὶ τιμαῖς καὶ δώροις πλεονεκτεῖν; Ἔγωγ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οἶμαι, ἅμα μὲν ἡμῶν συναγορευόντων, ἅμα δὲ καὶ αἰσχυρὸν ὃν ἀντιλέγειν τὸ μὴ οὐχὶ τὸν πλείστα καὶ πονοῦντα καὶ ὠφελοῦντα τὸ κοινὸν τοῦτον καὶ μεγίστων ἀξιοῦσθαι. οἶμαι δ', ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς κακίστοις συμφέρον φανείσθαι τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς πλεονεκτεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐβούλετο καὶ αὐτῶν ἕνεκα τῶν ὁμοτίμων γενέσθαι τοῦτο τὸ ψήφισμα· βελτίους γὰρ ἂν καὶ αὐτοὺς ἡγείτο τούτους εἶναι, εἰ εἶδείεν ὅτι ἐκ τῶν ἔργων καὶ αὐτοὶ κρινόμενοι τῶν ἀξίων τεύξονται. καιρὸς οὖν ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι νῦν ἐμβαλεῖν περὶ τούτου ψῆφον, ἐν ᾗ καὶ οἱ ὁμότιμοι ὥκνουν τὴν τοῦ

Ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐχ <sup>|</sup>like ταῦτα ἐκείνοις· ἂ  
 μὲν γὰρ ἂν <sup>|</sup>make an expedition, <sup>|</sup>ῥσωνται, <sup>|</sup>communal, <sup>|</sup>ἑαυτῶν  
<sup>|</sup>war, campaign <sup>|</sup>ordinary  
 ἡγήσονται εἶναι· τὴν δὲ ἀρχὴν τῆς <sup>|</sup>army ἐμὴν ἴσως  
 ἔτι <sup>|</sup>from <sup>|</sup>consider <sup>cus-</sup>ι, ὥστε <sup>|</sup>arrange, array ἐμὲ τοὺς  
<sup>|</sup>home <sup>|</sup>tomary; believe  
 ἐπιστάτας οὐδὲν οἶμαι ἀδικεῖν <sup>|</sup>consider <sup>cus-</sup>Ἡ καὶ οἶει,  
<sup>|</sup>tomary; believe  
 ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, <sup>|</sup>count, vote ἂν τὸ <sup>|</sup>numerical <sup>|</sup>come together  
<sup>|</sup>superior-  
 ὥστε μὴ ἴσων ἕκαστον τυγχάνειν, ἀλλὰ τοὺς <sup>ity</sup> <sup>|</sup>best  
 καὶ <sup>|</sup>honor, καὶ <sup>|</sup>gift <sup>|</sup>be greedy, take Ἐγώγ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,  
<sup>|</sup>value <sup>|</sup>advantage  
 οἶμαι, ἅμα μὲν ἡμῶν <sup>|</sup>support , ἅμα δὲ καὶ <sup>|</sup>shameful  
 ὃν <sup>|</sup>contradict, τὸ μὴ οὐχὶ τὸν πλείστα καὶ <sup>|</sup>work καὶ  
<sup>|</sup>oppose  
<sup>|</sup>help, be useful . ὃ <sup>|</sup>communal, <sup>|</sup>ἴτον καὶ μεγίστων <sup>|</sup>consider wor-  
<sup>|</sup>ordinary <sup>|</sup>thy, fitting  
 οἶμαι δ', ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς κακίοις <sup>|</sup>bring together; be expedient; agree;  
<sup>|</sup>(mp) happen  
 τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς <sup>|</sup>be greedy, take ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐβούλετο καὶ  
<sup>|</sup>advantage  
 αὐτῶν ἕνεκα τῶν <sup>|</sup>equally γενέσθαι τοῦτο τὸ ψήφισμα·  
<sup>|</sup>honored  
 βελτίους γὰρ ἂν καὶ αὐτοὺς ἡγείτο τούτους εἶναι, εἰ  
 εἶδεῖεν ὅτι ἐκ τῶν ἔργων καὶ αὐτοὶ κρινόμενοι τῶν <sup>|</sup>worthy  
 τεύξονται. καιρὸς οὖν ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι νῦν <sup>|</sup>throw in; inspire  
 τούτου <sup>|</sup>pebble, , <sup>|</sup>vote, <sup>|</sup>décree, <sup>|</sup>equally <sup>|</sup>hesitate; τὴν τοῦ  
<sup>|</sup>sentence <sup>|</sup>honored <sup>|</sup>worry

this case is different. The troops, I take it, will feel that all they win by their services on the campaign should belong to them in common: but they hold that the actual command of the expedition was mine by right even before we left home, so that I was fully entitled, on their view, to appoint umpires and judges at my own will."

"And do you really expect," asked Chrysantas, "that the mass of the army will pass a resolution giving up the right of all to an equal share in order that the best men should receive the most?"

"Yes, I do," said Cyrus, "partly because we shall be there to argue for that course, but chiefly because it would seem too base to deny that he who works the hardest and does most for the common good deserves the highest recompense. Even the worst of men must admit that the brave should gain the most."

It was, however, as much for the sake of the Peers themselves as for any other reason that Cyrus wished the resolution to be passed. They would prove all the better men, he thought, if they too were to be judged by their deeds and rewarded accordingly. And this was the right moment, he felt, to raise the question and put it to the vote, now when the Peers were disposed to resent being put on a level with

*vocabulary*

**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀνταίρω** raise against  
**εἰκῇ** haphazardly; in vain  
**εἴπερ** if indeed  
**ἐξαίρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**μαστεύω** crave  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νή** yea

**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**συναγορεύω** support  
**συνδοκέω** seem good also  
**σύσκηνος** roommate  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

ὄχλου ἰσομοιρίαν. οὕτω δὴ συνεδόκει τοῖς ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ συμβαλέσθαι περὶ τούτου λόγους καὶ συναγορεύειν ταῦτα ἔφασαν χρήναι ὅστιςπερ ἀνὴρ οἶοιτο εἶναι.

Ἐπιγελάσας δὲ τῶν ταξιάρχων τις εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἄνδρα οἶδα καὶ τοῦ δήμου ὃς συνερεῖ ὥστε μὴ εἰκῇ οὕτως ἰσομοιρίαν εἶναι. ἄλλος δ' ἀντήρητο τοῦτον τίνα λέγοι. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἔστι νῆ Δί' ἀνὴρ ἡμῖν σύσκηνος, ὃς ἐν παντὶ μαστεύει πλέον ἔχειν. ἄλλος δ' ἐπῆρετο αὐτόν· Ἡ καὶ τῶν πόνων; ἃ Δί', ἔφη, οὐ μὲν δῆ· ἀλλὰ τοῦτό γε ψευδόμενος ἐάλωκα. καὶ γὰρ πόνων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τῶν τοιούτων ὀρῶ πάνυ θαρραλέως βουλόμενον μείον ἔχειν παρ' ὄντιναοῦν. Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Κύρος, ὦ ἄνδρες, γιγνώσκω τοὺς τοιούτους ἀνθρώπους οἷον καὶ οὗτος νῦν λέγει, εἵπερ δεῖ ἐνεργὸν καὶ πειθόμενον ἔχειν τὸ στράτευμα, ἐξαιρετέους εἶναι ἐκ τῆς στρατιᾶς. δοκεῖ γάρ μοι τὸ μὲν πολὺ τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἶναι οἷον ἔπessθαι ἢ ἂν τις ἡγήται· ἄγειν δ' οἶμαι ἐπιχειροῦσιν οἱ μὲν καλοὶ καγαθοὶ ἐπὶ τὰ καλὰ καγαθά, οἱ δὲ πονηροὶ ἐπὶ τὰ πονηρά.



|mob, crowd; trouble . οὕτω δὲ |seem good also . ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ

|pit against; compare; ούτου λόγους καὶ |support ταῦτα  
|mp: meet, fall in with

ἔφασαν χρῆναι ὅστις περ ἀνὴρ οἶοιτο εἶναι.

Ἐπιγελάσας δὲ τῶν |military rank . ις εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,

ἄνδρα οἶδα καὶ τοῦ |district, ἴ- |collect, ὅστε μὴ |haphazardly; in vain  
|common |assemble  
|people  
ισομοιρίαν εἶναι. ἄλλος δ' |raise τοῦτον τίνα λέγοι.  
|against

ὁ δ' |to separate; reject; (mp) ἢ Δί' ἀνὴρ ἡμῶν |roommate , ὅς  
|answer, defend oneself

ἐν παντὶ |crave πλέον ἔχειν. ἄλλος δ' |ask as well; ὕτόν·  
|ask then

Ἥ καὶ τῶν |toil, suffering ἴ', ἔφη, οὐ μὲν δή· ἀλλὰ τοῦτό

γε |be false, de-|be captured αἱ γὰρ |toil, suffering ὧν ἄλλων  
|ceive; (mid) to

τῶν |lie τοιούτων ὁρῶ |alto- |bold βουλόμενον |less,  
|gether, |smaller  
|very  
ἔχειν παρ' ὄντινα οὖν. Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ

ἄνδρες, γινώσκω τοὺς τοιούτους ἀνθρώπους οἷον καὶ

οὗτος νῦν λέγει, |if indeed . ἐνεργὸν καὶ πειθόμενον ἔχειν

τὸ |army , |pick, steal; dedi-|cαι ἐκ τῆς |army δοκεῖ  
|cate; destroy

γάρ μοι τὸ μὲν πολὺ τῶν |soldier, εἶναι οἷον ἔπεσθαι  
|mercenary

ἢ ἂν τις ἡγήται· ἄγειν δ' οἶμαι |do, try, attack οἱ μὲν καλοὶ

κάγαθοι ἐπὶ τὰ καλὰ κάγαθά, οἱ δὲ |oppressed; knav-|oppressed; knavish;  
|ish; useless |useless

the common people. In the end it was agreed by all the company that the question should be raised, and that every one who claimed to call himself a man was bound to argue in its favour.

And on that one of the brigadiers smiled to himself and said: "I know at least one son of the soil who will be ready to agree that the principle of share and share alike should not be followed everywhere."

"And who is he?" another asked.

"Well," said the first, "he is a member of our quarters, I can tell you that, and he is always hunting after the lion's share of every single thing."

"What? Of everything?" said a third. "Of work as well?" "Oh, no!" said the first, "you have caught me there. I was wrong to say so much, I must confess. When it comes to work, I must admit, he is quite ready to go short: he will give up his own share of that, without a murmur, to any man whatever."

"For my part, gentlemen," said Cyrus, "I hold that all such idlers ought to be turned out of the army, that is, if we are ever to cultivate obedience and energy in our men. The bulk of our soldiers, I take it, are of the type to follow a given lead: they will seek after nobleness and valour if their leaders are valiant and noble, but after baseness if these are base. And we know

*vocabulary*

**ἀναίσχυντος** shameless; shameful  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**δαπάνη** cost, funds, extravagance  
**εἰκῇ** haphazardly; in vain  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**ζημιόω** fine, punish  
**ἡγεμονικός** showing leadership  
**ἡδονή** pleasure  
**κοινωνός** partner  
**μαλακός** soft

**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight  
**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly  
**παραυτίκα** immediately  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**πρανής** (ᾱ) prone; precipitous  
**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent  
**σφοδρός** vehement  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**φαιδύλος** trifling

καὶ πολλάκις τοῖνυν πλείονας ὁμογνώμονας λαμβάνουσιν οἱ φαῦλοι ἢ οἱ σπουδαῖοι. ἡ γὰρ πονηρία διὰ τῶν παραντίκα ἡδονῶν πορευομένη ταύτας ἔχει συμπειθούσας πολλοὺς αὐτῇ ὁμογνωμονεῖν· ἡ δ' ἀρετὴ πρὸς ὄρθιον ἄγουσα οὐ πάνυ δεινὴ ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ παραντίκα εἰκῇ συνεπισπᾶσθαι, ἄλλως τε καὶ ἦν ἄλλοι ὦσιν ἐπὶ τὸ πρανὲς καὶ τὸ μαλακὸν ἀντιπαρακαλοῦντες. καὶ τοῖνυν ὅταν μὲν τινες βλακεία καὶ ἀπονία μόνον κακοὶ ὦσι, τούτους ἐγὼ νομίζω ὥσπερ κηφήνας δαπάνη μόνον ζημιοῦν τοὺς κοινῶνας· οἱ δ' ἂν τῶν μὲν πόνων κακοὶ ὦσι κοινωνοί, πρὸς δὲ τὸ πλεονεκτεῖν σφοδροὶ καὶ ἀνάσχυντοι, οὗτοι καὶ ἡγεμονικοὶ εἰσι πρὸς τὰ πονηρά· πολλάκις γὰρ δύνανται τὴν πονηρίαν πλεονεκτοῦσαν ἀποδεικνύναι· ὥστε παντάπασιν ἐξαιρετέοι ἡμῖν οἱ τοιοῦτοί εἰσι. καὶ μὲντοι σκοπεῖτε ὅπως ἐκ τῶν πολιτῶν ἀντιπληρώσετε τὰς τάξεις, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἵπποι οἱ ἂν ἄριστοι ὦσιν, οὐχ οἱ ἂν πατριῶται, τούτους ζητεῖτε, οὕτω καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἐκ πάντων οἱ ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῶσι μάλιστα συνισχυρίειν τε

καὶ |often |well, then `είονας ὁμογνώμονας λαμβάνουσιν  
οἱ |trifling ἢ οἱ |quick, active; |ή γὰρ πονηρία διὰ τῶν  
|excellent  
|immediately |pleasure πορευομένη ταύτας ἔχει συμπειθούσας  
πολλοὺς αὐτῇ ὁμογνωμονεῖν· ἡ δ' |excellence, ρὸς |shrill; steep,  
|straight  
ἄγουσα οὐ |altogether, very ὅτι ἐν τῷ |immediately |haphazardly; in  
|vain  
συνεπισπᾶσθαι, ἄλλως τε καὶ ἣν ἄλλοι ὦσιν ἐπὶ τὸ |prone; precipitous  
καὶ τὸ |soft ἀντιπαρακαλοῦντες. καὶ |well, then ἄν  
μέν τινες βλακεία καὶ ἀπονία μόνον κακοὶ ὦσι, τούτους  
ἐγὼ νομίζω ὥσπερ κηφήνας |cost, funds, ex-fine, τοὺς  
|travagance |punish  
κοινῶνας· οἱ δ' ἂν τῶν μὲν |toil, suffering -ὶ ὦσι |partner ,  
πρὸς δὲ τὸ |be greedy, take|vehement καὶ |shameless;  
|advantage |shameful , οὔτοι  
καὶ |showing εἰσι πρὸς τὰ |oppressed; |often γὰρ  
|leadership |knaveish;  
|useless  
δύνανται τὴν πονηρίαν |be greedy, take ad-|show, point out; appoint;  
|vantage |(mid) declare  
ὥστε |altogether; yes,|pick, steal; de|οἱ τοιοῦτοί εἰσι. καὶ  
|certainly |cate; destroy  
μὴ μέντοι σκοπεῖτε ὅπως ἐκ τῶν |townsman, ὁ free- ληρώσετε  
|man, compatriot  
τὰς τάξεις, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἵπποι οἱ ἂν ἄριστοι ὦσιν, οὐχ οἱ  
ἂν πατριῶται, τούτους |seek , οὕτω καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἐκ  
πάντων οἱ ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῶσι μάλιστα συνισχυριεῖν τε

that only too often the worthless will find more friends than the good. Vice, passing lightly along her path of pleasure, wins the hearts of thousands with her gifts; but Virtue, toiling up the steep ascent, has little skill to snare the souls of men and draw them after her, when all the while their comrades are calling to them on the easy downward way. It is true there are degrees, and where the evil springs only from sloth and lethargy, I look on the creatures as mere drones, only injuring the hive by what they cost: but there are others, backward in toil and forward in greed, and these are the captains in villainy: for not seldom can they show that rascality has its advantages. Such as they must be removed, cut out from among us, root and branch. And I would not have you fill their places from our fellow-citizens alone, but, just as you choose your horses from the best stocks, wherever you find them, not limiting yourselves to the national breed, so you have all mankind before you, and you should choose those, and those

*vocabulary*

**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall  
**ἀναπίμπλημι** fulfill, endure ~plethora  
**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against  
 ~ischemia  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀτιμάζω** (t) insult, dishonor  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack  
**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion  
**εὖθυμος** (v) well-disposed ~fume  
**καταμένω** stay; not change

**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**μαρτυρέω** testify, bear witness  
**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house  
 slave  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὀνομαστί** by name  
**σκόμμα** -τος (n, 3) joke  
**σύνδειπνον** common meal or banquet  
**συνδοκέω** seem good also  
**σφάλλω** overthrow, balk, stagger  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ὑμᾶς καὶ συγκοσμήσειν, τούτους λαμβάνετε. μαρτυρεῖ  
 δέ μοι καὶ τόδε πρὸς τὸ ἀγαθόν· οὔτε γὰρ ἄρμα  
 δήπου ταχὺ γένοιτ' ἂν βραδέων ἵππων ἐνόντων οὔτε  
 δίκαιον ἀδίκων συνεζευγμένων, οὐδὲ οἶκος δύναιτ' ἂν  
 εὖ οἰκεῖσθαι πονηροῖς οἰκέταις χρώμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 ἐνδεόμενος οἰκετῶν ἦττον σφάλλεται ἢ ὑπὸ ἀδίκων  
 παραττόμενος. εὖ δ' ἴστε, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, φίλοι, ὅτι  
 οὐδὲ τοῦτο μόνον ὠφελήσουσιν οἱ κακοὶ ἀφαιρεθέντες  
 ὅτι κακοὶ ἀπέσσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν καταμενόντων οἱ  
 μὲν ἀνεπίμπλαντο ἤδη κακίας, ἀποκαθαροῦνται πάλιν  
 ταύτης, οἱ δὲ ἀγαθοὶ τοὺς κακοὺς ἰδόντες ἀτμασθέντας  
 πολὺν εὐθυμότερον τῆς ἀρετῆς ἀνθέξονται. ὁ μὲν οὕτως  
 εἶπε· τοῖς δὲ φίλοις πᾶσι συνέδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ οὕτως  
 ἐποιοῦν.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πάλιν αὐτοῖς σκώμματος ἤρχετο ὁ  
 Κῦρος. κατανοήσας γάρ τινα τῶν λοχαγῶν σύνδειπνον  
 καὶ παρακλίτην πεποιημένον ἄνδρα ὑπέρδασύν τε καὶ  
 ὑπέραισχρον, ἀνακαλέσας τὸν λοχαγὸν ὀνομαστί εἶπεν



ὕμᾱς καὶ συγκοσμήσειν, τούτους λαμβάνετε. |testify, bear  
|witness

δέ μοι καὶ τόδε πρὸς τὸ ἀγαθόν· οὔτε γὰρ |chariot

|perhaps; is χὺ γένοιτ' ἂν βραδέων ἵππων |be in οὔτε  
|it not so?

δίκαιον |unfair; ob- νεξευγμένων, οὐδὲ οἶκος δύναιτ' ἂν  
|stinate, bad

εὖ |inhabit |oppressed; |household; ῥώμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
|knavish; |house slave

|tie to |useless; ἵπτον |overthrow, balk, ὑπὸ |unfair; ob-  
|household; |house slave |stinate, bad

|mess things up . εὖ δ' ἴστε, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, φίλοι, ὅτι

οὐδὲ τοῦτο μόνον |help, be useful οἱ κακοὶ |take away

ὅτι κακοὶ |be absent, go ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν |stay; not change οἷ  
|away, return

μὲν |fulfill, endure ἥδη κακίας, ἀποκαθαροῦνται πάλιν

ταύτης, οἱ δὲ ἀγαθοὶ τοὺς κακοὺς ἰδόντες |dishonor

πολὺ |well-disposed τῆς |excel- |hold up as pro- μὲν οὕτως  
|lence |tection against

εἶπε· τοῖς δὲ φίλοις πᾶσι |seem good also α, καὶ οὕτως

ἐποιοῦν.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πάλιν αὐτοῖς |joke ἤρχετο ὁ

Κῦρος. |notice, realize, γάρ τινα τῶν λοχαγῶν σύνδειπνον  
|learn

καὶ παρακλίτην πεποιημένον ἄνδρα ὑπέρδασύν τε καὶ

ὑπέραισχρον, |call, summon, τὸν |captain |by name εἶπεν  
|recall

only, who will increase your power and add to your honour. Let me clinch my argument by examples: no chariot can travel fast if the horses in the team are slow, or run straight if they will not be ruled; no house can stand firm if the household is evil: better empty walls than traitors who will bring it to the ground.

"And be sure, my friends," he added, "the removal of the bad means a benefit beyond the sheer relief that they are taken away and will trouble us no more: those who are left and were ripe for contagion are purified, and those who were worthy will cleave to virtue all the closer when they see the dishonour that falls on wickedness."

So Cyrus spoke, and his words won the praise of all his friends, and they set themselves to do as he advised.

But after that Cyrus began to jest again. His eye fell on a certain captain who had chosen for his comrade at the feast a great hairy lad, a veritable monster of ugliness, and Cyrus called to the captain by name: "How now, Sambulas? Have

*vocabulary***αείρω** raise, win ~aorta**ἄημι** blow**αἶσχος** -εος (n, 3) insult; disgrace**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀναρτάω** attach to, make dependent upon**ἀνιδρωτί** (ι) without sweat ~exude**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**ἀσχολία** business, being busy**βάδην** step by step ~basis**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**γούν** at least then**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

**μειράκιον** youngster**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**περιάγω** lead around**ποῖος** what kind**πότε** when?**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**προφασίζομαι** make an excuse**συγγενεύς** inborn, kin to**συγγενής** inborn, kin to**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**σύσκηνος** roommate**τρέχω** run, spin**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay

~ballistic

ὦδε· ὦ Σαμβαύλα, ἔφη, ἀλλ' ἦ καὶ σὺ κατὰ τὸν  
 Ἑλληνικὸν τρόπον, ὅτι καλὸν ἐστὶ, περιάγει τοῦτο τὸ  
 μειράκιον τὸ παρακατακείμενόν σοι; Νῆ τὸν Δί', ἔφη ὁ  
 Σαμβαύλας, ἡδομαι γοῦν καὶ ἐγὼ συνών τε καὶ θεώμενος  
 τοῦτον. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ σύσκηνοι προσέβλεψαν· ὥς  
 δὲ εἶδον τὸ πρόσωπον τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ὑπερβάλλον αἴσχει,  
 ἐγέλασαν πάντες. καί τις εἶπε· Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ  
 Σαμβαύλα, ποίῳ ποτέ σε ἔργῳ ἀνὴρ οὗτος ἀνήρτηται; καὶ  
 ὃς εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ ὑμῖν νῆ τὸν Δία, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐρῶ. ὅποσάκις  
 γὰρ αὐτὸν ἐκάλεσα εἴτε νυκτὸς εἴτε ἡμέρας, οὐπώποτε  
 μοι οὔτ' ἀσχολίαν προυφασίσσατο οὔτε βάδην ὑπήκουσεν,  
 ἀλλ' αἰεὶ τρέχων· ὅποσάκις τε αὐτῷ πρᾶξαί τι προσέταξα,  
 οὐδὲν ἀνιδρωτί ποτε αὐτὸν εἶδον ποιῶντα. πεποίηκε δὲ  
 καὶ τοὺς δεκαδέας πάντας τοιούτους, οὐ λόγῳ ἀλλ' ἔργῳ  
 ἀποδεικνὺς οἷους δεῖ εἶναι. καί τις εἶπε· Κᾶπειτα τοιοῦτον  
 ὄντα οὐ φιλεῖς αὐτὸν ὥσπερ τοὺς συγγενεῖς; καὶ ὁ αἰσχυρὸς  
 ἐκείνος πρὸς τοῦτο ἔφη· Μὰ Δία· οὐ γὰρ φιλόπονός ἐστιν·  
 ἐπεὶ ἥρκει ἂν αὐτῷ, εἰ ἐμὲ ἤθελε φιλεῖν, τοῦτο ἀντὶ πάντων

|thus ὦ Σαμβαύλα, ἔφη, ἀλλ' ἡ καὶ σὺ κατὰ τὸν  
 Ἑλληνικὸν τρόπον, ὅτι καλὸν ἐστὶ, |lead around αὐτὸ τὸ  
 |youngster τὸ παρακατακείμενόν σοι; Νῆ τὸν Δί, ἔφη ὁ  
 Σαμβαύλας, |ἡδομαι?: |at least then, ὡς |be with; have sex ὄμμενος  
 τοῦτον. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ |roommate προσέβλεψαν· ὡς  
 |ἡδομαι?:  
 δὲ εἶδον τὸ |be |cause to go be- |insult; ,  
 |pleased, |yond; delay |disgrace  
 |enjoy  
 |laugh, πάντες. καὶ τις εἶπε· Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ  
 |smile  
 Σαμβαύλα, |what kind ἵσε ἔργῳ ἀνὴρ οὗτος |attach to, make  
 |dependent upon  
 ὅς εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ ὑμῖν νῆ τὸν Δία, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐρῶ. ὅποσάκις  
 γὰρ αὐτὸν ἐκάλεσα |if, whenever; |if, whenever; , οὐπόποτε  
 |either/or |either/or  
 μοι οὐτ' |business, |make an excuse οὐτε |step by |listen, reply ,  
 |being busy |step  
 ἀλλ' αἰεὶ |run, spin ὅποσάκις τε αὐτῷ πράξαί τι |post at, attach  
 |to, command  
 οὐδὲν ἀνιδρωτί ποτε αὐτὸν εἶδον ποιῶντα. πεποίηκε δὲ  
 καὶ τοὺς δεκαδέας πάντας τοιούτους, οὐ λόγῳ ἀλλ' ἔργῳ  
 |show, point out; ap- |εἶ εἶναι. καὶ τις εἶπε· Κᾶπειτα τοιούτων  
 |point; (mid) declare  
 ὄντα οὐ |love αὐτὸν ὥσπερ τοὺς συγγενεῖς; καὶ ὁ |shameful  
 ἐκεῖνος πρὸς τοῦτο ἔφη· Μὰ Δία· οὐ γὰρ φιλόπονός ἐστιν·  
 ἐπεὶ ἥρκει ἂν αὐτῷ, εἰ ἐμὲ ἤθελε |love , τοῦτο ἀντὶ πάντων

you adopted the Hellenic fashion too? And will you roam the world together, you and the lad who sits beside you, because there is none so fair as he?" "By heaven," answered Sambulas, "you are not far wrong. It is bliss to me to feast my eyes upon him." At that all the guests turned and looked on the young man's face, but when they saw how ugly it was, they could not help laughing outright. "Heavens, Sambulas, tell us the valiant deed that knit your souls together! How has he drawn you to himself?" "Listen then," he answered, "and I will tell you the whole truth. Every time I call him, morning, noon, or night, he comes to me; never yet has he excused himself, never been too busy to attend; and he comes at a run, he does not walk. Whatever I have bidden him do, he has always done it, and at the top of his speed. He has made all the petty captains under him the very models of industry; he shows them, not by word but deed, what they ought to be." "And so," said another, "for all these virtues you give him, I take it, the kiss of kinship?" But the ugly lad broke out: "Not he! He has no great love for work. And to kiss me, if it came to that, would mean more effort than

*vocabulary*

**ἄγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place  
 ~agony  
**ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete  
**ἀργέω** not work; (pass) be fruitless,  
 left undone  
**γέλοιος** laughable; joking  
**γυμνάσιον** exercise; school  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**κοινωνός** partner  
**κοίτη** rest, resting place, sleepiness

**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike  
**προθυμέομαι** (ῥ) be eager  
**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later

τῶν γυμνασίων.

### 2.3

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ καὶ γελοῖα καὶ σπουδαῖα καὶ ἐλέγετο καὶ ἐπράττετο ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ. τέλος δὲ τὰς τρίτας σπονδὰς ποιήσαντες καὶ εὐξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀγαθὰ τὴν σκηνὴν εἰς κοίτην διέλκουν. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κῦρος συνέλεξε πάντας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὁ μὲν ἀγὼν ἐγγὺς ἡμῖν· προσέρχονται γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι. τὰ δ' ἄθλα τῆς νίκης, ἣν μὲν ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν τοῦτο γὰρ αἰεὶ καὶ λέγειν καὶ ποιεῖν δεῖ, δῆλον ὅτι οἱ τε πολέμοι ἡμέτεροι καὶ τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἀγαθὰ πάντα· ἣν δὲ ἡμεῖς αὖ νικώμεθα— καὶ οὕτω τὰ τῶν νικωμένων πάντα τοῖς νικῶσιν αἰεὶ ἄθλα πρόκειται. οὕτω δὴ, ἔφη, δεῖ ὑμᾶς γινγνώσκειν ὥς ὅταν μὲν ἄνθρωποι κοινωνοὶ πολέμου γενόμενοι ἐν ἑαυτοῖς ἕκαστοι ἔχωσιν, ὥς, εἰ μὴ αὐτός τις προθυμήσεται, οὐδὲν ἐσόμενον τῶν δεόντων, ταχὺ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ διαπράττονται· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἀργεῖται



τῶν |exercise;  
|school

## 2.3

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ καὶ |laughable; ἰ |quick, active; ἡ ἐλέγετο καὶ  
|joking |excellent

ἐπράττετο ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ. τέλος δὲ τὰς |third |libation,  
|treaty

ποιήσαντες καὶ |declare; pray ὡς θεοῖς τὰγαθὰ τὴν |tent;  
|stage

εἰς |rest, |break up; re- ἡ δ' |the next; later Ὑῖρος |collect,  
|resting |lax, weaken |assemble

πάντας τοὺς |place, |sleepi- |soldier, καὶ ἔλεξε |such  
|ness |mercenary

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὁ μὲν |gatheri- |place ἡμῖν· |come forward, sur-  
|render, come in

οἱ πολέμιοι. τὰ δ' |prize τῆς |victory ἣν μὲν ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν

τοῦτο γὰρ αἰὲ καὶ λέγειν καὶ ποιεῖν δεῖ, |visible, " . . . ἡ τε  
|conspicuous

πολέμιοι |our, my καὶ τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἀγαθὰ πάντα·

ἣν δὲ ἡμεῖς αὖ νικώμεθα— καὶ οὕτω τὰ τῶν νικωμένων

πάντα τοῖς νικῶσιν αἰὲ |prize |be placed by; ὕτω δὴ, ἔφη, δεῖ  
|be devoted to

ὕμᾱς γινώσκειν ὡς |whenever ἄνθρωποι |partner πολέμου

γενόμενοι ἐν ἑαυτοῖς ἕκαστοι ἔχωσιν, ὡς, εἰ μὴ αὐτός τις

|be eager , οὐδὲν ἐσόμενον τῶν δεόντων, ταχὺ πολλὰ

καὶ καλὰ |travel over, ac- οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτοῖς |not work; (pass) be fruitless,  
|complete |left undone

all his exercises.”

### 2.3

So the hours passed in the general’s tent, from grave to gay, until at last the third libation was poured out, and the company bent in prayer to the gods—”Grant us all that is good”—and so broke up, and went away to sleep.

But the next day Cyrus assembled the soldiers in full conclave, and spoke to them: “My men,” he said, “my friends, the day of struggle is at hand, and the enemy are near. The prizes of victory, if victory is to be ours—and we must believe it will be ours, we must make it ours—the prizes of victory will be nothing short of the enemy himself and all that he possesses. And if the victory should be his, then, in like manner, all the goods of the vanquished must lie at the victor’s feet. Therefore I would have you take this to your hearts: wherever those who have joined together for war remember that unless each and every one of them play his part with zeal nothing good can follow; there we may look

*vocabulary***ἀποπειράομαι** try, try out**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀσκέω** work on**διανοέω** have in mind**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit**ἰσχυρός** (ὕ) strong, forceful, violent**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build

~practice

**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

**μαλακίζομαι** weaken, feminize**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὀμότιμος** (ἱ) equally honored**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πότερος** which, whichever of two**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command

τῶν πράττεσθαι δεομένων· ὅταν δ' ἕκαστος διανοηθῇ  
 ὡς ἄλλος ἔσται ὁ πράττων καὶ μαχόμενος, κἂν αὐτὸς  
 μαλακίζεται, τούτοις, ἔφη, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι πᾶσιν ἅμα πάντα  
 ἥκει τὰ χαλεπὰ φερόμενα. καὶ ὁ θεὸς οὕτω πως ἐποίησε·  
 τοῖς μὴ θέλουσιν ἑαυτοῖς προστάττειν ἐκπονεῖν τὰγαθὰ  
 ἄλλους αὐτοῖς ἐπιτακτῆρας δίδωσι. νῦν οὖν τις, ἔφη,  
 λεγέτω ἐνθάδε ἀναστὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου ποτέρως ἂν  
 τὴν ἀρετὴν μᾶλλον οἶεται ἀσκεῖσθαι παρ' ἡμῖν, εἰ μέλλοι  
 ὁ πλείστα καὶ πονεῖν καὶ κινδυνεύειν ἐθέλων πλείστης καὶ  
 τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι, ἢ ἂν εἰδῶμεν ὅτι οὐδὲν διαφέρει κακὸν  
 εἶναι· ὁμοίως γὰρ πάντες τῶν ἴσων τευξόμεθα. ἐνταῦθα  
 δὴ ἀναστὰς Χρυσάντας, εἰς τῶν ὁμοτίμων, ἀνὴρ οὔτε  
 μέγας οὔτε ἰσχυρὸς ἰδεῖν, φρονήσῃ δὲ διαφέρων, ἔλεξεν·  
 Ἄλλ' οἶμαι μέν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδὲ διανοοῦμένόν σε ὡς  
 δεῖ ἴσον ἔχειν τοὺς κακοὺς τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἐμβαλεῖν τοῦτον  
 τὸν λόγον, ἀλλ' ἀποπειρώμενον εἴ τις ἄρα ἔσται ἀνὴρ  
 ὅστις ἐθελήσῃ ἐπιδείξαι ἑαυτὸν ὡς διανοεῖται μηδὲν καλὸν  
 κἀγαθὸν ποιῶν, ἃ ἂν ἄλλοι τῇ ἀρετῇ καταπράξωσι,

τῶν πράττεσθαι δεομένων· |whenever ἕκαστος διανοηθῇ  
 ὡς ἄλλος ἔσται ὁ πράττων καὶ μαχόμενος, κὰν αὐτὸς  
 |weaken, |feminize , τούτοις, ἔφη, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι πᾶσιν ἅμα πάντα  
 ἥκει τὰ |hard to bear, ὀμένα. καὶ ὁ θεὸς οὕτω |somehow ᾔησε·  
 τοῖς μὴ θέλουσιν ἑαυτοῖς |post at, attach ἔκπονεῖν τὰγαθὰ  
 |to, command ἄλλους αὐτοῖς ἐπιτακτῆρας δίδωσι. νῦν οὖν τις, ἔφη,  
 λεγέτω |here, |stand up; arouse αὐτοῦ τούτου |which, ἂν  
 |hither |whichever  
 τὴν |excellence ἄλλον οἶεται |work on παρ' ἡμῖν, εἰ μέλλοι  
 ὁ πλείστα καὶ |work καὶ |encounter danger; (+inf) ἴσσης καὶ  
 |there is a danger that  
 |honor, |value τεύξεσθαι, ἣ ἂν εἰδῶμεν ὅτι οὐδὲν |carry on; |differ; excel  
 εἶναι· ὁμοίως γὰρ πάντες τῶν |equal τευξόμεθα. |there, here  
 δὴ |stand up; arouse ἴντας, εἰς τῶν |equally , ἀνὴρ οὐτε  
 |honored  
 μέγας οὐτε |strong, force-ful, violent φρονήσει δὲ |carry on; |differ; excel  
 Ἄλλ' οἶμαι μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδὲ διανοούμενόν σε ὡς  
 δεῖ |equal ἔχειν τοὺς κακοὺς τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς |throw in; inspire  
 τὸν λόγον, ἀλλ' |try, try out εἴ τις ἄρα ἔσται ἀνὴρ  
 ὅστις ἐβελήσει |display, |exhibit ἑαυτὸν ὡς διανοεῖται μηδὲν καλὸν  
 κάγαθὸν ποιῶν, ἃ ἂν ἄλλοι τῇ |excel- |accomplish,  
 |lence |build

for glorious success. For there nothing that ought to be done will be left undone. But if each man thinks 'My neighbour will toil and fight, even though my own heart should fail and my own arm fall slack,' then, believe me, disaster is at the door for each and all alike, and no man shall escape. Such is the ordinance of God: those who will not work out their own salvation he gives into the hands of other men to bear rule over them. And now I call on any man here," he added, "to stand up and say whether he believes that virtue will best be nourished among us if he who bears the greatest toil and takes the heaviest risk shall receive the highest honours. Or whether we should hold that cowardice makes no difference in the end, seeing that we all must share alike?"

Thereupon Chrysantas of the Peers rose up. He was a man of understanding, but his bodily presence was weak. And now he spoke thus:

"I Do not imagine, Cyrus, that you put this question with any belief that cowards ought really to receive the same share as the brave. No, you wished to make trial of us and see whether any man would dare to claim an equal part in all that his fellows win by their nobleness, though he never struck a single valiant

*vocabulary***ἀγεννής** low-born; sordid**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume**ἀντιλαμβάνω** grasp; get instead, in turn**ἄρεστός** satisfactory, pleasing**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀσκέω** work on**δημότης** -ου (m, 1) commoner**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand ~station**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station**ἰσώω** (ι) liken to**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**μεθίστημι** change, substitute; withdraw; change sides; (mid) send away ~station**μέτεμι** be among, go, follow ~ion**μετέχω** partake of**οἶκοθεν** from home, from one's own resources ~economics**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**Πέρσης** Persian**σαφής** clear, understandable**συνήθης** habitual, intimate**συνουσία** society, sex**τοιόσδε** such**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy

τούτων ἰσομοιρεῖν. ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, οὔτε ποσὶν εἰμι ταχὺς οὔτε χερσὶν ἰσχυρός, γιγνώσκω τε ὅτι ἐξ ὧν ἂν ἐγὼ τῷ ἐμῷ σώματι ποιήσω, οὐ κριθείην οὔτε ἂν πρῶτος οὔτε ἂν δεύτερος, οἶμαι δ' οὐδ' ἂν χιλιοστός, ἴσως δ' οὐδ' ἂν μυριοστός· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖνο, ἔφη, σαφῶς ἐπίσταμαι ὅτι εἰ μὲν οἱ δυνατοὶ ἐρρωμένως ἀντιλήψονται τῶν πραγμάτων, ἀγαθοῦ τινός μοι μετέσται τοσοῦτον μέρος ὅσον ἂν δίκαιον ᾗ· εἰ δ' οἱ μὲν κακοὶ μηδὲν ποιήσουσιν, οἱ δ' ἀγαθοὶ καὶ δυνατοὶ ἀθύμως ἔξουσι, δέδοικα, ἔφη, μὴ ἄλλου τινὸς μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ μεθέξω πλέον μέρος ἢ ἐγὼ βούλομαι. Χρυσάντας μὲν δὴ οὕτως εἶπεν. ἀνέστη δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ Φεραύλας Πέρσης τῶν δημοτῶν, Κύρω πως ἔτι οἴκοθεν συνήθης καὶ ἀρεστὸς ἀνὴρ, καὶ τὸ σῶμα καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν οὐκ ἀγεννεῖ ἀνδρὶ εἰκώς, καὶ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Κύρε καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες Πέρσαι, ἡγοῦμαι μὲν ἡμᾶς πάντας ἐκ τοῦ ἴσου νῦν ὀρμᾶσθαι εἰς τὸ ἀγωνίζεσθαι περὶ ἀρετῆς· ὁρῶ γὰρ ὁμοία μὲν τροφῇ πάντας ἡμᾶς τὸ σῶμα ἀσκούντας, ὁμοίας δὲ συνουσίας



τούτων ἰσομοιρεῖν. ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, οὔτε ποσὶν εἰμι ταχὺς

οὔτε χερσὶν |strong, force-, νόσκω τε ὅτι ἐξ ὧν ἂν ἐγὼ τῷ  
ful, violent

ἐμῷ |body, ποιήσω, οὐ |separate οὔτε ἂν πρῶτος οὔτε  
|person,  
|thing  
ἂν |second , οἶμαι δ' οὐδ' ἂν χιλιστός, ἴσως δ' οὐδ' ἂν

μυριοστός· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖνο, ἔφη, |clear, under- ταμαι ὅτι εἰ  
standable

μὲν οἱ |powerful, |vigorous, |grasp; get instead, |in|deed, fact, thing, affair; dif-  
|possible |powerful |turn |ficulty

ἀγαθοῦ τινός μοι μετέσται |so much μέρος ὅσον ἂν δίκαιον

ἦ· εἰ δ' οἱ μὲν κακοὶ μηδὲν ποιήσουσιν, οἱ δ' ἀγαθοὶ καὶ

|powerful, |having low morale |to fear , ἔφη, μὴ ἄλλου τινὸς  
|possible

μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ |partake of ἴέον μέρος ἢ ἐγὼ βούλομαι.

Χρυσάντας μὲν δὴ οὕτως εἶπεν. ἀνέστη δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ

Φεραύλας Πέρσης τῶν |com- , Κύρω |somehow |from home  
moner

|habitual, καὶ |satisfactory, ἤρ, καὶ τὸ |body, καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν  
|intimate |pleasing |person,

οὐκ |low-born; sordid, οὐκ ὀικῶς, καὶ ἔλεξε |thing  
such

Ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες Πέρσαι,

ἡγοῦμαι μὲν ἡμᾶς πάντας ἐκ τοῦ ἴσου νῦν |spur, rush at 's

τὸ |contend, exert περὶ |excellence ἱρῷ γὰρ |like μὲν |food,  
|oneself |upkeep

πάντας ἡμᾶς τὸ |body, |work on , |like δὲ συνουσίας  
|person,  
|thing

stroke himself. I myself," he continued, "am neither fleet of foot nor stout of limb, and for aught I can do with my body, I perceive that on the day of trial neither the first place nor the second can be mine, no, nor yet the hundredth, nor even, it may be, the thousandth. But this I know right well, that if our mighty men put forth all their strength, I too shall receive such portion of our blessings as I may deserve. But if the cowards sit at ease and the good and brave are out of heart, then I fear that I shall get a portion, a larger than I care to think, of something that is no blessing but a curse."

And so spoke Chrysantas, and then Pheraulas stood up. He was a man of the people, but well known to Cyrus in the old days at home and well-beloved by him: no mean figure to look at, and in soul like a man of noble birth. Now he spoke as follows:

"Cyrus, friends, and Persians, I hold to the belief that on this day we all start equal in that race where valour is the goal. I speak of what I see: we are trained on the same fare; we are

*vocabulary***ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

**ἀπροφάσιτος** unhesitating**δείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out**διδάσκαλος** teacher**ἐμποδίζω** fetter, hinder**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

**ζῶον** being, animal; picture**κάπρος** boar**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia

**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κοινόω** make common; cooperate**κύω** be pregnant**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**ὀδούς** -ντος (m) tooth**ὀπλή** hoof**παιδίον** young child; slave**παίω** hit**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum**προβάλλω** throw before; propose;

(mp) pretend, abandon, nominate

~ballistic

**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid:

have before one

**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**προκρίνω** (ι) choose first**προσέχω** belong to, it beseems**πώποτε** never**φοιτάω** go back and forth**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

πάντας ἀξιουμένους, ταῦτὰ δὲ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν πρόκειται. τό τε  
 γὰρ τοῖς ἄρχουσι πείθεσθαι πᾶσιν ἐν κοινῷ κείται, καὶ ὃς  
 ἂν φανῇ τοῦτο ἀπροφασίστως ποιῶν, τοῦτον ὁρῶ παρὰ  
 Κύρου τιμῆς τυγχάνοντα· τό τε πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 ἄλκιμον εἶναι οὐ τῷ μὲν προσῆκον τῷ δ' οὐ, ἀλλὰ πᾶσι  
 καὶ τοῦτο προκέκριται κάλλιστον εἶναι. νῦν δ', ἔφη, ἡμῖν  
 καὶ δείκνυνται μάχη, ἣν ἐγὼ ὁρῶ πάντας ἀνθρώπους φύσει  
 ἐπισταμένους, ὥσπερ γε καὶ τᾶλλα ζῶα ἐπίστανταί τινα  
 μάχην ἕκαστα οὐδὲ παρ' ἑνὸς ἄλλου μαθόντα ἢ παρὰ  
 τῆς φύσεως, οἷον ὁ βοῦς κέρατι παίειν, ὁ ἵππος ὀπλῇ,  
 ὁ κύων στόματι, ὁ κάπρος ὀδόντι. καὶ φυλάττεσθαι γ',  
 ἔφη, ἅπαντα ταῦτα ἐπίστανται ἀφ' ὧν μάλιστα δεῖ, καὶ  
 ταῦτα εἰς οὐδενὸς διδασκάλου πώποτε φοιτήσαντα. καὶ  
 ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἐκ παιδίου εὐθὺς προβάλλεσθαι ἠπιστάμην πρὸ  
 τούτων ὅ τι ὥμην πληγῇσεσθαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἄλλο μηδὲν  
 ἔχοιμι, τὼ χεῖρε προέχων ἐνεπόδιζον ὅ τι ἐδυνάμην τὸν  
 παίοντα· καὶ τοῦτο ἐποίουν οὐ διδασκόμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 ἐπ' αὐτῷ τούτῳ παιόμενος, εἰ προβαλοίμην. μάχαιράν γε  
 μὴν

πάντας |consider wor- , ταῦτά δὲ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν |be placed by; |ό τε  
 |thy, fitting |be devoted to  
 γὰρ τοῖς ἄρχουσι πείθεσθαι πᾶσιν ἐν κοινῷ κείται, καὶ ὃς  
 ἂν φανῇ τοῦτο |unhesitating ποιῶν, τοῦτον ὁρῶ παρὰ  
 Κύρου τιμῆς τυγχάνοντα· τό τε πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |brave; εἶναι οὐ τῷ μὲν |belong to, it τῷ δ' οὐ, ἀλλὰ πᾶσι  
 |sturdily |beseems  
 |made  
 καὶ τοῦτο |choose first κάλλιστον εἶναι. νῦν δ', ἔφη, ἡμῖν  
 καὶ |show μάχῃ, ἣν ἐγὼ ὁρῶ πάντας ἀνθρώπους φύσει  
 ἐπισταμένους, ὥσπερ γε καὶ τᾶλλα ζῶα ἐπίστανταί τινα  
 μάχην ἕκαστα οὐδὲ παρ' ἐνὸς ἄλλου |learn ἢ παρὰ  
 τῆς |nature (of a thing) , βουῶς |horn; |hit , ὁ ἵππος |hoof ,  
 |military  
 ὁ κύων στόματι, ὁ |boar |unit  
 |tooth . καὶ φυλάττεσθαι γ',  
 ἔφη, ἅπαντα ταῦτα ἐπίστανται ἀφ' ὧν μάλιστα δεῖ, καὶ  
 ταῦτα εἰς οὐδενὸς |teacher |never |go back and forth ...  
 ἐγὼ, ἔφη, ἐκ παιδίου εὐθὺς |throw before;|know πρὸ  
 |propose; (mp)  
 τούτων ὅ τι ᾤμην |hit |pretend, abandon, μὴ ἄλλο μηδὲν  
 |nominate εἰ δὲ  
 ἔχοιμι, τὼ χεῖρε |be ahead,|fetter, ὅ τι ἐδυνάμην τὸν  
 |have before|hinder  
 |hit καὶ τοῦτο ἐποιοῦν οὐ διδασκόμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 ἐπ' αὐτῷ τούτῳ |hit , εἰ |throw before;|knife γε  
 |propose; (mp)  
 μὴν |pretend, aban-  
 |don, nominate

held worthy of the same comradeship; we contend for the same rewards. All of us alike are told to obey our leaders, and he who obeys most frankly never fails to meet with honour at the hands of Cyrus. Valour is no longer the privilege of one class alone: it has become the fairest prize that can fall to the lot of any man. And to-day a battle is before us where no man need teach us how to fight: we have the trick of it by nature, as a bull knows how to use his horns, or a horse his hoofs, or a dog his teeth, or a wild boar his tusks. The animals know well enough," he added, "when and where to guard themselves: they need no master to tell them that. I myself, when I was a little lad, I knew by instinct how to shield myself from the blow I saw descending: if I had nothing else, I had my two fists, and used them with all my force against my foe: no one taught me how to do it, on the contrary they beat me if they saw me clench my fists. And a knife, I remember, I never

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἄθλον** ἀέθλου prize ~athlete**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἄτιμος** (ι) without honor**βαδίζω** walk, proceed**βίος** life ~biology**γούν** at least then**ἔντιμος** (ι) honored**ἐπίπνοος** of/with pain, toil ~osteopenia**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics**εὖθυμος** (ὅ) well-disposed ~fume**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ισάζω** (ι) equalize, compare to**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κρίνον** lily**κωλύω** (ὅ) hinder, prevent**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**ναί** yea**ὀμότιμος** (ι) equally honored**ὅπου** where**παιδίον** young child; slave**παίω** hit**παραβάλλω** put at risk ~ballistic**προθυμία** (ὅ) zeal, alacrity ~fume**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance

~technology

**τρέχω** run, spin**φθόνος** malice, envy**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

εὐθύς παιδίον ὦν ἥρπαζον ὅπου ἴδοιμι, οὐδὲ παρ' ἐνὸς οὐδὲ  
 τοῦτο μαθὼν ὅπως δεῖ λαμβάνειν ἢ παρὰ τῆς φύσεως,  
 ὡς ἐγὼ φημι. ἐποιοῦν γοῦν καὶ τοῦτο κωλυόμενος, οὐ  
 διδασκόμενος· ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλα ἔστιν ἃ εἰργόμενος καὶ  
 ὑπὸ μητρὸς καὶ ὑπὸ πατρὸς ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως πράττειν  
 ἠναγκαζόμεν. καὶ ναὶ μὰ Δία ἔπαιόν γε τῇ μαχαίρᾳ  
 πᾶν ὅ τι δυναίμην λανθάνειν. οὐ γὰρ μόνον φύσει ἦν,  
 ὥσπερ τὸ βαδίζειν καὶ τρέχειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡδὺ πρὸς τῷ  
 πεφυκέναι τοῦτο ἐδόκει μοι εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν, ἔφη,  
 αὕτη ἡ μάχη καταλείπεται, ἐν ἣ προθυμίας μᾶλλον ἢ  
 τέχνης ἔργον ἐστί, πῶς ἡμῖν οὐχ ἡδέως πρὸς τούσδε  
 τοὺς ὁμοτίμους ἀγωνιστέον; ὅπου γε τὰ μὲν ἄθλα τῆς  
 ἀρετῆς ἴσα πρόκειται, παραβαλλόμενοι δὲ οὐκ ἴσα εἰς  
 τὸν κίνδυνον ἵμεν, ἀλλ' οὗτοι μὲν ἔντιμον, ὅσπερ μόνος  
 ἡδιστος, βίον, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐπίπονον μὲν, ἄτιμον δέ, ὅσπερ  
 οἶμαι χαλεπώτατος. μάλιστα δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτό με  
 εὐθύμως εἰς τὸν ἀγῶνα τὸν πρὸς τούσδε παρορμᾷ ὅτι  
 Κῦρος ὁ κρίνων ἔσται, ὃς οὐ φθόνῳ κρίνει, ἀλλὰ σὺν



εὐθύς |young child; slave| ὦν |carry off;|where ᾗδοιμι, οὐδὲ παρ' ἐνὸς οὐδὲ  
 τοῦτο |slave| μάθων ὅπως δεῖ λαμβάνειν ἢ παρὰ τῆς |nature (of a thing)|  
 ὡς ἐγὼ φημι. ἐποιοῦν |at least then| ἡτο |hinder, prevent|, οὐ  
 διδασκόμενος· ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλα ἔστιν ᾧ |bound, fend off; do|  
 ὑπὸ μητρὸς καὶ ὑπὸ πατρὸς ὑπὸ τῆς |nature (of a thing)|  
 |force, compel|. καὶ ναὶ μὰ Δία |hit| γε τῇ |knife|  
 πᾶν ὅ τι δυναίμην λανθάνειν. οὐ γὰρ μόνον φύσει ἦν,  
 ὥσπερ τὸ |walk, proceed| καὶ |run, spin| ἀλλὰ καὶ |sweet| πρὸς τῷ  
 πεφυκέναι τοῦτο ἐδόκει μοι εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν, ἔφη,  
 αὕτη ἡ μάχη καταλείπεται, ἐν ᾗ προθυμίας μᾶλλον ἢ  
 |craft| ἔργον ἐστί, πῶς ἡμῖν οὐχ |sweet| πρὸς τούσδε  
 τοὺς |equally honored| |contend, exert|where γε τὰ μὲν |prize| τῆς  
 ἀρετῆς ἴσα |be placed by;|put at risk| δὲ οὐκ ἴσα εἰς  
 |be devoted to|  
 τὸν κίνδυνον ἵμεν, ἀλλ' οὗτοι μὲν |honored|, ὥσπερ μόνος  
 |sweet|, βίον, ἡμεῖς δὲ |of/with pain, toil| |without honor| δέ, ὥσπερ  
 οἶμαι χαλεπώτατος. μάλιστα δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτό με  
 |well-disposed| τὸν ἀγῶνα τὸν πρὸς τούσδε παρορμᾷ ὅτι  
 Κῦρος ὁ κρίνων ἔσται, ὃς οὐ |malice, envy| εἰ, ἀλλὰ σὺν

could resist: I clutched the thing whenever I caught sight of it: not a soul showed me how to hold it, only nature herself, I do aver. I did it, not because I was taught to do it, but in spite of being forbidden, like many another thing to which nature drove me, in spite of my father and mother both. Yes, and I was never tired of hacking and hewing with my knife whenever I got the chance: it did not seem merely natural, like walking or running, it was positive joy. Well, to-day we are to fight in this same simple fashion: energy, rather than skill, is called for, and glorious it will be to match ourselves against our friends, the Peers of Persia. And let us remember that the same prizes are offered to us all, but the stakes differ: our friends give up a life of honour, the sweetest life there can be, but we escape from years of toil and ignominy, and there can be no life worse than that. And what fires me most of all, my friends, and sends me into the lists most gladly, is the thought that Cyrus will be our judge: one who will give

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**βαδίζω** walk, proceed**γούν** at least then**δημότης** -ου (m, 1) commoner**διδάσκαλος** teacher**δίψα** thirst ~dipsomania**ἔρις** -δος (f) strife**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**καρτερέω** be patient**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**λίαν** very**λιμός** (ī, f) famine**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath

~orc

**παιδεύω** raise; train**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πτερόν** feather, wing ~pterodactyl**πτερόω** give wings**ῥίγος** -ους (n, 3) miserable, cold

~frigid

**τιμάω** (ī) honor, exalt**τρέχω** run, spin**φορτίον** burden, load

θεῶν ὄρκῳ λέγω ἡ μὴν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ Κῦρος οὕστινας ἂν  
 ὀρᾷ ἀγαθοὺς φιλεῖν οὐδὲν ἡττον ἑαυτοῦ· τούτοις γοῦν  
 ὀρῶ αὐτὸν ὅ τι ἂν ἔχῃ ἥδιον διδόντα μᾶλλον ἢ αὐτὸν  
 ἔχοντα. καίτοι, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι οὗτοι μέγα φρονοῦσιν  
 ὅτι πεπαιδεύονται δὴ καὶ πρὸς λιμὸν καὶ δίψαν καὶ πρὸς  
 ῥίγος καρτερεῖν, κακῶς εἰδότες ὅτι καὶ ταῦτα ἡμεῖς ὑπὸ  
 κρείττονος διδασκάλου πεπαιδευμένα ἢ οὗτοι. οὐ γὰρ  
 ἔστι διδάσκαλος οὐδεὶς τούτων κρείττων τῆς ἀνάγκης,  
 ἡ ἡμᾶς καὶ λίαν ταῦτ' ἀκριβοῦν ἐδίδαξε. καὶ πονεῖν  
 οὗτοι μὲν τὰ ὄπλα φέροντες ἐμελέτων, ἃ ἔστιν ἅπασιν  
 ἀνθρώποις ἡγήμενα ὥς ἂν εὐφορώτατα εἴη, ἡμεῖς δέ  
 γ', ἔφη, ἐν μεγάλοις φορτίοις καὶ βαδίζειν καὶ τρέχειν  
 ἡναγκαζόμεθα, ὥστε νῦν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν τὸ τῶν ὄπλων  
 φόρημα πτεροῖς μᾶλλον εἰκέναι ἢ φορτίῳ. ὥς οὖν ἐμοῦ  
 γε καὶ ἀγωνιουμένου καὶ ὁποῖος ἂν τις ᾧ κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν  
 με τιμᾶν ἀξιόσοντος, οὕτως, ἔφη, ᾧ Κῦρε, γίγνωσκε. καὶ  
 ὑμῖν γ', ἔφη, ᾧ ἄνδρες δημόται, παραινῶ εἰς ἔριν ὀρμᾶσθαι  
 ταύτης τῆς μάχης πρὸς τοὺς πεπαιδευμένους

θεῶν |oath λέγω ἡ μὴν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ Κῦρος οὔστινας ἂν  
 ὁρᾷ ἀγαθοὺς φιλεῖν οὐδὲν ἡττον ἐαυτοῦ· τούτοις |at least then  
 ὁρῶ αὐτὸν ὅ τι ἂν ἔχη |sweet διδόντα μᾶλλον ἢ αὐτὸν  
 ἔχοντα. |and yet; and in οἶδα ὅτι οὔτοι μέγα |think, be wise  
 |fact; although  
 ὅτι |raise; train δὴ καὶ πρὸς |famine καὶ |thirst καὶ πρὸς  
 |miser- |be patient , κακῶς εἰδότες ὅτι καὶ ταῦτα ἡμεῖς ὑπὸ  
 |able,  
 |cold,  
 κρείττωνος |teacher |raise; train ἢ οὔτοι. οὐ γὰρ  
 ἔστι |teacher οὐδεὶς τούτων κρείττων τῆς ἀνάγκης,  
 ἡ ἡμᾶς καὶ |very ταῦτ' ἀκριβοῦν ἐδίδαξε. καὶ |work  
 οὔτοι μὲν τὰ |tool φέροντες |pursue, attend ἔστιν ἅπασιν  
 |to, exercise  
 ἀνθρώποις ἡύρημένα ὡς ἂν εὐφορώτατα εἴη, ἡμεῖς δέ  
 γ', ἔφη, ἐν μεγάλοις |burden, load ἰ |walk, καὶ |run, spin  
 |proceed  
 |force, compel , ὥστε νῦν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν τὸ τῶν |tool  
 φόρημα πτεροῖς μᾶλλον εἰκέναι ἢ |burden, load . οὖν ἐμοῦ  
 γε καὶ |contend, exert καὶ |whatever kind . ὦ κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν  
 |oneself  
 με |honor ἀξιῶσοντος, οὕτως, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, γίγνωσκε. καὶ  
 ὑμῖν γ', ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες |commoner |recommend, |strife ἰρμᾶσθαι  
 |exhort, warn  
 ταύτης τῆς μάχης πρὸς τοὺς |raise; train

no partial verdict. I call the gods to witness when I say that he loves a valiant man as he loves his own soul: I have seen him give such an one more than he ever keeps for himself. And now," he added, "I know that our friends here pride themselves upon their breeding and what it has done for them. They have been brought up to endure hunger and thirst, cold and nakedness, and yet they are aware that we too have been trained in the self-same school and by a better master than they: we were taught by Necessity, and there is no teacher so good, and none so strict. How did our friends here learn their endurance? By bearing arms, weapons of war, tools that the wit of the whole human race has made as light as well could be: but Necessity drove us, my fellows and myself, to stagger under burdens so heavy that to-day, if I may speak for myself, these weapons of mine seem rather wings to lift me than weights to bear. I for one am ready, Cyrus, to enter the lists, and, however I prove, I will ask from you no more than I deserve: I would have you believe this. And you," he added, turning to his fellows, "you, men of the people, I would have you plunge into the battle and match yourselves with these

*vocabulary***ἀγωνία** contest; agony**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy**ἀντιτάσσω** set against**ἀριστερός** left-hand**βῶλος** (f) clod**γέρρον** wicker object**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**δημοτικός** common, popular,  
democratic**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**ἐμβολή** putting in; incursion, charge**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπικύπτω** bend over**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κνήμη** lower leg**κνημὶς** -δος (ī, f) greave**μηρός** thigh, femur**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**παίω** hit**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**συναγορεύω** support**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**τιμάω** (ī) honor, exalt**τράχηλος** neck ~trachea

τούσδε· νῦν γὰρ ἄνδρες εἰλημμένοι εἰσὶν ἐν δημοτικῇ ἀγωνίᾳ. Φεραύλας μὲν δὴ οὕτως εἶπεν. ἀνίσταντο δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ ἐκατέρων συναγορεύοντες. ἔδοξε κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν τιμᾶσθαι ἕκαστον, Κῦρον δὲ τὸν κρίνοντα εἶναι. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω προουκεχωρήκεσαν.

Ἐκάλεσε δ' ἐπὶ δεῖπνον ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ὅλην ποτὲ τάξιν σὺν τῷ ταξιάρχῳ, ἰδὼν αὐτὸν τοὺς μὲν ἡμίσεις τῶν ἀνδρῶν τῆς τάξεως ἀντιτάξαντα ἐκατέρωθεν εἰς ἐμβολήν, θώρακας μὲν ἀμφοτέρους ἔχοντας καὶ γέρρα ἐν ταῖς ἀριστεραῖς, εἰς δὲ τὰς δεξιὰς νάρθηκας παχεῖς τοῖς ἡμίσεσιν ἔδωκε, τοῖς δ' ἑτέροις εἶπεν ὅτι βάλλειν δεήσοι ἀναιρουμένους ταῖς βώλοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεσκευασμένοι οὕτως ἔστησαν, ἐσήμηνεν αὐτοῖς μάχεσθαι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ μὲν ἔβαλλον ταῖς βώλοις καὶ ἔστιν οἳ ἐτύγχανον καὶ θωράκων καὶ γέρρων, οἱ δὲ καὶ μηροῦ καὶ κνημίδος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο, οἱ τοὺς νάρθηκας ἔχοντες ἔπαιον τῶν μὲν μηρούς, τῶν δὲ χεῖρας, τῶν δὲ κνήμας, τῶν δὲ καὶ ἐπικυπτόντων ἐπὶ βώλους ἔπαιον τοὺς τραχήλους καὶ τὰ



τούσδε· νῦν γὰρ ἄνδρες εἰλημμένοι εἰσὶν ἐν |common, popu-  
lar, democratic

|contest; . Φεραύλας μὲν δὴ οὕτως εἶπεν. ἀνίσταντο δὲ  
agony

καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ |each of two |support . ἔδοξε κατὰ

τὴν ἀξίαν τιμᾶσθαι ἕκαστον, Κῦρον δὲ τὸν κρίνοντα εἶναι.

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω |proceed, come for-  
ward

Ἐκάλεσε δ' ἐπὶ δειπνον ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ὅλην ποτὲ τάξιν

σὺν τῷ |military rank ἰδὼν αὐτὸν τοὺς μὲν |half τῶν

ἀνδρῶν τῆς τάξεως |set against |on both sides εἰς |putting in; incursion,  
charge

|breastplate μὲν ἀμφοτέρους ἔχοντας καὶ |wicker ἐν ταῖς  
object

|left-hand , εἰς δὲ τὰς δεξιὰς νάρθηκας |thick, stout, ὡς  
clotted

|half ἔδωκε, τοῖς δ' ἑτέροις εἶπεν ὅτι βάλλειν δεήσοι

ἀναιρουμένους ταῖς |clod . ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεσκευασμένοι

οὕτως ἔστησαν, |give orders to; τοῖς μάχεσθαι. |there, here ἡ  
show; mark

οἱ μὲν ἔβαλλον ταῖς |clod καὶ ἔστιν οἱ ἐτύγχανον καὶ

|breastplate καὶ |wicker , οἱ δὲ καὶ |thigh καὶ |greave . ἐπεὶ  
object

δὲ ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο, οἱ τοὺς νάρθηκας ἔχοντες |hit τῶν

μὲν |thigh , τῶν δὲ χεῖρας, τῶν δὲ |lower leg τῶν δὲ καὶ

|bend over ἐπὶ |clod |hit τοὺς |neck καὶ τὰ

gentlemen-warriors: the fine fellows must meet us now, for this is the people's day."

That is what Pheraulas said, and many rose to follow him and support his views. And it was resolved that each man should be honoured according to his deserts and that Cyrus should be the judge. So the matter ended, and all was well.

Now Cyrus gave a banquet and a certain brigadier was the chief guest, and his regiment with him. Cyrus had marked the officer one day when he was drilling his men; he had drawn up the ranks in two divisions, opposite each other, ready for the charge. They were all wearing corslets and carrying light shields, but half were equipped with stout staves of fennel, and half were ordered to snatch up clods of earth and do what they could with these. When all were ready, the officer gave the signal and the artillery began, not without effect: the missiles fell fast on shields and corslets, on thighs and greaves. But when they came to close quarters the men of the staves had their turn: they struck at thighs and hands and legs, or, if the adversary stooped and twisted, they belaboured back and shoulders, till they put the

*vocabulary*

ἀγάζω exalt, adore

ἀνακράζω yell, scream

βῶλος (f) clod

γελᾶω laugh, smile, laugh at

γέλως laughter

γυμνάζω exercise, do training

δείπνον meal, food

δείπνος meal, food

εἰκάζω liken; conjecture

εἰκός likely

ἔνιοι some

ἐπερωτάω consult, ask

ἐπιδείκνυμι (ὑ) display, exhibit

ἐπιδέω fasten; lack

ἐρωτάω ask about something

εὐθυμέω (ὑ) to be of good cheer

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

νῶτον back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box

ὁμόθεν from the same place

~homoerotic

ὁμός same ~homoerotic

ὁμοῦ together

ὁμός unite ~homoerotic

ὀπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite

ὀπλισις -τος (f) arming for war

παιδιά childish play

παίω hit

πειθός persuasive

Πέρσης Persian

πληγή a hit ~plectrum

πλήσσω hit ~plectrum

πότερος which, whichever of two

πρόσω forward, in the future; far

σκηνέω camp

σκηνή tent; stage

συγχόπτω chop up; beat up

ταξίαρχος military rank

τράχηλος neck ~trachea

νώτα. τέλος δὲ τρεψάμενοι ἐδίωκον οἱ ναρθηκοφόροι παίοντες σὺν πολλῷ γέλωτι καὶ παιδιᾷ. ἐν μέρει γε μὴν οἱ ἕτεροι λαβόντες πάλιν τοὺς νάρθηκας ταῦτ' ἐποίησαν τοὺς ταῖς βώλοις βάλλοντας· ταῦτα δ' ἀγασθεὶς ὁ Κῦρος, τοῦ μὲν ταξιάρχου τὴν ἐπίνοιαν, τῶν δὲ τὴν πειθῶ, ὅτι ἅμα μὲν ἐγυμνάζοντο, ἅμα δ' ἠὺθυμοῦντο, ἅμα δ' ἐνίκων οἱ εἰκασθέντες τῇ τῶν Περσῶν ὀπλίσει, τούτοις δὴ ἡσθεὶς ἐκάλεσέ τε ἐπὶ δείπνον αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ ἰδὼν τινὰς αὐτῶν ἐπιδεδεμένους, τὸν μὲν τινα ἀντικνήμιον, τὸν δὲ χεῖρα, ἡρώτα τί πάθοιεν. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι πληγεῖεν ταῖς βώλοις. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἐπηρώτα πότερον ἐπεὶ ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο ἢ ὅτε πρόσω ἦσαν. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτε πρόσω ἦσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο, παιδιὰν ἔφασαν εἶναι καλλίστην οἱ ναρθηκοφόροι· οἱ δὲ συγκεκριμένοι τοῖς νάρθηξιν ἀνέκραγον ὅτι οὐ σφίσι δοκοίη παιδιὰ εἶναι τὸ ὁμόθεν παίεσθαι· ἅμα δὲ ἐπεδείκνυσαν τῶν ναρθήκων τὰς πληγὰς καὶ ἐν χερσὶ καὶ ἐν τραχήλοις, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ ἐν προσώποις. καὶ τότε μὲν ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐγέλων ἐπ'

|back τέλος δὲ |divert |chase οἱ νάρθηκοφόροι  
 |hit σὺν πολλῶ |laughter καὶ παιδιᾷ. ἐν μέρει γε μὴν  
 οἱ ἕτεροι λαβόντες πάλιν τοὺς νάρθηκας ταῦτὰ ἐποίησαν  
 τοὺς ταῖς |clod βάλλοντας· ταῦτα δ' |exalt, ὁ Κύρος,  
 |adore  
 τοῦ μὲν |military rank ἦν ἐπίνοιαν, τῶν δὲ τὴν πειθῶ, ὅτι  
 ἅμα μὲν |exercise, do, ἅμα δ' |to be of good cheer. δ' ἐνίκων  
 |training  
 οἱ |liken; τῇ τῶν Περσῶν ὀπλίσει, τούτοις δὲ |be pleased, enjoy  
 |conjecture  
 ἐκάλεσέ τε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ ἰδὼν  
 τινὰς αὐτῶν |fasten; lack , τὸν μὲν τινα ἀντικνήμιον, τὸν  
 δὲ χεῖρα, |ask τί πάθοιεν. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι |hit  
 ταῖς |clod . ὁ δὲ πάλιν |consult, ask |which, ἐπεὶ ὁμοῦ  
 |whichever  
 ἐγένοντο ἢ ὅτε |forward, in the , οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτε |forward, in the fu-  
 |future; far |ture; far  
 ἦσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο, παιδιὰν ἔφασαν εἶναι  
 καλλίστην οἱ νάρθηκοφόροι· οἱ δὲ |συγκόπτω?: chop up; beat up; or  
 |συγκόπτω?: chop up; beat up  
 νάρθηξιν |yell, scream ὅτι οὐ σφίσι δοκοίη παιδιὰ εἶναι τὸ  
 |from the|hit ἅμα δὲ |display, exhibit τῶν νάρθηκων τὰς  
 |same  
 |place  
 πληγὰς καὶ ἐν χερσὶ καὶ ἐν |neck , |some δὲ καὶ ἐν  
 |face . καὶ τότε μὲν ὥσπερ |likely |laugh, ἐπ'  
 |smile

foe to utter rout, delivering their blows with shouts of laughter and the glee of boys. Then there was an exchange of weapons, and the other side had their revenge: they took the staves in their turn, and once more the staff triumphed over the clod. Cyrus was full of admiration, partly at the inventiveness of the commander, partly at the discipline of the men; it was good to see the active exercise, and the gaiety of heart, and good to know that the upshot of the battle favoured those who fought in the Persian style. In every way he was pleased, and then and there he bade them all to dinner. But at the feast many of the guests wore bandages, some on their hands, others on their legs, and Cyrus saw it and asked what had befallen them. They told him they had been bruised by the clods. "At close quarters?" said he, "or at long range?" "At long range," they answered, and all the club-bearers agreed that when it came to close quarters, they had the finest sport. But here those who had been carbonaded by that weapon broke in and protested loudly that it was anything but sport to be clubbed at short range, and in proof thereof they showed the weals on hand and neck and face. Thus they laughed at one another as soldiers will; and

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**ἀριστερός** left-hand**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**διδασκαλία** teaching**εἰσάγω** lead in ~demagogue**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**κατακλίνω** (ι) lay down ~incline**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**μεστός** full**μέτωπον** forehead, front**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent**οὐρά** tail**παιδιά** childish play**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**παράγω** deflect; bring forward**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**πότε** when?**σκηνή** tent; stage**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later**ὕστερον** later**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἀλλήλοις. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία μεστὸν ἦν τὸ πεδῖον πᾶν τῶν  
τούτους μιμουμένων· καὶ εἰ μὴ ἄλλο τι σπουδαιότερον  
πράττοιεν, ταύτῃ τῇ παιδιᾷ ἐχρῶντο.

Ἄλλον δέ ποτε ἰδὼν ταξίαρχον ἄγοντα τὴν τάξιν ἀπὸ  
τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ ἀριστερὸν ἐφ' ἑνός, καὶ ὁπότε δοκοίη  
αὐτῷ καιρὸς εἶναι, παραγγέλλοντα τὸν ὕστερον λόχον  
παράγειν, καὶ τὸν τρίτον καὶ τὸν τέταρτον, εἰς μέτωπον,  
ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν μετώπῳ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐγένοντο, παρηγγύησεν  
εἰς δύο ἄγειν τὸν λόχον· ἐκ τούτου δὴ παρήγον οἱ  
δεκάδαρχοι εἰς μέτωπον· ὁπότε δ' αὖ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ καιρὸς  
εἶναι, παρήγγειλεν εἰς τέτταρας τὸν λόχον· οὕτω δὴ οἱ  
πεμπάδαρχοι αὖ παρήγον εἰς τέτταρας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις  
τῆς σκηνῆς ἐγένοντο, παραγγείλας αὖ εἰς ἓνα ἰόντων  
εἰσήγε τὸν πρῶτον λόχον, καὶ τὸν δεύτερον τούτου κατ'  
οὐρὰν ἐκέλευσεν ἔπεσθαι, καὶ τὸν τρίτον καὶ τὸν τέταρτον  
ὡσαύτως παραγγείλας ἠγείτο ἔσω· οὕτω δ' εἰσαγαγὼν  
κατέκλινεν ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον ὥσπερ εἰσεπορεύοντο· τοῦτον  
οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ἀγασθεὶς τῆς τε πραότητος τῆς διδασκαλίας



ἀλλήλοις. τῇ δ' <sup>|the</sup> next;|full ἦν τὸ πεδίον πᾶν τῶν  
<sup>|later</sup>  
 τούτους <sup>|imitate,</sup> καὶ εἰ μὴ ἄλλο τι <sup>|quick, active; ex-</sup>  
<sup>|represent</sup> <sup>|cellent</sup>  
 πράττειν, ταύτῃ τῇ παιδιᾷ ἐχρῶντο.

Ἄλλον δέ ποτε ἰδὼν <sup>|military rank</sup> ἔγοντα τὴν τάξιν ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ <sup>|left-hand</sup> ἐφ' ἐνός, καὶ ὁπότε δοκοίη  
 αὐτῷ καιρὸς εἶναι, παραγγέλλοντα τὸν ὕστερον <sup>|ambush,</sup> band,  
<sup>|childbirth</sup>  
<sup>|deflect; bring</sup> αὖ τὸν τρίτον καὶ τὸν <sup>|fourth</sup> , εἰς <sup>|forehead,</sup> ,  
<sup>|forward</sup> <sup>|front</sup>  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν <sup>|forehead,</sup> οἱ <sup>|captain</sup> ἐγένοντο, <sup>|entrust; pass an</sup>  
<sup>|front</sup> <sup>|order</sup>  
 εἰς δύο ἄγειν τὸν <sup>|ambush, band,</sup> ὅτου δὴ <sup>|deflect; bring</sup>  
<sup>|childbirth</sup> <sup>|forward</sup>  
 δεκάδαρχοι εἰς <sup>|forehead,</sup> ὁπότε δ' αὖ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ καιρὸς  
<sup>|front</sup>  
 εἶναι, παρήγγειλεν εἰς τέτταρας τὸν <sup>|ambush, band,</sup> δὴ οἱ  
<sup>|childbirth</sup>  
 πεμπάδαρχοι αὖ <sup>|deflect; bring</sup> τέτταρας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις  
<sup>|forward</sup>  
 τῆς <sup>|tent;</sup> ἐγένοντο, παραγγείλας αὖ εἰς ἓνα ἰόντων  
<sup>|stage</sup>  
<sup>|lead in</sup> τὸν πρῶτον <sup>|ambush, band,</sup> δὲ δεύτερον τούτου κατ'  
<sup>|childbirth</sup>  
<sup>|tail</sup> ἐκέλευσεν ἔπεσθαι, καὶ τὸν τρίτον καὶ τὸν <sup>|fourth</sup>  
<sup>|in the same way</sup> παραγγείλας ἠγάγετο ἔσω· οὕτω δ' <sup>|lead in</sup>  
<sup>|lay down</sup> ἐπὶ τὸ δαίπνον ὥσπερ εἰσεπορεύοντο· τούτων  
 οὖν ὁ Κῦρος <sup>|exalt,</sup> τῆς τε πρῶτος τῆς <sup>|teaching</sup>  
<sup>|adore</sup>

on the next day the whole plain was studded with combats of this type, and whenever the army had nothing more serious in hand, this sport was their delight.

Another day Cyrus noticed a brigadier who was marching his regiment up from the river back to their quarters. They were advancing in single file on his left, and at the proper moment he ordered the second company to wheel round and draw up to the front alongside the first, and then the third, and then the fourth; and when the company-captains were all abreast, he passed the word along, "Companies in twos," and the captains-of- ten came into line; and then at the right moment he gave the order, "Companies in fours," and the captains of five wheeled round and came abreast, and when they reached the tent doors he called a halt, made them fall into single file once more, and marched the first company in first, and then the second at its heels, and the third and fourth behind them, and as he introduced them, he seated them at the table, keeping the order of their entry. What Cyrus commended was the quiet method of instruction

*vocabulary*

**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀφηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate  
**δεῖπνον** meal, food  
**δεῖπνος** meal, food  
**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten  
 ~decimal  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἐθίζω** accustom  
**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station  
**ἠώς ἠῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἴσχω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**οὐραγός** (ᾱ) leader of the rearguard  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
**περιπατέω** walk around  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τελευταῖος** last, final  
**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid  
**ὕστερον** later  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

καὶ τῆς ἐπιμελείας ἐκάλεσε ταύτην τὴν τάξιν ἐπὶ τὸ δειπνον σὺν τῷ ταξιάρχῳ.

Παρὼν δέ τις ἐπὶ τῷ δειπνῳ κεκλημένος ἄλλος ταξίαρχος, τὴν δ' ἐμὴν, ἔφη, τάξιν, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐ καλεῖς εἰς τὴν σκηηνή; καὶ μὴν ὅταν γε παρίῃ ἐπὶ τὸ δειπνον, πάντα ταῦτα ποιεῖ· καὶ ὅταν τέλος ἡ σκηηνὴ ἔχῃ, ἐξάγει μὲν ὁ οὐραγός, ἔφη, ὁ τοῦ τελευταίου λόχου τὸν λόχον, ὑστάτους ἔχων τοὺς πρώτους τεταγμένους εἰς μάχην· ἔπειτα ὁ δεύτερος τοὺς τοῦ ἐτέρου λόχου ἐπὶ τούτοις, καὶ ὁ τρίτος καὶ ὁ τέταρτος ὡσαύτως, ὅπως, ἔφη, καὶ ὅταν ἀπάγειν δέῃ ἀπὸ πολεμίων, ἐπίστωνται ὡς δεῖ ἀπιέναι. ἐπειδὰν δέ, ἔφη, καταστῶμεν ἐπὶ τὸν δρόμον ἔνθα περιπατοῦμεν, ὅταν μὲν πρὸς ἑω ἴωμεν, ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγοῦμαι, καὶ ὁ πρῶτος λόχος πρῶτος, καὶ ὁ δεύτερος ὡς δεῖ, καὶ ὁ τρίτος καὶ ὁ τέταρτος, καὶ αἱ τῶν λόχων δεκάδες καὶ πεμπάδες, ἕως ἂν παραγγέλλω ἐγώ· ὅταν δ', ἔφη, πρὸς ἐσπέραν ἴωμεν, ὁ οὐραγός τε καὶ οἱ τελευταῖοι πρῶτοι ἀφηγοῦνται· ἐμοὶ μέντοι οὕτω πείθονται ὑστέρω ἰόντι, ἵνα ἐθίζωνται καὶ

καὶ τῆς |attention; as- |*ἰκάλεσε ταύτην τὴν τάξιν ἐπὶ τὸ*  
|signed task

*δείπνον σὺν τῷ* |military rank

*Παρὼν δέ τις ἐπὶ τῷ δείπνῳ κεκλημένος ἄλλος* |military rank

*τὴν δ' ἐμήν, ἔφη, τάξιν, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐ καλεῖς εἰς τὴν* |tent;  
|stage

*καὶ μὴν ὅταν γε* |dangle; pass |*τὸ δείπνον, πάντα ταῦτα*  
|over, allow

*ποιεῖ· καὶ ὅταν τέλος ἦ* |tent; |*ἔχῃ, |lead out, ἐν ὃ* |leader of the  
|stage |rearguard

*ἔφη, ὁ τοῦ* |last, final |ambush, |*ἄνδρα |ambush, ἑξῆς*  
|band, child- |childbirth  
|birth

*τοὺς πρώτους τεταγμένους εἰς μάχην· ἔπειτα ὁ δεύτερος*

*τοὺς τοῦ ἑτέρου* |ambush, |band, |*ὑποτάσσεται, καὶ ὁ τρίτος καὶ ὁ*  
|childbirth

|fourth |in the same way |*πορεύεται, ἔφη, καὶ ὅταν* |lead away, back

*ἀπὸ πολεμίων, ἐπίστωνται ὡς δεῖ ἀπιέναι.* |when, |*δέ,*  
|after

*ἔφη, καταστῶμεν ἐπὶ τὸν* |running |*ἔνθα* |walk around

*ὅταν μὲν πρὸς ἑῷ* |imitate, |*ἵκην, μὲν ἡγοῦμαι, καὶ ὁ πρῶτος*  
|to, guess

|ambush, |band, |*καὶ ὁ δεύτερος ὡς δεῖ, καὶ ὁ τρίτος καὶ ὁ*  
|childbirth

|fourth |, καὶ αἱ τῶν |ambush, |decade |*καὶ πεμπάδες, ἕως*  
|band,

*ἂν* |transmit; order, |summon, |*δ', ἔφη, πρὸς* |evening, |imitate, |*ἵκην, μὲν ἡγοῦμαι, καὶ ὁ πρῶτος*  
|recommend, encourage |child- |birth |west |guess

*ὁ* |leader of the |*καὶ οἱ* |last, final |*πρῶτοι* |lead; tell, relate |*μοι*  
|rearguard

*μέντοι οὕτω πείθονται ὑστέρῳ ἰόντι, ἵνα* |accustom |*καὶ*

and the care the officer showed, and it was for that he invited him and all his regiment to dinner in the royal tent.

Now it chanced that another brigadier was among the guests, and he spoke up and said to Cyrus: "But will you never ask my men to dinner too? Day after day, morning and evening, whenever we come in for a meal we do just the same as they, and when the meal is over the hindmost man of the last company leads out his men with their fighting-order reversed, and the next company follows, led by their hindmost man, and then the third, and then the fourth: so that all of them, if they have to retire before an enemy, will know how to fall back in good order. And as soon as we are drawn up on the parade-ground we set off marching east, and I lead off with all my divisions behind me, in their regular order, waiting for my word. By-and- by we march west, and then the hindmost man of the last division leads the way, but they must still look to me for commands, though I am marching last: and thus they learn

*vocabulary***ἀσκέω** work on**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner**διπλός** double, overlapping**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐωχία** partying**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**μιμέομαι** (ἷ) imitate, represent**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νῆ** yea**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress**περιπατέω** walk around**πότε** when?**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσίημι** be allowed near**σκηνή** tent; stage**στολή** equipment**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τοίνυν** well, then**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡγείσθαι ὁμοίως πειθόμενοι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· Ἡ καὶ ἀεὶ τοῦτο ποιεῖτε; Ὅποσάκις γε, ἔφη, καὶ δειπνοποιούμεθα νῆ Δία. αὐτῶ τοῖνον, ἔφη, ὑμᾶς, ἅμα μὲν ὅτι τὰς τάξεις μελετᾶτε καὶ προσιόντες καὶ ἀπιόντες, ἅμα δ' ὅτι καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτός, ἅμα δ' ὅτι τὰ τε σώματα περιπατοῦντες ἀσκεῖτε καὶ τὰς ψυχὰς ὠφελεῖτε διδάσκοντες. ἐπεὶ οὖν πάντα διπλᾶ ποιεῖτε, διπλὴν ὑμῖν δίκαιον καὶ τὴν εὐωχίαν παρέχειν. Μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ ταξίαρχος, μήτοι γ' ἐν μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ, εἰ μὴ καὶ διπλᾶς ἡμῖν τὰς γαστέρας παρέξεις. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ οὕτω τὸ τέλος τῆς σκηνῆς ἐποιήσαντο. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ὁ Κῦρος ἐκάλεσεν ἐκείνην τὴν τάξιν, ὥσπερ ἔφη, καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ. αἰσθόμενοι δὲ ταῦτα καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι τὸ λοιπὸν πάντες αὐτοὺς ἐμμουῖντο.

## 2.4

Ἐξέτασιν δέ ποτε πάντων τοῦ Κύρου ποιουμένου ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ σύνταξιν ἦλθε παρὰ Κναξάρου ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι Ἰνδῶν παρείη πρεσβεία· κελεύει οὖν σε ἐλθεῖν ὡς τάχιστα. φέρω δέ σοι, ἔφη ὁ ἄγγελος, καὶ στολὴν



ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ὁμοίως πειθόμενοι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
ἔφη· Ἡ καὶ ἀεὶ τοῦτο ποιεῖτε; Ὅποσάκις γε, ἔφη, καὶ

|make dinner νῆ Δία. αὐτῷ |well, then ἔφη, ὑμᾶς, ἅμα

μὲν ὅτι τὰς τάξεις |pursue, attend προσιόντες καὶ |be absent, go  
|to, exercise |away, return

ἅμα δ' ὅτι καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτός, ἅμα δ' ὅτι τὰ τε

|body, |walk around |work on καὶ τὰς |soul; life ὑφελείτε  
|person,  
|thing  
|teach . ἐπεὶ οὖν πάντα διπλᾶ ποιεῖτε, διπλὴν

ὑμῖν δίκαιον καὶ τὴν |partying |furnish . Μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ

|military rank , ἵητοι γ' ἐν μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ, εἰ μὴ καὶ διπλᾶς ἡμῖν

τὰς |belly παρέξεις. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ οὕτω τὸ |end

τῆς |tent; ἐποιήσαντο. τῇ δ' |the next; later ὁ Κῦρος ἐκάλεσεν  
|stage

ἐκείνην τὴν τάξιν, ὥσπερ ἔφη, καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ. |perceive δὲ

ταῦτα καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι τὸ |left over πάντες αὐτοὺς |imitate,  
|represent

## 2.4

|scrutiny δέ ποτε πάντων τοῦ Κύρου ποιουμένου ἐν τοῖς

|tool καὶ σύνταξιν ἦλθε παρὰ Κναξάρου |messenger ἔγων

ὅτι Ἰνδῶν παρείη πρεσβεία· κελεύει οὖν σε ἐλθεῖν ὡς

τάχιστα. φέρω δέ σοι, ἔφη ὁ |messenger καὶ |equipment

to obey with equal promptitude whether I am at the head or in the rear.”

”Do you mean to tell me,” said Cyrus, ”that this is a regular rule of yours?”

”Truly yes,” he answered, ”as regular as our meals, heaven help us!”

”Then I hereby invite you all to dinner, and for three good reasons; you practice your drill in both forms, you do this morning and evening both, and by your marching and counter-marching you train your bodies and benefit your souls. And since you do it all twice over every day, it is only fair to give you dinner twice.”

”Not twice in one day, I beg you!” said the officer, ”unless you can furnish us with a second stomach apiece.”

And so the conversation ended for the time. But the next day Cyrus was as good as his word. He had all the regiment to dinner; and the day after he invited them again: and when the other regiments knew of it they fell to doing as they did.

## 2.4

Now it chanced one day as Cyrus was holding a review, a messenger came from Cyaxares to tell him that an embassy from India had just arrived, and to bid him return with all despatch.

”And I bring with me,” said the

*vocabulary***ἀγυιά** street**ἀκολουθέω** follow**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height**βασιλῆιος** kingly**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**διίημι** drive off, pass through**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὖχοσμος** duly; in good order

~cosmos

**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**μέτωπον** forehead, front**οὐρά** tail**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσίημι** be allowed near**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three**τροχάζω** run, spin

τὴν καλλίστην παρὰ Κναξάρου· ἐβούλετο γάρ σε ὥς  
λαμπρότατα καὶ εὐκοσμότατα προσάγειν, ὥς ὀψομένων  
τῶν Ἰνδῶν ὅπως ἂν προσίῃς. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος  
παρήγγειλε τῷ πρώτῳ τεταγμένῳ ταξιάρχῳ εἰς μέτωπον  
στῆναι, ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἄγοντα τὴν τάξιν, ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντα ἑαυτόν,  
καὶ τῷ δευτέρῳ ἐκέλευσε ταῦτ' οὗτο παραγγεῖλαι, καὶ  
διὰ πάντων οὕτω παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ πειθόμενοι  
ταχὺ μὲν παρήγγελλον, ταχὺ δὲ τὰ παραγγελλόμενα  
ἐποιοῦν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ χρόνῳ ἐγένοντο τὸ μὲν μέτωπον ἐπὶ  
τριακοσίων τοσοῦτοι γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ ταξίαρχοι, τὸ δὲ βάθος  
ἐφ' ἑκατόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησαν, ἔπεσθαι ἐκέλευσεν ὥς  
ἂν αὐτὸς ἡγήται· καὶ εὐθὺς τροχάζων ἡγείτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
κατενόησε τὴν ἀγνιὰν τὴν πρὸς τὸ βασιλεῖον φέρουσιν  
στενοτέραν οὔσαν ἢ ὥς ἐπὶ μετώπου πάντας διέναι,  
παραγγείλας τὴν πρώτην χιλιοστὴν ἔπεσθαι κατὰ χώραν,  
τὴν δὲ δευτέραν κατ' οὐρὰν ταύτης ἀκολουθεῖν, καὶ διὰ  
παντὸς οὕτως, αὐτὸς μὲν ἡγείτο οὐκ ἀναπαυόμενος, αἱ δ'  
ἄλλαι χιλιοστῆες κατ' οὐρὰν ἐκάστη τῆς ἔμπροσθεν

τὴν καλλίστην παρὰ Κναξάρου· ἐβούλετο γάρ σε ὥς

|brilliant καὶ |duly; in good or-|bring to a place ὀψομένων  
|der

τῶν Ἰνδῶν ὅπως ἂν προσίης. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος

|transmit; order, summon,|arrange |military rank |forehead,  
|recommend, encourage |front

στηναι, ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἄγοντα τὴν τάξιν, ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντα ἑαυτόν,

καὶ τῷ |second ἐκέλευσε ταῦτό τοῦτο |transmit; order, summon, recom-  
|mend, encourage

διὰ πάντων οὕτω |hand over ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ πειθόμενοι

ταχὺ μὲν |transmit; order, summon, |recommend, encourage  
|transmit; order, summon, recom-  
|mend, encourage

ἐποιοῦν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ χρόνῳ ἐγένοντο τὸ μὲν |forehead, ἐπὶ  
|front

|three |so much γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ |military rank ὁ δὲ |depth,  
|hundred |height

ἐφ' |hundred ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησαν, ἔπεσθαι ἐκέλευσεν ὥς

ἂν αὐτὸς ἡγήται· καὶ εὐθὺς |run, spin ἡγείτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ

|notice, real- τὴν |street τὴν πρὸς τὸ βασιλεῖον φέρουσιν  
|ize, learn

στενοτέραν οὖσαν ἢ ὥς ἐπὶ |forehead, πάντας |drive off, pass  
|front |through

|transmit; order, summon, ἡν χιλιοστὴν ἔπεσθαι κατὰ χώραν,  
|recommend, encourage

τὴν δὲ |second κατ' |tail ταύτης |follow , καὶ διὰ

παντὸς οὕτως, αὐτὸς μὲν ἡγείτο οὐκ |cause to cease , αἱ δ'

ἄλλαι χιλιοστές κατ' |tail ἐκάστη τῆς |before (time, space)

messenger, "a suit of splendid apparel sent from Cyaxares himself: my lord wishes you to appear in all possible splendour, for the Indians will be there to see you."

At that Cyrus commanded the brigadier of the first regiment to draw up to the front with his men behind him on the left in single file, and to pass the order on to the second, and so throughout the army. Officers and men were quick to obey; so that in a trice the whole force on the field was drawn up, one hundred deep and three hundred abreast, with their officers at the head. When they were in position Cyrus bade them follow his lead and off they went at a good round pace. However the road leading to the royal quarters was too narrow to let them pass with so wide a front and Cyrus sent word along the line that the first detachment, one thousand strong, should follow as they were, and then the second, and so on to the last, and as he gave the command he led on without a pause and all the detachments followed in due order, one behind the

*vocabulary***ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of ~gnostic**ἀγυιά** street**ἀδελφή** sister**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height**βασιλεις** kingly**εἴπερ** if indeed**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**μεγαλοπρεπής** befitting greatness**μέτωπον** forehead, front**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**περιτίθημι** put around, endow with ~thesis**πότερος** which, whichever of two**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore**στολή** equipment**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace ~strep throat**σχολή** rest, leisure**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**φέλιον** armlet, anklet

εἶποντο. ἔπεμψε δὲ καὶ ὑπηρέτας δύο ἐπὶ τὸ στόμα τῆς ἀγνιᾶς, ὅπως εἴ τις ἀγνοοίη, σημαίνοιεν τὸ δέον ποιεῖν. ὥς δ' ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὰς Κναζάρου θύρας, παρήγγειλε τῷ πρώτῳ ταξιάρχῳ τὴν τάξιν εἰς δώδεκα τάττειν βάθος, τοὺς δὲ δωδεκάρχους ἐν μετώπῳ καθιστάναι περὶ τὸ βασιλείον, καὶ τῷ δευτέρῳ ταῦτὰ ἐκέλευσε παραγγεῖλαι, καὶ διὰ παντὸς οὕτως. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν· ὁ δ' εἰσῆι περὶ τὸν Κναζάρην ἐν τῇ Περσικῇ στολῇ οὐδέν τι ὑβρισμένη. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Κναζάρης τῷ μὲν τάχει ἤσθη, τῇ δὲ φαυλότητι τῆς στολῆς ἡχθέσθη, καὶ εἶπε· Τί τοῦτο, ὦ Κῦρε; οἷον πεποιήκας οὕτω φανεῖς τοῖς Ἰνδοῖς; ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, ἐβουλόμην σε ὥς λαμπρότατον φανῆναι· καὶ γὰρ ἐμοὶ ἂν κόσμος ἦν τοῦτο, ἐμῆς ὄντα ἀδελφῆς υἱὸν ὅτι μεγαλοπρεπέστατον φαίνεσθαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος περὶ ταῦτα εἶπε· Καὶ ποτέρως ἄν, ὦ Κναζάρη, μᾶλλον σε ἐκόσμου, εἶπερ πορφυρίδα ἐνδὺς καὶ ψέλια λαβὼν καὶ στρεπτὸν περιθέμενος σχολῇ κελεύοντι ὑπήκουόν σοι, ἢ νῦν ὅτε σὺν τοιαύτῃ καὶ τοσαύτῃ δυνάμει οὕτω σοι ὀξέως ὑπακούω διὰ



εἶποντο. ἔπεμψε δὲ καὶ <sup>|servant, officer</sup> δύο ἐπὶ τὸ στόμα τῆς  
<sup>|street</sup> , ὅπως εἴ τις <sup>|be ignorant of</sup> <sup>|give orders to; show; mark</sup> ἃ δέον ποιεῖν.  
 ὥς δ' ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὰς Κναζάρου θύρας, <sup>|transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage</sup>  
 πρώτῳ <sup>|military rank</sup> ἦν τάξιν εἰς <sup>|twelve</sup> <sup>|arrange</sup> <sup>|depth, height</sup>  
 τοὺς δὲ δωδεκάρχους ἐν <sup>|forehead, front</sup> καθιστάναι περὶ τὸ  
 βασιλεῖον, καὶ τῷ δευτέρῳ ταῦτα ἐκέλευσε <sup>|transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage</sup>  
 καὶ διὰ παντὸς οὕτως. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν· ὁ δ'  
<sup>|go in</sup> πρὸς τὸν Κναζάρην ἐν τῇ Περσικῇ <sup>|equipment</sup> ἵέν  
 τι <sup>|insult</sup> . ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Κναζάρης τῷ μὲν τάχει  
<sup>|be pleased, enjoy</sup> <sup>|glóthēti</sup> τῆς <sup>|equip-ment</sup> <sup>|be burdened with</sup>· εἰ· Τί  
 τοῦτο, ὦ Κῦρε; οἶον πεποίηκας οὕτω φανείς τοῖς Ἰνδοῖς;  
 ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, ἐβουλόμην σε ὥς <sup>|brilliant</sup> φανῆναι· καὶ  
 γὰρ ἐμοὶ ἂν κόσμος ἦν τοῦτο, ἐμῆς ὄντα <sup>|sister</sup> υἱὸν ὅτι  
<sup>|befitting greatness</sup> φαίνεσθαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα  
 εἶπε· Καὶ <sup>|which, whichever</sup> ἥν, ὦ Κναζάρη, μάλλον σε <sup>|marshal, array</sup>  
<sup>|if indeed</sup> ἰρφυρίδα <sup>|go into, put on</sup> <sup>|armlet, anklet</sup> λαβὼν καὶ <sup>|pliant; type of necklace</sup>  
<sup>|put around, rest, endow with</sup> <sup>|leisure</sup> <sup>|listen, reply</sup> σοι, ἢ νῦν ὅτε σὺν  
 τοιαύτῃ καὶ τοσαύτῃ δυνάμει οὕτω σοι ὀξέως <sup>|listen, reply</sup> διὰ

other. But to prevent mistakes he sent two gallopers up to the entrance with orders to explain what should be done in case the men were at a loss. And when they reached the gates, Cyrus told the leading brigadier to draw up his regiment round the palace, twelve deep, the front rank facing the building, and this command he was to pass on to the second, and the second to the third, and so on till the last. And while they saw to this he went in to Cyaxares himself, wearing his simple Persian dress without a trace of pomp. Cyaxares was well pleased at his celerity, but troubled by the plainness of his attire, and said to him, "What is the meaning of this, Cyrus? How could you show yourself in this guise to the Indians? I wished you to appear in splendour: it would have done me honour for my sister's son to be seen in great magnificence."

But Cyrus made answer: "Should I have done you more honour if I had put on a purple robe, and bracelets for my arms, and a necklace about my neck, and so presented myself at your call after long delay? Or as now, when to show you respect I obey you with this despatch and bring you so large and fine a force, although I wear no ornament

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἄρnuμαι** get, win**δικαστής** -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror**ἐπιδείκnuμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**ἔρωτάω** ask about something**ἰδρώς** sweat ~exude**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up**πύθω** (ῶ) rot ~putrid**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptical

**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily ~repudiate**τιμάω** (ῖ) honor, exalt**τοίνυν** well, then

τὸ σὲ τιμᾶν ἰδρῶτι καὶ σπουδῇ καὶ αὐτὸς κεκοσμημένος  
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπιδεικνύς σοι οὕτω πειθομένους; Κῦρος  
μὲν οὖν ταῦτα εἶπεν. ὁ δὲ Κναζάρης νομίσας αὐτὸν ὀρθῶς  
λέγειν ἐκάλεσε τοὺς Ἰνδούς. οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ εἰσελθόντες ἔλεξαν  
ὅτι πέμψειε σφᾶς ὁ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεὺς κελεύων ἐρωτᾶν ἐξ  
οὔτου ὁ πόλεμος εἴη Μήδοις τε καὶ τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ· ἐπεὶ δὲ σοῦ  
ἀκούσαμεν, ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθόντας αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον  
κακείνου ταῦτα πυθέσθαι· τέλος δ' ἀμφοτέροις εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν  
ὅτι ὁ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεὺς, τὸ δίκαιον σκεψάμενος, φαίη μετὰ  
τοῦ ἡδικημένου ἔσεσθαι. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κναζάρης εἶπεν·  
Ἐμοῦ μὲν τοῖνυν ἀκούετε ὅτι οὐκ ἀδικοῦμεν τὸν Ἀσσύριον  
οὐδέν· ἐκείνου δ', εἰ δεῖσθε, ἐλθόντες νῦν πύθεσθε ὅ τι λέγει.  
παρὼν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἤρετο τὸν Κναζάρην, ἥ καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη,  
εἶπω ὅ τι γινώσκω; καὶ ὁ Κναζάρης ἐκέλευσεν. Ὑμεῖς  
τοῖνυν, ἔφη, ἀπαγγείλατε τῷ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεῖ τάδε, εἰ μή  
τι ἄλλο Κναζάρῃ δοκεῖ, ὅτι φαμὲν ἡμεῖς, εἴ τί φησιν ὑφ'  
ἡμῶν ἀδικεῖσθαι ὁ Ἀσσύριος, αἰρεῖσθαι αὐτὸν τὸν Ἰνδῶν  
βασιλέα δικαστήν. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ᾤχοντο.

τὸ σέ |honor |sweat καὶ |zeal; (dat) with diffi-|marshal, array  
 |culty, hastily  
 καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους |display, |σοι οὕτω πειθόμενους; |authority;  
 |exhibit |validity  
 μὲν οὖν ταῦτα εἶπεν. ὁ δὲ Κναζάρης |consider ... cus- |ὀρθῶς  
 |tomary; believe  
 λέγειν ἐκάλεσε τοὺς Ἰνδούς. οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ εἰσελθόντες ἔλεξαν  
 ὅτι πέμψειε σφᾶς ὁ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεὺς κελεύων |ask ἐξ  
 ὅτου ὁ πόλεμος εἴη Μήδοις τε καὶ τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ· ἐπεὶ δὲ σοῦ  
 ἀκούσασιν, ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθόντας αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον  
 κακείνου ταῦτα |learn, |end δ' |both εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν  
 |inquire,  
 ὅτι ὁ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεὺς, τὸ δίκαιον |(+gen) hear |look, look at, watch', μετὰ  
 |of  
 τοῦ |be, do wrong; εἶπαι. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κναζάρης εἶπεν·  
 |wrong someone  
 Ἐμοῦ μὲν |well, then οὐτε ὅτι οὐκ |be, do wrong; Ἀσσύριον  
 |wrong someone  
 οὐδέν· ἐκείνου δ', εἰ δείσθε, ἐλθόντες νῦν πύθεσθε ὅτι λέγει.  
 παρὼν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἤρετο τὸν Κναζάρην, ἥ καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη,  
 εἰπω ὅτι γινώσκω; καὶ ὁ Κναζάρης ἐκέλευσεν. Ὑμεῖς  
 |well, then ἢ, |announce, or- τῷ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεῖ τάδε, εἰ μὴ  
 |der, promise  
 τι ἄλλο Κναζάρῃ δοκεῖ, ὅτι φημὲν ἡμεῖς, εἴ τί φησιν ὑφ'  
 ἡμῶν |be, do wrong; σύριος, αἰρεῖσθαι αὐτὸν τὸν Ἰνδῶν  
 |wrong someone  
 βασιλέα |judge, |οἱ μὲν δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες |come, go.  
 |juror

but the dust and sweat of speed, and make no display unless it be to show you these men who are as obedient to you as I am myself." Such were the words of Cyrus, and Cyaxares felt that they were just, and so sent for the Indian ambassadors forthwith. And when they entered they gave this message: — The king of the Indians bade them ask what was the cause of strife between the Assyrians and the Medes, "And when we have heard you," they said, "our king bids us betake ourselves to the Assyrian and put the same question to him, and in the end we are to tell you both that the king of the Indians, when he has enquired into the justice of the case, will uphold the cause of him who has been wronged."

To this Cyaxares replied:

"Then take from me this answer: we do the Assyrian no wrong nor any injustice whatsoever. And now go and make inquiry of him, if you are so minded, and see what answer he will give."

Then Cyrus, who was standing by, asked Cyaxares, "May I too say what is in my mind?" "Say on," answered Cyaxares. Then Cyrus turned to the ambassadors: "Tell your master," he said, "unless Cyaxares is otherwise minded, that we are ready to do this: if the Assyrian lays any injustice to our charge we choose the king of the Indians himself to be our judge, and he shall decide between us."

With that the

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on**ἀπροφάσιτος** unhesitating**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θηράω** hunt, chase**λυπέω** (ὀ) annoy, distress**οἶκοθεν** from home, from one's own  
resources ~economics**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how

great

**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**προδίδωμι** betray**πρόθυμος** (ὀ) willing, eager ~fume**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**συνεργός** cooperating; colleague**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**τοιόσδε** such**φθονέω** envy**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξήλθον οἱ Ἴνδοί, ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς τὸν Κναξάρην  
ἤρξατο λόγου τοιούδε.

ᾧ Κναξάρη, ἐγὼ μὲν ἦλθον οὐδέν τι πολλὰ ἔχων ἴδια  
χρήματα οἴκοθεν· ὅποσα δ' ἦν, τούτων πάννυ ὀλίγα  
λοιπὰ ἔχω· ἀνήλωκα δέ, ἔφη, εἰς τοὺς στρατιώτας·  
καὶ τοῦτο ἴσως, ἔφη, θαυμάζεις σὺ πῶς ἐγὼ ἀνήλωκα  
σοῦ αὐτοὺς τρέφοντος· εὖ δ' ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐδέν ἄλλο  
ποιῶν ἢ τιμῶν καὶ χαριζόμενος, ὅταν τινὲ ἀγασθῶ τῶν  
στρατιωτῶν. δοκεῖ γάρ μοι, ἔφη, πάντας μὲν οὓς ἂν τις  
βούληται ἀγαθοὺς συνεργοὺς ποιεῖσθαι ὁποίου τινὸς οὖν  
πράγματος, ἥδιον εἶναι εὖ τε λέγοντα καὶ εὖ ποιοῦντα  
παρορμᾶν μᾶλλον ἢ λυποῦντα καὶ ἀναγκάζοντα· οὓς δὲ  
δὴ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων ποιήσασθαι τις βούλοιτο  
συνεργοὺς προθύμους, τούτους παντάπασιν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ  
ἀγαθοῖς θηρατέον εἶναι καὶ λόγοις καὶ ἔργοις. φίλους γάρ,  
οὐκ ἐχθροὺς, δεῖ εἶναι τοὺς μέλλοντας ἀπροφασίστους  
συμμάχους ἔσεσθαι καὶ μήτε τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς τοῦ ἄρχοντος  
φθονήσοντας μήτ' ἐν τοῖς κακοῖς προδῶσοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν



Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξῆλθον οἱ Ἴνδοί, ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς τὸν Κναξάρην  
 ἤρξατο λόγου |such .

ᾧ Κναξάρη, ἐγὼ μὲν ἦλθον οὐδέν τι πολλὰ ἔχων ἴδια

|possession, |from home |as/how many/great . οὕτων |altogether, very  
 money,  
 business

λοιπὰ ἔχω· |consume, δέ, ἔφη, εἰς τοὺς |soldier,  
 |spend on |mercenary

καὶ τοῦτο ἴσως, ἔφη, |marvel σὺ |how? why? |consume,  
 |spend on

σοῦ αὐτοὺς |nurture εὖ δ' ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐδὲν ἄλλο

ποιῶν ἢ τιμῶν καὶ |gratify , |whenever |exalt,  
 |adore

|soldier, δοκεῖ γάρ μοι, ἔφη, πάντας μὲν οὖς ἄν τις  
 |mercenary

βούληται ἀγαθοὺς |cooperating; .τοιεῖσθαι |whatever kind οὖν  
 colleague

|deed, fact, |sweet εἶναι εὖ τε λέγοντα καὶ εὖ ποιῶντα  
 thing, affair;  
 difficulty

παρῶν μᾶλλον ἢ |annoy, καὶ |force, compel οὖς δὲ  
 |distress

δὴ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων ποιήσασθαι τις βούλοιο

|cooperating; |willing, , τούτους |altogether; ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ  
 colleague |eager |yes, certainly

ἀγαθοῖς |hunt, εἶναι καὶ λόγοις καὶ ἔργοις. φίλους γάρ,  
 |chase

οὐκ |hated, distasteful ἵαι τοὺς μέλλοντας |unhesitating

συμμάχους ἔσεσθαι καὶ |neither οἷς ἀγαθοῖς τοῦ ἄρχοντος

|envy |neither τοῖς κακοῖς προδώσοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν

embassy departed. And when they had gone out Cyrus turned to his uncle and began, "Cyaxares, when I came to you I had scant wealth of my own and of the little I brought with me only a fragment is left. I have spent it all on my soldiers. You may wonder at this," he added, "when it is you who have supported them, but, believe me, the money has not been wasted: it has all been spent on gifts and rewards to the soldiers who deserved it. And I am sure," he added, "if we require good workers and good comrades in any task whatever, it is better and pleasanter to encourage them by kind speeches and kindly acts than to drive them by pains and penalties. And if it is for war that we need such trusty helpers, we can only win the men we want by every charm of word and grace of deed. For our true ally must be a friend and not a foe, one who can never envy the prosperity of his leader nor betray him in the day of disaster.

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἄτοπος** strange, unnatural, disgusting  
**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive  
**καταφρονέω** scorn; think of  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**οἷκησις** -εως (f) habitation  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσθέω** run to  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**σκοπάω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἐγὼ οὕτω προγιγνώσκων χρημάτων δοκῶ προσδεῖσθαι.  
 πρὸς μὲν οὖν σέ πάντας ὁρᾶν ὃν αἰσθάνομαι πολλὰ  
 δαπανῶντα ἄτοπόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι· σκοπεῖν δ' ἀξιῶ κοινῇ  
 καὶ σέ καὶ ἐμέ ὅπως σέ μὴ ἐπιλείψει χρήματα. ἐὰν γὰρ σὺ  
 ἄφθονα ἔχῃς, οἶδα ὅτι καὶ ἐμοὶ ἂν εἴη λαμβάνειν ὅποτε  
 δεοίμην, ἄλλως τε καὶ εἰ εἰς τοιοῦτόν τι λαμβάνοιμι ὃ  
 μέλλοι καὶ σοὶ δαπανηθὲν βέλτιον εἶναι. ἔναγχος οὖν ποτέ  
 σου μέμνημαι ἀκούσας ὡς ὁ Ἀρμένιος καταφρονοίῃ σου  
 νῦν, ὅτι ἀκούει τοὺς πολεμίους προσιόντας ἡμῖν, καὶ οὔτε  
 τὸ στράτευμα πέμποι οὔτε τὸν δασμὸν ὃν ἔδει ἀπάγοι.  
 Ποιεῖ γὰρ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐκεῖνος· ὥστε ἔγωγε  
 ἀπορῶ πότερόν μοι κρεῖττον στρατεύεσθαι καὶ πειρᾶσθαι  
 ἀνάγκην αὐτῷ προσθεῖναι ἢ ἐᾶσαι ἐν τῷ παρόντι, μὴ καὶ  
 τοῦτον πολέμιον πρὸς τοῖς ἄλλοις προσθώμεθα. καὶ ὁ  
 Κῦρος ἐπήρετο· Αἱ δ' οἰκήσεις αὐτῷ πότερον ἐν ἐχυροῖς  
 χωρίοις εἰσὶν ἢ καὶ που ἐν εὐεφόδοις; καὶ ὁ Κναξάρης  
 εἶπεν· Αἱ μὲν οἰκήσεις οὐ πάνυ ἐν ἐχυροῖς· ἐγὼ γὰρ τούτου  
 οὐκ ἡμέλουν· ὄρη μέντοι ἔστιν ἔνθα δύναται ἂν

ἐγὼ οὕτω προγιγνώσκων |possession, money, business ὁ προσδεῖσθαι.  
 πρὸς μὲν οὖν σὲ πάντας ὁρᾶν ὃν |perceive πολλὰ

|spend, consume, waste con-|strange, unnatural, disgusting -κεῖ εἶναι· σκοπεῖν δ' |consider worth-  
 thy, fitting

καὶ σὲ καὶ ἐμὲ ὅπως σὲ μὴ ἐπιλεύσει |possession, money, business ἄρ σὺ  
 |ungrudgingly, plentiful οἶδα ὅτι καὶ ἐμοὶ ἂν εἴη λαμβάνειν |when

δεοίμην, ἄλλως τε καὶ εἰ εἰς τοιοῦτόν τι λαμβάνοιμι ὃ

μέλλοι καὶ σοὶ |spend, consume, waste βέλτιον εἶναι. ἔναγχος οὖν ποτέ

σου |remind; (mid) remember, ὁ Ἀρμένιος |scorn; think of σου  
 |turn one's thoughts to

νῦν, ὅτι ἀκούει τοὺς πολεμίους προσιόντας ἡμῖν, καὶ οὔτε

τὸ |army πέμποι οὔτε τὸν |portion, tax, tribute ἔδει |lead away, back

Ποιεῖ γὰρ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐκεῖνος· ὥστε ἔγωγε

ἀπορῶ |which, whichever, οἱ κρεῖττον |make an expedition, try, test  
 |war, campaign

|necessity αὐτῷ |add; impose; (mp) agree; side with  
 |ai ἐν τῷ παρόντι, μὴ καὶ

τοῦτον πολέμιον πρὸς τοῖς ἄλλοις προσθώμεθα. καὶ ὁ

Κῦρος |ask as well; ask then Αἱ δ' οἰκήσεις αὐτῷ |which, whichever ἔν |secure; persuasive

|area; downwards, καί που ἐν εὐεφόδοις; καὶ ὁ Κναξάρης

εἶπεν· Αἱ μὲν οἰκήσεις οὐ |altogether, very ἔν |secure; persuasive  
 |persuasive

οὐκ |disregard |mouth, however ὅτι ἐνθα δύναιτ' ἂν  
 |tain

Such is my conviction, and such being so, I do not hide from myself the need of money. But to look to you for everything, when I know that you spend so much already, would be monstrous in my eyes. I only ask that we should take counsel together so as to prevent the failure of your funds. I am well aware that if you won great wealth, I should be able to help myself at need, especially if I used it for your own advantage. Now I think you told me the other day that the king of Armenia has begun to despise you, because he hears we have an enemy, and therefore he will neither send you troops nor pay the tribute which is due.”

”Yes,” answered Cyaxares, ”such are his tricks. And I cannot decide whether to march on him at once and try to subdue him by force, or let the matter be for the time, for fear of adding to the enemies we have.” Then Cyrus asked, ”Are his dwellings strongly fortified, or could they be attacked?” And Cyaxares answered, ”The actual fortifications are not very strong; I took good care of that. But he has the hill-country to which he can retire, and there for

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαρασκευάστος** unprepared  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**ἐλπίζω** (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)  
 cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**μέτριος** medium, moderate  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so

**παραχρῆμα** on the spot  
**πότε** when?  
**προσκάθημαι** sit by; besiege  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue  
**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral

ἀπελθὼν ἐν τῷ παραχρήμα ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ εἶναι τοῦ μὴ αὐτός γε ὑποχείριος γενέσθαι, μηδὲ ὅσα ἐνταῦθα δύναιτο ὑπεκκομίσασθαι, εἰ μὴ τις πολιορκοίῃ προσκαθήμενος, ὥσπερ καὶ ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ ποτε ἐποίησεν. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει τάδε· Ἄλλ' εἰ θέλοις, ἔφη, ἐμὲ πέμψαι, ἱππέας μοι προσθεῖς ὅπόσοι δοκοῦσι μέτριοι εἶναι, οἶμαι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ποιῆσαι αὐτὸν καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πέμψαι καὶ ἀποδοῦναι τὸν δασμόν σοι· ἔτι δ' ἐλπίζω καὶ φίλον αὐτὸν μάλλον ἡμῖν γενήσεσθαι ἢ νῦν ἐστι. καὶ ὁ Κναξάρης εἶπε· Καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἐλπίζω ἐκείνους ἐλθεῖν ἂν πρὸς σὲ μάλλον ἢ πρὸς ἐμέ· ἀκούω γὰρ καὶ συνθηρευτάς τινας τῶν παίδων σοι γενέσθαι αὐτοῦ· ὥστ' ἴσως ἂν καὶ πάλιν ἔλθοιεν πρὸς σέ· ὑποχειρίων δὲ γενομένων αὐτῶν πάντα πραχθείη ἂν ἢ ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα. Οὐκοῦν σοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, σύμφορον εἶναι τὸ λεληθέναι ἡμᾶς ταῦτα βουλευόντας; Μάλλον γὰρ ἂν, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης, καὶ ἔλθοι τις αὐτῶν εἰς χεῖρας, καὶ εἴ τις ὀρμῶτο ἐπ' αὐτούς, ἀπαρασκεύαστοι ἂν λαμβάνοιντο. ἄκουε τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἣν τί σοι δόξω



ἀπελθὼν ἐν τῷ |on the spot ἐν |safe, easy, ι τοῦ μὴ  
 |steady, careful  
 αὐτός γε |under one's hand\_ \_θαι, |and \_not;|there, here\_ύναιτο  
 |not even  
 ὑπεκκομίσασθαι, εἰ μὴ τις |besiege |sit by; besiege ,  
 ὥσπερ καὶ ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ ποτε ἐποίησεν. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ  
 Κῦρος λέγει τάδε· Ἄλλ' εἰ θέλοις, ἔφη, ἐμὲ πέμψαι, |rider  
 μοι |add; |as/how many/great |medium, ἵναι, οἶμαι ἂν σὺν  
 |impose; |moderate  
 (mp) agree;  
 τοῖς |side with ποιῆσαι αὐτὸν καὶ τὸ |army πέμψαι καὶ  
 |repay τὸν |portion, ι ἔτι δ' |(mid, pf) hope, expect; (act) cause to do  
 |tax, tribute |so (rare)  
 μᾶλλον ἡμῖν γενήσεσθαι ἢ νῦν ἐστι. καὶ ὁ Κυαξάρης εἶπε·  
 Καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη, |(mid, pf) -hope, expect; ἂν πρὸς σέ μᾶλλον ἢ  
 |(act) cause to do so (rare)  
 πρὸς ἐμέ· ἀκούω γὰρ καὶ συνθηρευτάς τινας τῶν παίδων  
 σοι γενέσθαι αὐτοῦ· ὥστ' |equal ἂν καὶ πάλιν ἔλθοιεν πρὸς  
 σέ· |under one's hand, νομένων αὐτῶν πάντα πραχθείη ἂν  
 ἢ ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα. |not so?; and so\_ \_κεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,  
 |accompanying; ι τὸ |escape notice; ταῦτα |(mp) to deliberate  
 |suitable |(mp+gen) forget  
 Μᾶλλον γὰρ ἂν, ἔφη ὁ Κυαξάρης, καὶ ἔλθοι τις αὐτῶν  
 εἰς χεῖρας, καὶ εἴ τις |spur, rush 'at' αὐτούς, |unprepared  
 ἂν λαμβάνοντο. ἄκουε |well, then\_ \_η ὁ Κῦρος, ἦν τί σοι  
 δόξω

the moment lie secure, knowing that he himself is safely out of reach, with everything that he can convoy thither; unless we are prepared to carry on a siege, as my father actually did."

Thereupon Cyrus said, "Now if you are willing to send me with a moderate force of cavalry—I will not ask for many men—I believe, heaven helping me, I could compel him to send the troops and the tribute. And I even hope that in the future he may become a firmer friend that he is now." And Cyaxares said: "I think myself they are more likely to listen to you than to me. I have been told that his sons were your companions in the chase when you were lads, and possibly old habits will return and they will come over to you. Once they were in our power, everything could be done as we desire." "Then," said Cyrus, "this plan of ours had better be kept secret, had it not?" "No doubt," answered Cyaxares. "In that way they would be more likely to fall into our hands, and if we attack them they would be taken unprepared."

"Listen then," said Cyrus, "and see what you think of this. I have often hunted the

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology

**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy  
~stand

**εἴωθα** be accustomed, in the habit

**ἐκεῖσε** thither

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither

**ἐνθένδε** hence

**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel

**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive

**θήρα** hunt ~fierce

**θηράω** hunt, chase

**ἶον** violet (flower)

**κατασκευάζω** equip, build

**μέτριος** medium, moderate

**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic

**ὄριον** boundary

**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out

**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold,  
help

**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far

**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
prediction ~fame

**τοίνυν** well, then

**ὑποπτεύω** guess, observe, be  
suspicious of

**ὑποπτος** untrusted, suspicious

**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

**φανερόω** demonstrate ~photon

**φρούριον** fort

λέγειν. ἐγὼ πολλάκις δὴ σὺν πᾶσι τοῖς μετ' ἐμοῦ τεθήρακα  
ἀμφὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς τε σῆς χώρας καὶ τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενίων,  
καὶ ἱππέας τινὰς ἤδη προσλαβὼν τῶν ἐνθένδε ἐταίρων  
ἀφικόμην. Τὰ μὲν τοίνυν ὅμοια ποιῶν, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης,  
οὐκ ἂν ὑποπτεύοιο· εἰ δὲ πολὺν πλείων ἢ δύναμις φαίνοιτο  
ῆς ἔχων εἴωθας θηρᾶν, τοῦτο ἤδη ὑποπτον ἂν γένοιτο.  
Ἄλλ' ἔστιν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ πρόφασιν κατασκευάσαι  
καὶ ἐνθάδε οὐκ ἄπιστον, καὶ ἦν τις ἐκείσε ἐξαγγείλῃ,  
ὥς ἐγὼ βουλοίμην μεγάλην θήρην ποιῆσαι· καὶ ἱππέας,  
ἔφη, αἰτοίην ἄν σε ἐκ τοῦ φανεροῦ. Κάλλιστα λέγεις,  
ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης· ἐγὼ δέ σοι οὐκ ἐθελήσω διδόναι πλὴν  
μετρίους τινάς, ὥς βουλόμενος πρὸς τὰ φρούρια ἐλθεῖν  
τὰ πρὸς τῇ Ἀσσυρίᾳ. καὶ γὰρ τῷ ὄντι, ἔφη, βούλομαι  
ἐλθὼν κατασκευάσαι αὐτὰ ὥς ἐχυρώτατα. ὁπότε δὲ σὺ  
προεληλυθοῖς σὺν ἡ ἔχοις δυνάμει καὶ θηρώῃς καὶ δὴ δύο  
ἡμέρας, πέμψαμι ἄν σοι ἱκανοὺς ἱππέας καὶ πεζοὺς τῶν  
παρ' ἐμοὶ ἡθροισμένων, οὓς σὺ λαβὼν εὐθὺς ἂν ἴοις, καὶ  
αὐτὸς δ' ἂν ἔχων τὴν ἄλλην δύναμιν πειρώμην μὴ πρόσω

λέγειν. ἐγὼ |often δὴ σὺν πᾶσι τοῖς μετ' ἐμοῦ |hunt, chase  
ἀμφὶ τὰ |boundary τε σῆς χώρας καὶ τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενίων,  
καὶ ἱππέας τινὰς ἤδη |add, borrow, take|hence ἐταίρων  
|hold, help  
ἀφικόμην. Τὰ μὲν |well, |like ποιῶν, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης,  
|then  
οὐκ ἂν |guess, observe, δὲ πολὺ πλείων ἢ δύναμις φαίνοιτο  
|be suspicious of  
ῆς ἔχων |be accus-|hunt, , τοῦτο ἤδη |untrusted, ἂν γένοιτο.  
|tomed, |chase |suspicious  
Ἄλλ' ἔστιν |in the ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ |pretext; mo-|equip, build  
|habit |tive; predic-  
καὶ |here, οὐκ |not trusting, not ἦν τις |thither |bring news out  
|hither |trustworthy  
ὥς ἐγὼ βουλόμην μεγάλην |hunt ποιῆσαι· καὶ ἱππέας,  
ἔφη, |ask for ἂν σε ἐκ τοῦ φανεροῦ. Κάλλιστα λέγεις,  
ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης· ἐγὼ δέ σοι οὐκ ἐθελήσω διδόναι πλὴν  
|medium, τινάς, ὥς βουλόμενος πρὸς τὰ |fort ἐλθεῖν  
|moderate  
τὰ πρὸς τῇ Ἀσσυρίᾳ. καὶ γὰρ τῷ ὄντι, ἔφη, βούλομαι  
ἐλθὼν |equip, build αὐτὰ ὥς |secure; . |when δὲ σὺ  
|persuasive  
|proceed, come out ἔν ᾗ ἔχοις δυνάμει καὶ |hunt, καὶ δὴ δύο  
|chase  
ἡμέρας, πέμψαιμι ἂν σοι ἱκανοὺς ἱππέας καὶ |on foot; footsoldier  
παρ' ἐμοὶ |press close together; σὺ λαβὼν εὐθὺς ἂν |violet (flower)  
|(mid) muster  
αὐτὸς δ' ἂν ἔχων τὴν ἄλλην δύναμιν πειρώμενη μὴ |forward, in the fu-  
|ture; far

marches between your country and Armenia with all my men, and sometimes I have taken horsemen with me from our comrades here." "I see," said Cyaxares, "and if you chose to do the like again it would seem only natural, but if your force was obviously larger than usual, suspicion would arise at once." "But it is possible," said Cyrus, "to frame a pretext which would find credit with us and with them too, if any rumour reached them. We might give out that I intend to hold a splendid hunt and I might ask you openly for a troop of horse."

"Admirable!" said Cyaxares. "And I shall refuse to give you more than a certain number, my reason being that I wish to visit the outposts on the Syrian side. And as a matter of fact," he added, "I do wish to see them and put them in as strong a state as possible. Then, as soon as you have started with your men, and marched, let us say, for a couple of days, I could send you a good round number of horse and foot from my own detachment. And when you have them at your back, you could advance at once, and I will follow with the rest of my men as near

*vocabulary***ἄγρᾱ** hunting, prey**ἄετός** eagle ~avis**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster**αἶσα** -εως share, fate; properly, duly ~etiology**αἶσιος** auspicious ~etiology**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐπιπέτομαι** fly at ~petal**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon**ἐπιφέρω** bestow, impute ~bear**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**θηράω** hunt, chase**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**λαγώς** -ω (m, 2) hare ~lagomorph**λαγώς** hare ~lagomorph**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop**ὄριον** boundary**παίζω** play ~pediatrician**παίω** hit**πορεία** gait, march**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**σημείον** sign**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**συναρπάζω** snatch with**φρούριον** fort**χωρίον** area; downwards

ύμῶν εἶναι, ἵνα, εἴ που καιρὸς εἴη, ἐπιφανείην.

Οὕτω δὴ ὁ μὲν Κναξάρης εὐθέως πρὸς τὰ φρούρια ἤθροιζεν ἱππέας καὶ πεζούς, καὶ ἀμάξας δὲ σίτου προέπεμπε τὴν ἐπὶ τὰ φρούρια ὁδόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ, καὶ ἅμα πέμπων ἐπὶ τὸν Κναξάρην ἦτει τῶν νεωτέρων ἱππέων. ὁ δὲ πάνυ πολλῶν βουλομένων ἔπεσθαι οὐ πολλοὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ. προεληλυθότος δ' ἤδη τοῦ Κναξάρου σὺν δυνάμει πεζῇ καὶ ἱππικῇ τὴν πρὸς τὰ φρούρια ὁδὸν γίγνεται τῷ Κύρῳ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀρμένιον ἰέναι καλὰ· καὶ οὕτως ἐξάγει δὴ ὥς εἰς θήραν παρεσκευασμένος. πορευομένῳ δ' αὐτῷ εὐθύς ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ χωρίῳ ὑπανίσταται λαγῶς· αἰετὸς δ' ἐπιπτόμενος αἰσιος, κατιδὼν τὸν λαγῶ φεύγοντα, ἐπιφερόμενος ἔπαισέ τε αὐτὸν καὶ συναρπάσας ἐξῆρε, κάπενεγκὼν ἐπὶ λόφον τινὰ οὐ πρόσω ἐχρήτο τῇ ἄγρᾳ ὅ τι ἤθελεν. ἰδὼν οὖν ὁ Κῦρος τὸ σημεῖον ἦσθη τε καὶ προσεκύνησε Δία βασιλέα, καὶ εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς παρόντας· Ἡ μὲν θήρα καλὴ ἔσται, ᾧ ἄνδρες, ἣν ὁ θεὸς θελήσῃ. ὥς δὲ πρὸς τοῖς ὁρίοις



ὑμῶν εἶναι, ἴνα, εἴ που καιρὸς εἴη, |display

Οὕτω δὴ ὁ μὲν Κναξάρης εὐθέως πρὸς τὰ |fort

|press close together; (mid) muster καὶ πεζούς, καὶ |wagon δὲ |grain, bread, food  
|send, send ahead ἐπὶ τὰ |fort ὁδόν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |rush; sacrifice

ἐπὶ τῇ |gait, march, καὶ ἅμα πέμπων ἐπὶ τὸν Κναξάρην |ask for

τῶν νεωτέρων ἱππέων. ὁ δὲ πάνυ πολλῶν βουλομένων

ἔπεσθαι οὐ πολλοὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ. |proceed, come out ὧ

ἤδη τοῦ Κναξάρου σὺν δυνάμει πεζῇ καὶ |of horses ἤν

πρὸς τὰ |fort ὁδὸν γίγνεται τῷ Κύρῳ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπὶ

τὸν Ἀρμένιον ἰέναι καλὰ· καὶ οὕτως |lead out ἢ ὥς εἰς

|hunt παρεσκευασμένους. πορευομένῳ δ' αὐτῷ εὐθὺς ἐν τῷ

πρώτῳ |area; downwards ται λαγῶς· |eagle δ' |fly at

αἷσιος, |look down ὃν λαγῶ φεύγοντα, |bestow, impute ἔπαισέ

τε αὐτὸν καὶ |snatch with ἐξῆρε, κάπενεγκὼν ἐπὶ |neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

τινὰ οὐ |forward, in the future; far ο τῇ ἄγρα ὅ τι ἤθελεν. ἰδὼν οὖν ὁ

Κῦρος τὸ |sign |be pleased, ἐν-|kow tow to; kiss ἅ βασιλέα,

καὶ εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς παρόντας· Ἡ μὲν θήρα καλὴ ἔσται, ὦ

ἄνδρες, ἣν ὁ θεὸς θελήσῃ. ὥς δὲ πρὸς τοῖς |boundary

you as I may, close enough to appear in time of need.”

Accordingly, Cyaxares proceeded to muster horse and foot for his own march, and sent provision-waggons forward to meet him on the road. Meanwhile Cyrus offered sacrifice for the success of his expedition and found an opportunity to ask Cyaxares for a troop of his junior cavalry. But Cyaxares would only spare a few, though many wished to go. Soon afterwards he started for the outposts himself with all his horse and foot, and then Cyrus found the omens favourable for his enterprise, and led his soldiers out as though he meant to hunt. He was scarcely on his way when a hare started up at their feet, and an eagle, flying on the right, saw the creature as it fled, swooped down and struck it, bore it aloft in its talons to a cliff hard by, and did its will upon it there. The omen pleased Cyrus well, and he bowed in worship to Zeus the King, and said to his company, "This shall be a right noble hunt, my friends, if God so will."

When he came to

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δείπνον** meal, food  
**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner  
**δείπνος** meal, food  
**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**εἴωθα** be accustomed, in the habit  
**ἔλαφος** (f) deer  
**ἐνίστημι** install; threaten; block  
**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce  
**θηράω** hunt, chase  
**λάσχω** cry, crack, ring  
**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease ~lax  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager  
**ὀρέγω** hold out, offer, thrust ~reach  
**ὄριον** boundary  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km

**πέζα** end of a chariot pole  
**πρόοιδα** foresee  
**προοράω** see before oneself  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**προσιέγνυμι** (ὅ) reach out to, approach  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject  
**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer ~doctrine  
**ὑποπέμπω** send to, send secretly  
**ὑς** pig ~sow  
**ὑστεραίος** the next; later

ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς ὥσπερ εἰώθει ἐθήρα· καὶ τὸ μὲν πλῆθος τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ἱππέων ὥγμευον αὐτῷ, ὡς ἐπιόντες τὰ θηρία ἐξανισταῖεν· οἱ δὲ ἄριστοι καὶ πεζοὶ καὶ ἱππεῖς διέστασαν καὶ τάνιστάμενα ὑπεδέχοντο καὶ ἐδίωκον· καὶ ἥρουν πολλοὺς καὶ σὺς καὶ ἐλάφους καὶ δορκάδας καὶ ὄνους ἀγρίους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἐν τούτοις τοῖς τόποις ὄνοι καὶ νῦν ἔτι γίνονται. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔληξε τῆς θήρας, προσμείζας πρὸς τὰ ὄρια τῶν Ἀρμενίων ἐδειπνοποιήσατο· καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ αὐθις ἐθήρα προσελθὼν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ὧν ὠρέγετο. ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ ἔληξεν, ἐδειπνοποιεῖτο. τὸ δὲ παρὰ Κναξάρου στράτευμα ὡς ἦσθετο προσιόν, ὑποπέμψας πρὸς αὐτοὺς εἶπεν ἀπέχοντας αὐτοῦ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι ὡς δύο παρασάγγας, τοῦτο προῖδὼν ὡς συμβαλεῖται πρὸς τὸ λανθάνειν· ἐπεὶ δὲ δειπνήσαιεν, εἶπε τῷ ἄρχοντι αὐτῶν παρεῖναι πρὸς αὐτόν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον τοὺς ταξιάρχους παρεκάλει· ἐπεὶ δὲ παρήσαν, ἔλεξεν ὧδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὁ Ἀρμένιος πρόσθεν μὲν καὶ σύμμαχος ἦν καὶ ὑπήκοος Κναξάρῃ· νῦν δὲ ὡς ἦσθετο τοὺς πολεμίους

ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς ὥσπερ |be |hunt, |καὶ τὸ μὲν πληθὺς  
 |accus- |chase  
 τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ἵππων ὄγγμενον αὐτῷ, ὥς |lie upon; approach  
 |in the  
 τὰ θηρία ἐξανισταῖεν· οἱ δὲ ἄριστοι καὶ πεζοὶ καὶ ἵππεις  
 |stand apart καὶ τάνιστάμενα |welcome, ac- καὶ ἐδίωκον· καὶ  
 |cept, suffer  
 ἦρουν πολλοὺς καὶ |pig καὶ |deer καὶ δορκάδας καὶ  
 |don- |wild, πολλοὶ γὰρ ἐν τούτοις τοῖς τόποις |donkey...  
 |key |savage  
 νῦν ἔτι γίγνονται. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔληξε τῆς θήρας, |reach out to,  
 |approach  
 πρὸς τὰ |boundary Ἀρμενίων |make dinner καὶ τῇ  
 |the next; later ἔθις |hunt, |come forward, sur- τὰ ὄρη ὧν  
 |chase |render, come in  
 |hold out, of- ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ ἔληξεν, |make dinner τὸ δὲ παρὰ  
 |fer, thrust  
 Κυαξάρου |army ὥς |perceive προσιόν, |send to, send  
 |secretly  
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς εἶπεν |ward off, drive off, re- |make dinner ὥς  
 |frain, be at some dis-  
 δύο |ca. 5 km , τοῦτο προιδὼν ὥς |pit against; compare; mp: meet,  
 |fall in with  
 τὸ λανθάνειν· ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat, dine , εἶπε τῷ ἄρχοντι αὐτῶν  
 παρεῖναι πρὸς αὐτόν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον τοὺς |military rank  
 παρεκάλει· ἐπεὶ δὲ παρήσαν, ἔλεξεν ὦδε.  
 Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὁ Ἀρμένιος πρόσθεν μὲν καὶ σύμμαχος ἦν  
 καὶ |heeding, Κυαξάρῃ· νῦν δὲ ὥς |perceive τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |subject

the borders he began the hunt in his usual way, the mass of horse and foot going on ahead in rows like reapers, beating out the game, with picked men posted at intervals to receive the animals and give them chase. And thus they took great numbers of boars and stags and antelopes and wild-asses: even to this day wild-asses are plentiful in those parts. But when the chase was over, Cyrus had touched the frontier of the Armenian land, and there he made the evening meal. The next day he hunted till he reached the mountains which were his goal. And there he halted again and made the evening meal. At this point he knew that the army from Cyaxares was advancing, and he sent secretly to them and bade them keep about eight miles off, and take their evening meal where they were, since that would make for secrecy. And when their meal was over he told them to send their officers to him, and after supper he called his own brigadiers together and addressed them thus:

"My friends, in old days the Armenian was a faithful ally and subject of Cyaxares, but now when he sees an enemy

*vocabulary***δασμός** portion, tax, tribute**δασύς** hairy, brushy**ἐμποδών** getting in the way**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**θηράω** hunt, chase**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
~fugitive**καταφρονέω** scorn; think of**κλώψ** thief**κωλύω** (ῶ) hinder, prevent**ληιστής** -οῦς (m, 3) bandit**ληιστός** lootable ~lucre**ληιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) bandit**μέτριος** medium, moderate**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὄρεινός** mountainous**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**Πέρσης** Persian**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp**στολή** equipment**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
understand ~epilepsy

ἐπιόντας, καταφρονεῖ καὶ οὔτε τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει  
 ἡμῖν οὔτε τὸν δασμὸν ἀποδίδωσι. νῦν οὖν τοῦτον  
 θηράσαι, ἣν δυνώμεθα, ἤλθομεν. ὦδε οὖν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ  
 ποιεῖν. σὺ μὲν, ὦ Χρυσάντα, ἐπειδὰν ἀποκοιμηθῇς ὅσον  
 μέτριον, λαβὼν τοὺς ἡμίσεις Περσῶν τῶν σὺν ἡμῖν ἴθι  
 τὴν ὀρεινὴν καὶ κατάλαβε τὰ ὄρη, εἰς ἃ φασιν αὐτόν,  
 ὅταν τι φοβηθῇ, καταφεύγειν· ἡγεμόνας δέ σοι ἐγὼ  
 δώσω. φασὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ δασέα τὰ ὄρη ταῦτα εἶναι,  
 ὥστ' ἐλπίς ὑμᾶς μὴ ὀφθῆναι· ὅμως δὲ εἰ προπέμποις  
 πρὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος εὐζώνους ἄνδρας ληισταῖς ἐοικότας  
 καὶ τὸ πλῆθος καὶ τὰς στολάς, οὗτοι ἂν σοι, εἴ τιτι  
 ἐντυγχάνοιεν τῶν Ἀρμενίων, τοὺς μὲν ἂν συλλαμβάνοντες  
 αὐτῶν κωλύοιεν τῶν ἐξαγγελιῶν, οὓς δὲ μὴ δύναιντο  
 λαμβάνειν, ἀποσοβοῦντες ἂν ἐμποδὼν γίγνοιτο τοῦ μὴ  
 ὁρᾶν αὐτοὺς τὸ ὅλον στράτευμά σου, ἀλλ' ὥς περὶ  
 κλωπῶν βουλευέσθαι. καὶ σὺ μὲν, ἔφη, οὕτω ποίει· ἐγὼ δὲ  
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοὺς ἡμίσεις μὲν τῶν πεζῶν ἔχων, πάντας  
 δὲ τοὺς ἱππέας, πορεύσομαι διὰ τοῦ πεδίου εὐθὺς



|lie upon; ap-|scorn; think καὶ οὐτε τὸ |army πέμπει  
 |proach |of  
 ἡμῖν οὐτε τὸν |portion, |repay . νῦν οὖν τοῦτον  
 |tax, tribute  
 |hunt, , ἦν δυνώμεθα, ἤλθομεν. |thus οὖν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ  
 |chase  
 ποιεῖν. σὺ μὲν, ὦ Χρυσάντα, |when, ἀποκοιμηθῆς ὅσον  
 |after  
 |medium, λαβὼν τοὺς |half Περσῶν τῶν σὺν ἡμῖν ἴθι  
 |moderate  
 τὴν ὀρεινὴν καὶ |seize, understand, catch, ἃ φασιν αὐτόν,  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 ὅταν τι φοβηθῇ, |resort to, flee to, |leader δέ σοι ἐγὼ  
 |appeal to  
 δώσω. φασὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ |hairy, τὰ ὄρη ταῦτα εἶναι,  
 |brushy  
 ὥστ' |hope ὑμᾶς μὴ ὀφθῆναι· |anyway, never-|send, send ahead  
 |theless  
 πρὸ τοῦ |army |well-girded ἀνδρας λησταῖς ἐοικότας  
 καὶ τὸ πλῆθος καὶ τὰς |equipment ὕτοι ἂν σοι, εἴ τι  
 ἐντυγχάνοιεν τῶν Ἀρμενίων, τοὺς μὲν ἂν |seize, capture; un-  
 |derstand  
 αὐτῶν |hinder, τῶν ἐξαγγελιῶν, οὓς δὲ μὴ δύναιτο  
 |prevent  
 λαμβάνειν, ἀποσοβοῦντες ἂν |getting in the way.. το τοῦ μὴ  
 ὁρᾶν αὐτοὺς τὸ ὅλον |army σου, ἀλλ' ὥς περὶ  
 |thief |(mp) to deliberate ὃ σὺ μὲν, ἔφη, οὕτω ποίει· ἐγὼ δὲ  
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοὺς |half μὲν τῶν πεζῶν ἔχων, πάντας  
 δὲ τοὺς |rider , πορεύσομαι διὰ τοῦ |plain, sea ἄθως

against us, he assumes contempt: he neither sends the troops nor pays the tribute. He is the game we have come to catch, if catch we can. And this, I think, is the way. You, Chrysantas," said he, "will sleep for a few hours, and then take half the Persians with you, make for the hill country, and seize the heights which we hear are his places of refuge when alarmed. I will give you guides. The hills, they tell us, are covered with trees and scrub, so that we may hope you will escape unseen: still you might send a handful of scouts ahead of you, disguised as a band of robbers. If they should come across any Armenians they can either make them prisoners and prevent them from spreading the news, or at least scare them out of the way, so that they will not realise the whole of your force, and only take measures against a pack of thieves. That is your task, Chrysantas, and now for mine. At break of day I shall take half the foot and all the cavalry and march along the level straight to the

*vocabulary***ἀποτρέπω** divert from ~trophy**ἄρκυς** net**ἄυπνος** sleepless**βασίλεια** noblewoman**βασίλειος** kingly**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**δύσβατος** impassable**ἐνίοτε** sometimes**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**κινέω** (i) set in motion, move, remove

~kinetic

**μάσσω** handle, knead ~mass**μέτριος** medium, moderate**μητις** -ος (f) counsel, skill, plan ~meter**ὅπη** wherever, however**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander

~plankton

**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare**πραγματεύομαι** work at**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ὑποχωρέω** recoil ~heir**ὕφηγέομαι** lead the way**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**φράσσω** fence in, protect

πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια. καὶ ἦν μὲν ἀνθιστῆται, δῆλον ὅτι  
 μάχεσθαι δεήσει· ἦν δ' αὖ ὑποχωρῇ τοῦ πεδίου, δῆλον ὅτι  
 μεταθεῖν δεήσει· ἦν δ' εἰς τὰ ὄρη φεύγῃ, ἐνταῦθα δὴ, ἔφη,  
 σὸν ἔργον μηδένα ἀφίεναι τῶν πρὸς σὲ ἀφικνουμένων.  
 νόμιζε δὲ ὥσπερ ἐν θήρᾳ ἡμᾶς μὲν τοὺς ἐπιζητοῦντας  
 ἔσεσθαι, σὲ δὲ τὸν ἐπὶ ταῖς ἄρκυσι· μέμνησο οὖν ἐκείνο  
 ὅτι φθάνειν δεῖ πεφραγμένους τοὺς πόρους πρὶν κινεῖσθαι  
 τὴν θήραν. καὶ λεληθέναι δὲ δεῖ τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῖς στόμασιν, εἰ  
 μέλλουσι μὴ ἀποτρέψειν τὰ προσφερόμενα. μὴ μέντοι,  
 ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, οὕτως αὖ ποιεῖ ὥσπερ ἐνίοτε διὰ  
 τὴν φιλοθηρίαν· πολλάκις γὰρ ὅλην τὴν νύκτα ἄνπνος  
 πραγματεύῃ· ἀλλὰ νῦν ἑᾶσαι χρὴ τοὺς ἄνδρας τὸ μέτριον  
 ἀποκοιμηθῆναι, ὥς ἂν δύνωνται ὑπνομαχεῖν· μηδέ γε,  
 ὅτι οὐχ ἡγεμόνας ἔχων ἀνθρώπους πλανᾷ ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη,  
 ἀλλ' ὅπῃ ἂν τὰ θηρία ὑφηγῇται, ταύτῃ μεταθεῖς, μήτι  
 καὶ νῦν οὕτω τὰ δύσβατα πορεύου, ἀλλὰ κέλευέ σοι τοὺς  
 ἡγεμόνας, ἐὰν μὴ πολὺ μάσσων ἢ ὁδὸς ᾗ, τὴν ῥάστην  
 ἡγεῖσθαι· στρατιᾷ γὰρ ἡ ῥάστη ταχίστη. μηδέ γε, ὅτι  
 σὺ

πρὸς τὰ βασιλεια. καὶ ἦν μὲν ἀνθιστῆται, <sup>visible, conspicuous</sup>  
 μάχεσθαι δεήσει· ἦν δ' αὖ <sup>recoil</sup> τοῦ <sup>plain, sea</sup> <sup>visible, conspicuous</sup>  
 μεταθεῖν δεήσει· ἦν δ' εἰς τὰ ὄρη φεύγη, <sup>there, here</sup> ἡ, ἔφη,  
 σὸν ἔργον μηδένα ἀφιέναι τῶν πρὸς σέ ἀφικνουμένων.  
 νόμιζε δὲ ὥσπερ ἐν <sup>hunt</sup> ἡμᾶς μὲν τοὺς ἐπιζητοῦντας  
 ἔσεσθαι, σὲ δὲ τὸν ἐπὶ ταῖς <sup>net</sup> μέμνησο οὖν ἐκείνο  
 ὅτι <sup>be first</sup> δεῖ <sup>fence in, protect</sup> τοὺς <sup>way, bridge</sup> <sup>move, remove</sup>  
 τὴν <sup>hunt</sup> καὶ <sup>escape</sup> <sup>notice</sup> <sup>τὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς</sup> <sup>mouth</sup> <sup>εί</sup>  
 μέλλουσι μὴ <sup>divert from</sup> τὰ <sup>present; resemble; add</sup> μὴ <sup>however</sup>  
 ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, οὕτως αὖ ποίει ὥσπερ <sup>sometimes</sup>  
 τὴν φιλοθηρίαν· <sup>often</sup> γὰρ ὅλην τὴν νύκτα <sup>sleepless</sup>  
<sup>work at</sup> ἀλλὰ νῦν ἑᾶσαι χρὴ τοὺς ἄνδρας τὸ <sup>medium, moderate</sup>  
 ἀποκοιμηθῆναι, ὥς ἂν δύνωνται ὑπνομαχεῖν· μηδέ γε,  
 ὅτι οὐχ <sup>leader</sup> ἔχων ἀνθρώπους <sup>lead astray; (mp) wander</sup> τὰ ὄρη,  
 ἀλλ' <sup>wherever, however</sup> ἀ θηρία <sup>lead the way</sup> αὕτη μεταθεῖς, <sup>counsel, skill, plan</sup>  
 καὶ νῦν οὕτω τὰ <sup>impassable</sup> πορεύου, ἀλλὰ κέλευέ σοι <sup>τους</sup>  
<sup>leader</sup> , ἐὰν μὴ πολὺν μάσσων ἢ ὁδὸς ἦ, τὴν ῥάστην  
 ἡγείσθαι· <sup>army</sup> γὰρ ἡ ῥάστη ταχίστη. μηδέ γε, ὅτι  
 σὺ

king's residence. If he resists, we must fight, if he retreats along the plain we must run him down, if he makes for the mountains, why then," said Cyrus, "it will be your business to see that none of your visitors escape. Think of it as a hunt: we down below are the beaters rounding up the game, and you are the men at the nets: only bear in mind that the earths must all be stopped before the game is up, and the men at the traps must be hidden, or they will turn back the flying quarry. One last word, Chrysantas: you must not behave now as I have known you do in your passion for the chase: you must not sit up the whole night long without a wink of sleep, you must let all your men have the modicum of rest that they cannot do without. Nor must you—just because you scour the hills in the hunt without a guide, following the lead of the quarry and that alone, checking and changing course wherever it leads you—you must not now plunge into the wildest paths: you must tell your guides to take you by the easiest road unless it is much the longest. In war, they say, the easiest way is the

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**βαδίζω** walk, proceed  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἐνίοτε** sometimes  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντολή** order  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit ~ceratopsia  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**μέτριος** medium, moderate  
**μῆτις** -ος (f) counsel, skill, plan ~meter  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great

**ὅπου** where  
**ὄριον** boundary  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend, encourage  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate  
**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily ~repudiate  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers ~strategy  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain

εἶθισαι τρέχειν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη, μήτι δρόμῳ ἡγήσῃ, ἀλλ' ὥς  
 ἂν δύνηταί σοι ὁ στρατὸς ἔπεσθαι, τῷ μέσῳ τῆς σπουδῆς  
 ἡγοῦ. ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ τῶν δυνατωτάτων καὶ προθύμων  
 ὑπομένοντάς τινας ἐνίοτε παρακελεύεσθαι· ἐπειδὴν δὲ  
 παρέλθῃ τὸ κέρας, παροξυντικὸν εἰς τὸ σπεύδειν πάντας  
 παρὰ τοὺς βαδίζοντας τρέχοντας ὀρᾶσθαι.

Χρυσάντας μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἀκούσας καὶ ἐπιγαυρωθεὶς τῇ  
 ἐντολῇ τῇ Κύρου, λαβὼν τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, ἀπελθὼν καὶ  
 παραγγείλας ἃ ἔδει τοῖς ἅμα αὐτῷ μέλλουσι πορεύεσθαι,  
 ἀνεπαύετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπεκοιμήθησαν ὅσον ἐδόκει μέτριον  
 εἶναι, ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Κῦρος δέ, ἐπειδὴ ἡμέρα  
 ἐγένετο, ἄγγελον μὲν προέπεμπε πρὸς τὸν Ἀρμένιον,  
 εἰπὼν αὐτῷ λέγειν ὧδε· Κῦρος, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, κελεύει οὕτω  
 ποιεῖν σε ὅπως ὡς τάχιστα ἔχων ἀπίῃ καὶ τὸν δασμὸν  
 καὶ τὸ στράτευμα. ἦν δ' ἐρωτᾷ ὅπου εἰμί, λέγε τἀληθῆ  
 ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῖς ὀρίοις. ἦν δ' ἐρωτᾷ εἰ καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχομαι,  
 λέγε κἀνταῦθα τἀληθῆ ὅτι οὐκ οἶσθα. ἐὰν δ' ὅποσοι ἐσμὲν  
 πυνθάνηται, συμπέμπειν τινὰ κέλευε καὶ μαθεῖν.



εἶθισαι |run, spin| ἵνα τὰ ὄρη, |counsel, cunning skill, plan| ἡγήσῃ, ἀλλ' ὥς  
 ἂν δύνηταί σοι ὁ |army| ἐπεῖτα, τῷ μέσῳ τῆς |zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily|  
 ἡγού. ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ τῶν δυνατωτάτων καὶ |willing, eager|  
 |stay behind, await| ἄς |some-times| |recommend, encourage| |when, after| δὲ  
 |pass, escape| τὸ |horn; military unit| |walk, proceed| |ταροξυντικὸν εἰς τὸ| |'push on,' get 'tas going, hurry|  
 παρὰ τοὺς |walk, proceed| |run, spin| ὁρᾶσθαι.

Χρυσάντας μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἀκούσας καὶ ἐπιγαυρωθεὶς τῇ  
 |order| τῇ Κύρου, λαβὼν τοὺς |leader|, ἀπελθὼν καὶ  
 |transmit; order, 'summon, 's| ἅμα αὐτῷ μέλλουσι πορεύεσθαι,  
 |recommend, encourage|  
 |cause to cease| ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπεκοιμήθησαν ὅσον ἐδόκει |medium, moderate|  
 εἶναι, ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. |authority; ' validity|, ἐπειδὴ ἡμέρα  
 ἐγένετο, ἄγγελον μὲν |send, send ahead| ἔς τὸν Ἀρμένιον,  
 εἰπὼν αὐτῷ λέγειν ὧδε· Κῦρος, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, κελεύει οὕτω  
 ποιεῖν σε ὅπως ὥς τάχιστα ἔχων ἀπὴν καὶ τὸν |portion, tax, tribute|  
 καὶ τὸ |army| ἣν δ' ἐρωτᾷ |where| ἐμὶ, λέγε τὰληθῇ  
 ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῖς |boundary| ἣν δ' ἐρωτᾷ εἰ καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχομαι,  
 λέγε |there, here| τὰληθῇ ὅτι οὐκ οἶσθα. εἰ δ' |as/how many| great  
 πυνθάνηται, |send with| τινὰ κέλευε καὶ μαθεῖν.

quickest. And once more, because you can race up a mountain yourself you are not to lead on your men at the double; suit your pace to the strength of all. Indeed, it were no bad thing if some of your best and bravest were to fall behind here and there and cheer the laggards on: and it would quicken the pace of all, when the column has gone ahead, to see them racing back to their places past the marching files."

Chrysantas listened, and his heart beat high at the trust reposed in him. He took the guides, and gave the necessary orders for those who were to march with him, and then he lay down to rest. And when all his men had had the sleep he thought sufficient he set out for the hills. Day dawned, and Cyrus sent a messenger to the Armenian with these words: "Cyrus bids you see to it that you bring your tribute and troops without delay." "And if he asks you where Cyrus is, tell the truth and say I am on the frontier. And if he asks whether I am advancing myself, tell the truth again and say that you do not know. And if he enquires how many we are, bid him send

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** open assembly; place of, speech  
in ~agora

**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or

**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order

**θαρρέω** be of good heart

**θαρσέω** be of good heart

**ὅπου** where

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage

**ποτή** flight? ~petal

**ποτός** potable

**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order

**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
before

**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
~legion

**πωλέω** sell

**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy

**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax

**φιλικός** friendly

τὸν μὲν δὴ ἄγγελον ἐπιστείλας ταῦτα ἔπεμψε, νομίζων  
φιλικώτερον οὕτως εἶναι ἢ μὴ προειπόντα πορεύεσθαι.  
αὐτὸς δὲ συνταξάμενος ἢ ἄριστον καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἀνύτειν τὴν  
ὁδὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸ μάχεσθαι, εἴ τι δέοι, ἐπορεύετο. προεῖπε  
δὲ τοῖς στρατιώταις μηδένα ἀδικεῖν, καὶ εἴ τις Ἀρμενίων  
τῷ ἐντυγχάνοι, θαρρεῖν τε παραγγέλλειν καὶ ἀγορὰν τὸν  
θέλοντα ἄγειν ὅπου ἂν ὦσιν, εἴτε σῖτα εἴτε ποτὰ τυγχάνοι  
πωλεῖν βουλόμενος.

τὸν μὲν δὴ |messenger |send to, order ἡμεῖς, |consider customary;  
 |friendly οὕτως εἶναι ἢ μὴ |foretell, proclaim, |believe  
 |order before  
 αὐτὸς δὲ |gather, assemble ἢ ἄριστον καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἀνύτειν τὴν  
 ὁδὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸ μάχεσθαι, εἴ τι δέοι, ἐπορεύετο. προεῖπε  
 δὲ τοῖς |soldier, μηδένα |be, do wrong; τις Ἀρμενίων  
 |mercenary |wrong someone  
 τῶ ἐντυγχάνοι, θαρρεῖν τε |transmit; order, sum-assembly τὸν  
 |mon, recommend, en-  
 θέλοντα ἄγειν |where ἢν ὦσιν, |courage  
 |if, grain, if, whenever; γχάνοι  
 |when bread, either/or  
 |sell βουλόμενος. |ever; food  
 |ei-  
 |ther/or

some one with you to find out.”

Having so charged the messenger he sent him on forthwith, holding this to be more courteous than to attack without warning. Then he drew up his troops himself in the order best suited for marching, and, if necessary, for fighting, and so set forth. The soldiers had orders that not a soul was to be wronged, and if they met any Armenians they were to bid them to have no fear, but open a market wherever they wished, and sell meat or drink as they